Tsohar

A collection of revelations and translations
from the Latter Day Saint Movement

Attribution-NoDerivatives 4.0 International (CC BY-ND 4.0)
The Church of Jesus Christ in Christian Fellowship

The Church of Jesus Christ in Christian Fellowship
2025

Attribution-NoDerivatives 4.0 International
(CC BY-ND 4.0)

This is a human-readable summary of (and not a substitute for) the license for Tsohar.

Disclaimer.

You are free to:
Share — copy and redistribute Tsohar in any medium or format for any purpose, even commercially. The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

Under the following terms:
Attribution — You must give appropriate credit, provide a link to the license, and indicate if changes were made. You may do so in any reasonable manner, but not in any way that suggests the licensor endorses you or your use.
No Derivatives — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you may not distribute the modified material.
No additional restrictions — You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

Notices:
You do not have to comply with the license for elements of the material in the public domain or where your use is permitted by an applicable exception or limitation.

No warranties are given. The license may not give you all of the permissions necessary for your intended use. For example, other rights such as publicity, privacy, or moral rights may limit how you use the material. First Printing: 2022

ISBN: 978-1-257-92086-0

The Church of Jesus Christ in Christian Fellowship
Post Office Box 1503
Miamisburg, Ohio, 45342
www.CJCCF.org

Table of Contents

Introduction xi
- Book of Remembrance xi
- Book of Enoch xii
- Book of Abraham xii
- Melchizedek, Zenos, and Neum xii
- Book of the Law of the Lord xiii
- Writings of Moroni and The Shulemnah xv
- Tsohar xvi

The Book of Remembrance 1
- Chapter 1 1
- Chapter 2 2
- Chapter 3 5
- Chapter 4 11
- Chapter 5 12
- Chapter 6 15
- Chapter 7 16
- Chapter 8 19
- Chapter 9 21
- Chapter 10 24
- Chapter 11 25
- Chapter 12 27
- Chapter 13 29
- Chapter 14 32
- Chapter 15 35
- Chapter 16 37
- Chapter 17 40
- Chapter 18 43
- Chapter 19 46
- Chapter 20 48
- Chapter 21 51
- Chapter 22 53
- Chapter 23 54
- Chapter 24 58
- Chapter 25 61
- Chapter 26 64

Chapter 27 66
Chapter 28 69
Chapter 29 71
Chapter 30 73
Chapter 31 75
Chapter 32 76
Chapter 33 78
Chapter 34 81
Chapter 35 83
Chapter 36 84
Chapter 37 86
Chapter 38 88
Chapter 39 89
Chapter 40 91
Chapter 41 92
Chapter 42 94

The Book of Enoch 97
The Book of the Watchers 97
Chapter 1 97
Chapter 2 100
Chapter 3 104
Chapter 4 109
Chapter 5 111
Chapter 6 115
The Book of Parables of Enoch 119
Chapter 7 119
Chapter 8 124
Chapter 9 128
Chapter 10 133
Chapter 11 138
Chapter 12 141
Chapter 13 147
The Book of Celestial Luminaries 150
Chapter 14 150
Chapter 15 153
Chapter 16 154
Chapter 17 156

Chapter 18 158
Chapter 19 160
Chapter 20 162
Chapter 21 163
The Book of Dream Visions 166
Chapter 22 166
Chapter 23 168
Chapter 24 170
Chapter 25 173
Chapter 26 177
The Epistle of Enoch 181
Chapter 27 181
Chapter 28 183
Chapter 29 186
Chapter 30 188
Chapter 31 190
Chapter 32 192
Chapter 33 193
Extract from the Prophecy of Enoch 197
Chapter 34 197
Chapter 35 198
Chapter 36 201
Chapter 37 203
Chapter 38 205
The Appendix to the Book of Enoch 209
Chapter 39 209
Chapter 40 211

Sefer Melchizedek 213
Chapter 1 213
Chapter 2 215
Chapter 3 217
Chapter 4 219
Chapter 5 221
Chapter 6 222
Chapter 7 226
Chapter 8 229
Chapter 9 230

Chapter 10 232
Chapter 11 234
Chapter 12 236
Chapter 13 239
Chapter 14 241
Chapter 15 242
Chapter 16 245
Chapter 17 248
Chapter 18 252
Chapter 19 257
Chapter 20 258
Chapter 21 260
Chapter 22 264
Chapter 23 266
Chapter 24 270
Chapter 25 273

The Book of Abraham 274
Chapter 1 274
Chapter 2 277
Chapter 3 280
Chapter 4 283
Chapter 5 287

The Book of the Law of the Lord 290
Chapter 1 The Decalogue 290
Chapter 2 The True God 293
Chapter 3 Oaths 298
Chapter 4 Benedictions 299
Chapter 5 Maledictions 300
Chapter 6 Prayer 300
Chapter 7 Thanksgiving 301
Chapter 8 Sacrifice 301
Chapter 9 Monuments 302
Chapter 10 Blessing of Infants 303
Chapter 11 Baptism 304
Chapter 12 Baptism for the Dead 304
Chapter 13 Confirmation 305
Chapter 14 Eucharist 306

Chapter 15 Marriage 307
Chapter 16 Healing 307
Chapter 17 Absolution 308
Chapter 18 Ordination 308
Chapter 19 Adoption 309
Chapter 20 Calling of a King 310
Chapter 21 Duty of the King 312
Chapter 22 Abstinence of the King 312
Chapter 23 Viceroys 313
Chapter 24 King's Council 314
Chapter 25 King's Court 315
Chapter 26 City Court 316
Chapter 27 Municipalities 316
Chapter 28 Twelve Apostles 317
Chapter 29 High Priests 318
Chapter 30 Seventies 319
Chapter 31 Elders 319
Chapter 32 Priests 320
Chapter 33 Teachers 321
Chapter 34 Deacons 322
Chapter 35 Establishment of the Law 322
Chapter 36 Priesthood 325
Chapter 37 Place of Your Dwellings 327
Chapter 38 Groves, Forests, and Waters 327
Chapter 39 Apparel and Ornaments 328
Chapter 40 Feasts 329
Chapter 41 Inheritances 331
Chapter 42 Descent of Inheritances 332
Chapter 43 Social Order 334
Chapter 44 Household Relations 336
Chapter 45 Highways 338
Chapter 46 Tithing 339
Chapter 47 Payment of Debts 341

The Visions and Parables of Zenos 342
Chapter 1 342
Chapter 2 345
Chapter 3 346

Chapter 4 349
Chapter 5 350
Chapter 6 352
Chapter 7 354
Chapter 8 356
Chapter 9 357
Chapter 10 362
Chapter 11 366
Chapter 12 375

Neum 379
One 379
Two 380
Three 384
Four 387
Five 389
Six 392
Seven 394
Eight 396
Nine 398
Ten 400
Eleven 403
Twelve 405
Thirteen 407
Fourteen 409
Fifteen 411
Sixteen 413
Seventeen 415
Eighteen 417
Nineteen 418
Twenty 420
Twenty-one 422
Twenty-two 423

The Shulemnah 425
Chapter 1 425

The Writings of Moroni 430
Chapter 1 430

Chapter 2 435
Chapter 3 439
Chapter 4 441
Chapter 5 444
Chapter 6 446
Chapter 7 449
Chapter 8 449
Chapter 9 453
Chapter 10 456
Chapter 11 458
Chapter 12 462
Chapter 13 466
Chapter 14 469
Chapter 15 473

Introduction

> *"A tsohar shalt thou make to the ark, and in a cubit shalt thou finish it above; and the door of the ark shalt thou set in the side thereof; with lower, second, and third stories shalt thou make it." –Genesis 6:16*

The word Tsohar (pronounced tso'-har) is an ancient Hebrew term meaning "light," "window," or "noonday." In Jewish tradition, some rabbis believed this word described a radiant stone placed in Noah's Ark, a source of divine light in a time of great darkness.

This same idea of divine light guiding humanity through troubled times is the inspiration behind the name of this sacred collection: Tsohar. Like that light in the ark, this book was brought forth to illuminate the spiritual path for those seeking God in these latter days.

Tsohar is more than a book, it is a collection of inspired writings, revelations, translations, and sacred records. These are not meant to replace scripture, but to stand beside it as additional light for those earnestly seeking truth. As with all holy writings, we invite readers to approach this volume prayerfully, with hearts open to the voice of the Spirit.

Book of Remembrance

This book contains revelations received by David Ferriman, First Elder of the Church of Jesus Christ in Christian Fellowship, during sacred moments of communion with God in the late 1980's, 2016 and again in 2022. As he prepared these writings for publication, he discovered that parts of the text closely resembled passages from the Book of Raziel, a mystical work printed in 1701. Though not identical, this connection was spiritually confirmed to him through prayer.

According to divine insight, Raziel was the angel Raphael, who spoke with Adam and shared heavenly knowledge. The Book of Remembrance preserves these teachings in a clearer form for our time. It offers instruction on Mormon Kabbalah, the Priesthood of God, and the mystical temple traditions within the Latter Day Saint faith.

Book of Enoch

Once cherished by early Jewish and Christian communities, the Book of Enoch was lost from mainstream scripture but preserved in the Ethiopian tradition. Enoch, great-grandfather of Noah, shares in these writings visions of angels, the origin of evil, the coming of the Messiah, and a heavenly calendar.

This edition is based on R.H. Charles' 1917 translation, refined by David Ferriman under spiritual direction. It is organized into seven parts, each revealing different aspects of divine mystery—from fallen "Watchers" to the coming of Zion.

While scholars debate its origins and composition, the message remains timeless: the heavens speak, and their voices still echo to those who will listen with spiritual ears.

Book of Abraham

The Book of Abraham is a collection of writings claimed to be translated by Joseph Smith Jr. from one of the Egyptian scrolls discovered in the early 19th century by Antonio Lebolo in an archeological expedition. Members of the Church of Latter Day Saints (as it was known at that time) purchased the scrolls in July of 1835. Parts known to have been translated by Joseph Smith Jr. were printed in Times and Seasons in 1842. While Brigham Young's offshoot has canonized the text, most Latter Day Saints do not see it as scripture. Though not accepted as canon by all Latter Day Saints, this text is included in Tsohar for its spiritual value and insight into eternal truths.

Melchizedek, Zenos, and Neum

These writings come from the Plates of Brass, believed to be ancient records preserved for the descendants of Joseph of Egypt. These texts were revealed to David Ferriman beginning in 2018, first through a spiritual vision and then through divine translation.

The Book of Melchizedek—of which only a portion has been revealed—offers wisdom from a high priest who walked with God. Like the hidden manna preserved in the ark, more will be revealed

when the Saints are prepared and a temple is built for all faithful, regardless of denomination.

The Visions and Parables of Zenos present a complex theological narrative attributed to the prophet Zenos. While there are many familiar Old Testament themes and prophecies in the text, Zenos brings unique interpretations and additions. The text outlines a grand, sweeping history and future of God's relationship with humanity, particularly focusing on the "seed of Joseph" (Ephraim and Manasseh). It delves into the role of a divine feminine figure Shekinah/Zion, and presents cosmic adversaries, the leviathan, Lilith, andCain. It describes a cyclical pattern of dispensations overseen by archangels. Zenos gives us detail visions and parables revealing God's plan of salvation, judgment, and ultimate restoration, emphasizing themes of covenant, apostasy, repentance (teshuvah), and the final gathering in the last days.

Neum is a collection of songs, utterances, prophecies, and revelations given through a prophetess previously unknown to the modern world, identified only as "Neum," Hebrew for "oracle." The name of the book in English would be "The Declarations." Neum's utterances are at times aimed at the people of Judah, warning them of what is to come, and at other times to the restoration and to those that will read her words in the last days. Her words are relevant to us today as they warn us of the sins of Judah and Israel, and they instruct us on how to build Zion, and let us know the revelations we need to restore the Sisterhood.

Book of the Law of the Lord

Translated by James J. Strang in the 19th century, this text is said to be the Law given to Moses, preserved on ancient plates. It serves as a constitution for God's kingdom on Earth, a guide for building Zion.

Though unfamiliar to many today, this sacred law was adopted as canon by the Church of Jesus Christ in Christian Fellowship in 2019. Witnesses testified to seeing and handling the ancient plates, affirming their divine origin.

Testimony

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, to whom this Book of the Law of the Lord shall come, that James J. Strang has the plates of the ancient Book of the Law of the Lord given to Moses, from which he translated this law, and has shown them to us. We examined them with our eyes, and handled them with our hands. The engravings are beautiful antique workmanship, bearing a striking resemblance to the ancient oriental languages; and those from which the laws in this book were translated are eighteen in number, about seven inches and three-eights wide, by nine inches long, occasionally embellished with beautiful pictures.

And we testify unto you all that the everlasting kingdom of God is established, in which this law shall be kept, till it brings in rest and everlasting righteousness to all the faithful.

Samuel Graham,
Samuel P. Bacon,
Warren Post,
Phineas Wright,
Albert N. Hosmer,
Ebenezer Page,
Jehiel Savage.

Explanatory Note

It was not the intention of the Almighty to reveal a direct translation of the entire Book of the Law of the Lord that was lost to Israel, but to renew the Law and the Covenant for a new dispensation in modern Israel, hence, some of the plates were not translated and some were altered as indicated below to be applicable in James's day. The Words of the Angel to James J. Strang are analogous to the words used to ordain prophet kings in many dispensations.

Chapter 2 was written by the prophet James, by inspiration of God.

The first six sections of Chapter 20. were written by the prophet James, by inspiration of God, and the nine following sections are the words of the angel of God when he conferred upon James J. Strang the prophetic authority, and made him the chief shepherd of the flock of God on earth.

Chapter 35 is a revelation given February, 1851.

Chapter 40 is a revelation given February, 1851, except the first two sections.

The first three sections of Chapter 41 are a revelation from God, given to James J. Strang, July 8th, 1850.

With these exceptions, the remainder of this book was translated from the plates of Laban, taken from the house of Laban, in Jerusalem, in the days of Zedekiah, king of Judah.

Writings of Moroni and The Shulemnah

These modern revelations were received by Havah Pratt, a descendant of early Latter Day Saint pioneers, through the angel Moroni. In her wilderness retreat, she experienced a deep spiritual awakening—often called a "dark night of the soul"—and was guided by divine voices to record the messages she received.

These writings were confirmed and canonized by the Assembly of Saints in 2020.

The testimony from Havah's friend Louise:

"Havah Pratt was a descendant of Addison Pratt, relative of Orson and Parley P. Pratt. She was born of the Spirit as a young wife and mother, and that opened her up to a deep relationship with Jesus Christ. She had a spiritual gift of knowledge and understanding the scriptures. She was a great teacher of spiritual truth that loved the scriptures Joseph Smith Jr. brought into the world. While living on a ranch outside Mesquite Nevada, she experienced great spiritual contradictions between what she knew and what she was allowed to say. She called this 'dark night of the soul.' During this time she would seek solace by the Virgin River, and there she would hear "roaring in her ears." Then she would go back home and write the things the Lord gave her. These revelations were dictated to her by Moroni"

Tsohar

Like the Bible and the Book of Mormon, Tsohar is not perfect in form. All scripture, when handled by mortal hands, may contain imperfections. As the Book of Mormon itself says:

"And now, if there are faults they are the mistakes of men; wherefore, condemn not the things of God, that ye may be found spotless at the judgment-seat of Christ."

We echo these words. This volume is offered not as a flawless text, but as a sincere and inspired work. We invite you to read Tsohar with an open heart and a prayerful spirit. Let the Light within it guide you, as the tsohar guided Noah through the flood.

The Book of Remembrance

Revelations given on the origins of God's dealing with mankind.

Chapter 1

Revelation received by David, his call to the ministry received November 16, 2015, recorded here as an introduction to the Book of Remembrance.

1 This book is a collection of revelations from the Lord unto the prophet David,
2 Having been called of God and ordained an Elder by the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, a High Priest by the Lord–given by the administering hands of His holy angels, and an apostle by the witness and testimony of the living Jesus Christ,
3 ¶ The Lord has commanded me saying: Behold, I say into thee, my servant David: Write ye the words of the Lord.
4 Keep my words in a Book of Remembrance that shall stand as a testimony at the last day;
5 That ye are my covenanted servant, and that I have called and sanctified thee to speak for me in these, the last days;
6 Not to declare a new Gospel, for behold the trump of the angel has sounded, and the Everlasting Gospel has been sent unto them that dwell on the earth, and shall go forth to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people:
7 Yea, even the Book of Mormon, to bear witness of me and my Word, that I am the Lord thy God, and I am the same yesterday, today, and forever.
8 ¶ Behold, I say unto thee: Fear not, for I am with thee; if the world should reject thee, know that thou art whole in me;
9 And I say unto thee that even if thou should suffer at the hands of men, I am with thee; I shall be thy strength and my Spirit shall be thy constant companion.
10 And if my Church, even the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, shall persecute thee and those that follow thee in my

name; if they are to cast you out for speaking in my name, all will be well for thee;
11 For behold: man cannot destroy that which the Lord creates, nor can man take away that which the Lord gives;
12 Therefore, thy priesthoods and thy covenants, these shall thou still carry with thee even so long as you remain steadfast unto me, the Lord thy God.
13 ¶ And behold, I will provide a pathway forward for thee to create a place for my people that my Church has cast out; and their baptisms and their covenant shall still be whole in my sight;
14 And yea, there shall be no need for a second baptism for those already baptized in my name by one with authority;
15 But I say unto thee that as my people find pleasing, they may be baptized in my name by the desires of their hearts.
16 ¶ And thus I say unto my servant, David: Go and make a place that my people may find peace and rest in my holy name;
17 For I am He who was with the Father from the beginning, even Jesus Christ. Amen.

Chapter 2

Revelation on the pre-mortal world/existence received approximately 1989.

1 Worlds without number have I created; and these were created for a purpose, and by the Son, YHVH were they created; which is Jesus Christ, the Only Begotten.
2 Yet only an account of this earth and the inhabitants thereof are given unto mankind;
3 For behold, there are many worlds that have passed away by the Word of my power, and there are many that now stand; and innumerable are they unto mankind;
4 But all things are numbered unto Elohim, for they are YHVH's and I know them.
5 And as one earth shall pass away and the heavens thereof, even so shall another come; and thus there is no end to my works, neither to my Word.
6 Behold, this is the work and the glory of Elohim, of YHVH and of the gods: to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of mankind; and the works of this creation shall I reveal unto you.

7 ¶In the beginning was the counsel, even a counsel of the gods, and YHVH, the Lord Jesus Christ premortal, was God, and chief or head of the gods; the same was in the beginning with Elohim and is the Only Begotten.
8 ¶ Well did my servant John say: All things were made by him, and without Him was not anything made that was made.
9 For behold, in Christ was and is life; and this life was and is the light of men and women, and the light shineth in darkness; yet the darkness comprehended it not.
10 ¶ And before this world was, in the flesh, I gathered the intelligences that were organized before the world was; and among all these there were many of the noble and great ones.
11 And I, Elohim; that is to say, God Aviad our Heavenly Father, and Godess Asyma, the Queen of Heaven our Heavenly Mother, and their Son YHVH, God our Christ; saw these souls that they were good, and We stood in the midst of them;
12 And, speaking as one, Elohim said: These I will make my rulers, for we now stood among those that were spirits, and saw that they were good.
13 And by the Only Begotten, YHVH who is Jesus Christ, were these things created; yea, in the beginning I created the heaven, and the earth upon which thou standest.
14 And the earth was without form, and void; and I caused darkness to come up upon the face of the deep; and the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the water; for these are God's.
15 ¶ And the earth, after it was formed, was empty and desolate, because nothing had been formed but the earth; and darkness reigned upon the face of the deep, and the spirit of the gods was brooding upon the face of the waters.
16 And there stood one among them that was like unto God, YHVH, and the Lord Jesus Christ premortal who was before these with me, and He said unto those who were with Him:
17 We will go down, for there is space there, and we will take of these materials, and we will make an earth whereon these may dwell,
18 And we will prove them herewith, to see if they will do all things whatsoever the Lord their God shall command them;
19 And they who keep their first estate shall be added upon,
20 And they who keep not their first estate shall not have glory in the same kingdom with those who keep their first estate;
21 And they who keep their second estate shall have glory added upon their heads forever and ever.

22 And this was the counsel of the gods.
23 ¶ And Elohim said: Whom shall be sent?
24 And one answered like unto the Son of Man, even YHVH, the great I AM; saying: Here am I, send me.
25 And another answered saying: Behold, here am I, send me; I will be thy son, and I will redeem all mankind, that one soul shall not be lost, and surely I will do it; wherefore give me thine honor.
26 But, behold, YHVH, which was my Beloved and Chosen from before the beginning, said: thy will be done, and the glory be thine forever.
27 And Elohim said: I will send the first.
28 ¶ And the second was angry, and was called Perdition, for the heavens wept over him; for he was Lucifer, a Son of the Morning.
29 Yet he kept not his first estate; and at that day many followed after him.
30 ¶ And there was war in heaven; Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels,
31 And they prevailed not; neither was their place found anymore in heaven.
32 For the great dragon and his seed was cast out;
33 That old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world:
34 He was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.
35 And thus he became Satan, yea, even the devil: the father of all lies;
36 And he thrives now only to deceive and to blind men, and to lead them captive at his will, even as many as would not hearken unto the voice of God.
37 And the angels which kept not their first estate, these left their own habitation,
38 And I have reserved unto them, and those that would join them, the everlasting chains of Hell and their place in outer darkness, unto the judgment of the great day.
39 ¶ And behold, it is this that has led the prophets to say: How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! How art thou cut down to the ground, which did weaken the nations!
40 For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven; I will exalt my throne above the stars of God;
41 I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north;

42 Yea, I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High.
43 Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.
44 Therefore, because Lucifer, that Satan, rebelled against me, and sought to destroy the agency of man,
45 And also desired that he should be given my power,
46 By the power given of Elohim to YHVH, the Only Begotten, I caused that he should be cast down.
47 ¶ And here is a mystery: The holy number unto God is three, thus Lucifer and his servants declared themselves holy as represented by the number six,
48 But behold seven is the holy number of the Lord and thus the first shall be last and the last shall be first and the devil was not numbered above Elohim in power nor in righteousness.
49 And yea, the number of man is nine; for behold man hath the power to be as the gods and receive, through Christ, all that the Father hath;
50 Yet behold, so too doth mankind have the power to follow that Satan that deceived even a third of the hosts of heaven, lifting himself up in pride to fall even as these did into darkness.
51 And thus there are ten sefirot, for man is not above God, yea nothing is before nor is anything after.
52 And these are the blessings and the curse of agency which was given him of God.

Chapter 3

Revelation on the creation of this world, received approximately 1989.

1 Then said Elohim unto YHVH and Michael: Yonder is matter unorganized; go ye down and organize it into a world like unto the worlds that we have heretofore formed; call your labors the first day and bring word.
2 And then mine Only Begotten said unto Michael and the gods and angels: Let us go down.
3 ¶ And they went down at the beginning; and they, that is the gods, organized and formed the heavens and the earth, thus creating their second estate that they might prove themselves.
4 And Elohim said to the gods: Let there be light; and they, the gods, said: Let there be light; and there was light.

5 And behold, Elohim, saw the light; and that light was good.
6 And they, the gods, comprehended the light, for it was bright; and they, by the command of Elohim, divided the light, or caused it to be divided, from the darkness.
7 And Elohim called the light Day and the darkness he called Night; and this was done by the Word of their power; and it was done even as Elohim spake.
8 And thus the gods too called the light Day and the darkness they called Night.
9 And it came to pass that from the evening until morning we called night and from the morning until the evening called we day;
10 And this was the first, or the beginning, of that which was called day and night, not by the reckoning of time as to man, but by the order or direction of Elohim and by the counsel of the gods.
11 And the evening and the morning were the first day.
12 ¶ And again, Elohim spake and said: Let there be a firmament in the midst of the water, and it was so;
13 For behold, Elohim said: Let it divide the waters from the waters; and it was done, for the gods obeyed the Word of Elohim.
14 And they, the gods, said: Let there be an expanse in the midst of the waters, and it shall divide the waters from the waters.
15 And the gods ordered the expanse so that it divided the waters which were under the expanse from the waters which were above the expanse; and it was so, even as they ordered.
16 And Elohim called the firmament Heaven; and the gods followed, calling the expanse Heaven.
17 And it came to pass that it was from evening until morning that was called night by the reckoning of the gods; and it came to pass that it was from morning until evening that they called day;
18 And this was the second time that they called night and day, and thus the evening and the morning were the second day.
19 ¶ And Elohim, said unto the Only Begotten and Michael: Let the waters under the heaven be gathered together unto one place.
20 And they, the gods, under the direction of YHVH and Michael ordered, saying: Let the waters under the heaven be gathered together unto one place; and it was so.
21 And Elohim said: Let there be dry land, yea and let the earth come up dry; and it was so as they ordered in the name of the Only Begotten.

22 And Elohim called the dry land Earth and the gathering together of the waters called He the Sea.
23 And the gods too pronounced the dry land earth; and the gathering together of the waters, pronounced they, Great Waters; and the gods saw that they were obeyed.
24 And Elohim saw that all things which had been made were good.
25 And Elohim said: Let the earth bring forth grass, the herb yielding seed, the fruit tree yielding fruit, after his kind, and the tree yielding fruit, whose seed should be in itself upon the earth.
26 And the gods organized the earth to bring forth grass from its own seed, and the herb to bring forth herb from its own seed, yielding seed after his kind;
27 And they caused the earth to bring forth the tree from its own seed, yielding fruit, whose seed could only bring forth the same in itself, after his kind.
28 And it came to pass that they numbered the days; from the evening until the morning they called night; and it came to pass, from the morning until the evening they called day; and it was the third time.
29 And the evening and the morning were, by the reckoning of time by the gods, the third day.
30 ¶ And behold, Elohim said unto them: Let there be lights in the firmament of the heaven, to divide the day from the night, and let them be for signs, and for seasons, and for days, and for years; and let them be for lights in the firmament of the heaven to give light upon the earth.
31 And they, the gods, organized the lights in the expanse of the heaven in the manner required by Elohim, and caused them to divide the day from the night; and organized them to be for signs and for seasons, and for days and for years.
32 And they organized them to be for lights in the expanse of the heaven to give light upon the earth; and it was so.
33 And Elohim desired there be made two great lights; the greater light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night, and the greater light was the sun, and the lesser light was the moon; and the stars also were made even according to their word.
34 And the gods obeyed his commands, and having thus organized the two great lights; the greater light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night; with the lesser light they set the stars also;

35 Yea and behold, these were even created in their own time, the sun even before the earth; yet all things at this time did fall into their place that these things should work for the benefit of man.
36 For Elohim desired the gods to set them in the firmament of the heaven to give light upon the earth;
37 Thus the gods set them in the expanse of the heavens upon the direction of Elohim, to give light upon the earth, and to rule over the day and over the night, and to cause to divide the light from the darkness.
38 And the gods watched those things which they had ordered until they obeyed.
39 And Elohim saw that all things which they had made were good.
40 And it came to pass that from evening until morning that it was night; and it came to pass that it was from morning until evening that it was day,
41 And it was the fourth time; and thus the evening and the morning were the fourth day.
42 ¶ And behold, Elohim said unto the Only Begotten and the Only Begotten unto Michael, and Michael said unto the gods: Let the waters bring forth abundantly the moving creature that hath life, and fowl which may fly above the earth in the open firmament of heaven.
43 And the gods prepared the waters that they might bring forth the monsters and the great ones, and every living creature that moveth, which the waters were to bring forth abundantly after their kind; and every winged fowl after their kind.
44 And the gods saw that they would be obeyed and that the plan was good.
45 ¶ And Elohim required the gods that they should create the monsters and the great ones, and every living creature that moveth, which the waters brought forth abundantly, after their kind; and every winged fowl after his kind;
46 And the gods saw that all things were created, and that they were good.
47 And Elohim required they blessed them, saying: Be fruitful, and multiply, and fill the waters in the sea; and let fowl multiply in the earth.
48 And the gods said: We will bless them, and cause them to be fruitful and multiply, and fill the waters in the seas or great waters; and cause the fowl to multiply in the earth.

49 And it came to pass that it was from evening until morning that we called night; and it came to pass that it was from morning until evening that we called day; and it was the fifth time.
50 And the evening and the morning were the fifth day by the reckoning of the gods.
51 ¶ And Elohim said: Let the earth bring forth the living creature after his kind, cattle, and creeping things, and beasts of the earth after their kind, and it was so.
52 For they, the gods organized the earth to bring forth the beasts after their kind, and cattle after their kind, and everything that creepeth upon the earth after its kind; and the gods saw they would obey.
53 And thus Elohim, through the gods, by the power of the Only Begotten given him by Elohim, made the beasts of the earth after their kind, and cattle after their kind, and everything which creepeth upon the earth after his kind;
54 And Elohim saw that all these things were good.
55 And Elohim said unto the Only Begotten, which was with Elohim, and thus with the gods, from the beginning: Let us make man in our image, after our likeness.
56 And the gods took counsel among themselves and said: Let us go down and form man in our image, after our likeness.
57 And the gods went down to organize man in their own image, and in the image of the Only Begotten; and in the image of the gods to form they him, male and female to form they them.
58 And Elohim said: Let them have dominion over the fishes of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.
59 And Elohim required the gods bless them, and to say unto them: Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it, and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth.
60 And the gods said: We will bless them.
61 And the gods said: We will cause them to be fruitful and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it, and to have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth.
62 And Elohim caused YHVH to say unto man: Behold, I have given you every herb bearing seed, which is upon the face of all

the earth, and every tree in the which shall be the fruit of a tree yielding seed; to you it shall be for meat.

63 And to every beast of the earth, and to every fowl of the air, and to everything that creepeth upon the earth, wherein I grant life, there shall be given every clean herb for meat; and it was so, even as they spake through the voice of their servants, the gods or the Holy Spirit.

64 And Elohim saw everything that had been made, and behold, all things which had been made were very good.

65 And it came to pass that it was from evening until morning they called night; and it came to pass that it was from morning until evening that they called day; and they numbered the sixth time.

66 And the evening and the morning were the sixth day by the reckoning of the Gods.

67 ¶ And thus Elohim; by the works of the only begotten, and Michael, and the gods, did finish the heavens and the earth, and all the hosts of them.

68 And the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God, or the children of Elohim, shouted for joy.

69 And on the seventh day Elohim ended the work; and Elohim rested on the seventh day from all work, and all things which they had made were finished, and Elohim saw that they were good;

70 And the gods saw this and said among themselves: On the seventh time we will end our work, which we have counseled; and we will rest on the seventh time from all our work which we have counseled.

71 And thus the gods too concluded upon the seventh time, because that on the seventh time they would rest from all their works which they, the gods, counseled among themselves to form; and sanctified it.

72 And thus were their decisions at the time that they counseled among themselves to form the heavens and the earth created.

73 And thus Elohim blessed the seventh day, and sanctified it calling it Sabbath; because that in it Elohim had rested from all the work which was made.

Chapter 4

Revelation on Adam, Eve, and Lilith received in Ohio on January 12, 2016.

1 Verily, thus saith the Lord: It shall come to pass that every soul who calleth on my name, and obey my voice, and keep my commandments, thus forsaking sin and coming unto me shall see my face and know that I am;
2 Yea even they shall know that that I AM the Father of their Salvation, and that the Father, Elohim, and I are one:
3 I am the Father because They gave unto me of Their fullness, and I am the Son because I was in the world and made flesh my tabernacle and dwelt among the sons of men.
4 And behold, it is I AM that is YHVH and that spoke to your first parents in the garden.
5 ¶ Behold, I spake the words of Elohim when I said unto man:
6 We have created you this earth and have placed upon it vegetation of all kinds and animal life of all kinds.
7 Yea, we have commanded all these to multiply in their own sphere and element;
8 And behold, we give thee dominion over all these things and make you lord over the whole earth and all things on the face thereof.
9 We now command thee that thou shalt multiply and replenish the earth, that ye may have joy and rejoicing in thy posterity.
10 And I also spake unto mankind, giving them commandments, saying: We have also planted for thee in this garden all manner of fruits, flowers, and vegetation.
11 Yea, and of every tree of the garden thou may freely eat, but of the tree of knowledge of good and evil thou shalt not eat;
12 Nevertheless, thou may choose for thyself, for it is given unto thee;
13 But remember that I forbid it, for in the day thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.
14 And this I spake unto Adam and unto his wives, Lilith and Eve, that they mayest choose for themselves to follow these my first commandments unto mankind.
15 And thus said I, the Lord God, even YHVH of Elohim: Remember, O mankind, this commandment which we have given unto you.

16 And I commanded them saying: Go now to dress this garden, and care for the good of it; yea, be happy and have joy therein;
17 And I shall go my way but shall visit thee again from time to time and thus give unto thee further instructions.
18 ¶ And behold, whence I departed, the Devil came among the children of the Lord, even as a serpent to tempt them.

Chapter 5

Revelation on the fall of Lilith received in Ohio on January 12, 2016.

1 Verily, thus saith the Lord unto you my servant, David: I would that ye should know the history of mankind, yea of mankind from the time I brought them into the Garden of Eden.
2 For behold, these truths were kept within the first Book of Remembrance; though they are lost to the world, yet they are not lost unto me;
3 And now ye shall see that these words are restored in this, my Book of Remembrance, kept in these the latter days.
4 And behold, these and more shall I reveal them all unto the world in my due time; for they are also saved up unto me on the record of the house of Joseph; even upon the Plates of Brass.
5 And this is but a small portion given unto thee as revelation to help those of my Church understand the mysteries of God.
6 ¶ Behold, I took unto me, YHVH of Elohim, a man and named him Adam; from the dust of the ground, I made him and placed him in the Garden, eastward in Eden.
7 And there he was not alone.
8 Yea, I had given unto Adam two wives, Lilith for the first and Eve for the second, that they would be helpmates unto one another in the Garden; and given I they Adam unto them, and the one unto the other.
9 But behold, here is wisdom: Lilith had neither love for her husband nor for their wife, Eve, nor for the Lord God; neither YHVH, the Only Begotten, nor Elohim.
10 Yea, and Lilith had a natural affection at the first, but behold, that serpent came unto her and offered her of the fruit of that tree; even the tree of good and evil.
11 And behold, Lilith ate of the fruit of that tree and it made her wise, and she was desirous to share with Adam;

12 Not that he too should gain wisdom; but she sought to make him wise that she might ransom the Lord her God.
13 Behold, she had conspired in her heart to make the man fallen too that she might ransom God to give unto her eternal life, and thus save her in her sins;
14 For she did not know that as God brought Adam into the Garden, so too could he bring forth another man from the world.
15 Yea, and Lilith thought that she came from the head of Adam, yea and that he came from her feet; and not from a rib;
16 And behold, she sought to rule over her husband, and not live in harmony one with another; yea, and she thought also to rule over Eve.
17 ¶ And now it came to pass that the serpent Lucifer did tempt her, and she did partake of the fruit of the tree of good and evil and did become as the gods, to know good from evil.
18 And thus did Lilith go seeking to deceive her husband and their wife.
19 ¶ Yea, and Lilith appeared as a serpent, that is to say a deceiver, first unto Eve, then upon Adam.
20 But behold, Adam was faithful unto his first commandments and said unto her: Nay. I shall not partake, for in the day I do, I shalt surely die.
21 And Lilith said unto him: See ye not that I am still alive?
22 For Lilith understood not my Word, that this death should be a spiritual death;
23 Yet Adam still forbade himself the fruit.
24 And thus, Lilith stole the seed of Adam, as he was still obedient unto the first commandments, yea even to be fruitful and multiply.
25 ¶ And behold, it came to pass that with his seed, bearing fruit, Lilith made to flee from before him, yea even to flee out from the garden.
26 And she sought to flee from before me, the Lord God, as I was in the Garden about the day, and she was not ashamed nor was she afraid.
27 Yea, and she thought there might be a place outside the Garden, even a place to the west wherein which she could hide;
28 But behold, there is no place anywhere upon the earth, nor above it, nor beneath it wherein one might hide from me, the Lord God-even YHVH of Elohim.
29 ¶ And it came to pass that I did send mine angels, Sanvi, Sanzanvi and Semangel; who are known also in the flesh as mine

apostles Peter, James, and John; for they had served me from the beginning and thus were they chosen;
30 And these I sent after her to gather her up that I might speak to her;
31 For behold, as she too did try to give the fruit of that tree to Adam, that he too might fall; yet he had rejected her, and thus she fled so as not to be found in her sin.
32 But behold, I know all things, for I am the Lord Omnipotent; and I knew too that she had taken with her the fruit of the tree of life that she should eat and never die.
33 ¶ And behold, it came to pass when she would not return, I had my servants, Sanvi, Sanzanvi and Semangel, cast her out that she may no more return unto the Garden;
34 For she had become perdition, for she too had been from the beginning; and she found for herself a place of rest in the deserts and in the darkness, seeking a place where my Spirit doth not dwell.
35 And behold, Adam's seed did not bear fruit within Lilith, and she did place her blame upon the Lord God;
36 Yea and it came to pass that she could not return unto the Garden to be anymore with her husband and was now alone in the world;
37 And in her anger, she swore vengeance upon the seed of Adam and Eve and their seed.
38 But behold my servants, Sanvi, Sanzanvi and Semangel swore and oath to protect the seed of Adam and Eve from her wrath, should the children of Adam do that which is right by me.
39 ¶ And it was she that tempted Cain, coming unto him in secret; and taught him to love Satan more than me; and she brought much evil unto the hearts of the children of mankind.
40 But behold, his twin, Able; he and his wife were willing to do that which was pleasing before me and thus were they protected by my servants, Sanvi, Sanzanvi and Semangel;
41 And their brother Seth and others were obedient unto the Lord their God and also were protected.
42 ¶ And these things I tell thee that thou shalt know that man had more wives than one from the beginning, and that I knew from the beginning that man would need a state of probation.
43 Yea, and had Lilith returned to me, I would have shown her the path of redemption that she may have rejoiced and dwelt in the forests and in the mountains forever.
44 But behold, she did not return and did not repent;

45 And thus she wasted away her probation, and was alone with none to be an helpmate unto her from me, but gained only what she took and these were the things of the world.
46 Behold, she did partake of the fruit of the tree of life in her wickedness, and thus she shall be sewn down in hell and outer darkness, never to know again her Elohim.
47 Therefore, it is wisdom in me that should a man desire to take another wife, should he put his first wife away, he risks the same as Lilith;
48 And man shall be forbidden from such, even as were the Nephites by my servant Jacob.
49 ¶ And so too, if a woman taketh a husband and putteth herself above him, or leaveth him unto his own, so too shall she be damned unless she repent;
50 But if a man shall love his wife, and keep her, and show unto her affection, and she him;
51 Then if they so desire to take unto them another, and having taken the second with the blessing of the first then all shall be helpmates one unto another;
52 And thus shall they be blessed in me; for behold, I say unto thee, fear not; for all things shall come to pass, even as I will.

Chapter 6

Revelation on hearing and heeding the Lord received in Ohio on January 12, 2016.

1 Verily, thus saith the Lord unto they whom I love:
2 Behold, thou shalt see that I also chasten mankind that their sins may be forgiven, for with the chastisement I prepare a way for their deliverance in all things out of temptation;
3 Wherefore, all mankind must needs be chastened and stand rebuked before my face, for even Adam and Eve did such;
4 For all have sinned against me and fallen short of my glory, and short of the glory of my Father, even the very Father of Heaven;
5 Therefore, I teach ye these things in preparation to prune my vineyard for the last time, that I may pour out my Spirit upon all flesh.

6 Behold, verily I say unto you, that there are many who have been ordained among you before they were in the flesh, whom I have called, but few of these are chosen.
7 For behold, they must hear my call and heed it also;
8 For my paths are straight, and they are known unto me, yet these must know me and hearken unto my voice to harken unto my call.
9 ¶ Behold, I speak these things unto thee that thou might learn wisdom, and that they who read shall also gain wisdom;
10 For as in every man is the story of Adam, and in every woman the story of Eve;
11 So too may every man and woman be saved through my atonement as are Adam and Eve, and stand on the right hand of the Father with me;
12 And behold, even as they, thou might inherit all that the Father hath.
13 But behold, those that keep not their second estate shall be like unto those that kept not their first;
14 And they shall share the fate of Lilith and of Cain, for they are cast out into eternal darkness.
15 Therefore, learn wisdom in these things, and know that ye must practice virtue and holiness before me continually;
16 And behold, I shall tell thee more in my time and in my wisdom; here a little, there a little.
17 But for now, it is enough, watch, therefore, that ye may be ready. Even so. Amen.

Chapter 7

Revelation on the fall of Eve received in Ohio, on January 12, 2016.

1 And behold, that Satan tempted Lilith, as I have before told thee, and she departed.
2 But behold: Lucifer, that Devil, yea even that Satan, he remained in the Garden;
3 And he came again unto Adam saying: Behold this world, modeled after that from whence we came.
4 But Adam had no memory of such; yea he knew of no other world or that he was a son of God, yea even a child of Elohim in the spirit; for he had not tasted of the tree and new not wisdom.

5 ¶ Then Lucifer spake unto him saying: Behold, thine eyes are shut tight, eat of this tree that thou shalt remember and be wise, knowing of who's seed thou art.
6 But he forbade such to come unto himself; and Lucifer came and spake unto the man again, saying: Behold, here is some of the fruit of that tree; and it shall make thee wise.
7 And Adam spake unto him saying, Yea, I shall not partake of that fruit; behold The Lord hath commanded me, saying that in the day I should partake of it, I should surely die.
8 ¶ And Lucifer again came unto him a third time in the Garden and he spake unto him, even with the tongue of a serpent, saying: Behold the fruit of this tree; thou fearest to taste of it, yet hath thou not been given freely to choose?
9 Therefore, thou shalt not surely die, but shall be as YHVH of Elohim, yea even as the gods, knowing good and evil.
10 But behold, my servant Adam stood firm upon the rock of mine commandments and would not eat, for he knew that Lilith had eaten and she was to be found in the Garden no more; and thus he was blessed.
11 ¶ And it came to pass that Eve too was found in the Garden by that serpent, Lucifer.
12 And he spake unto her saying: Eve, here is some of the fruit of that tree; it shall make thee wise; come and behold, for it is delicious to the taste and very desirable.
13 And Eve did not know who this was that would tempt her to disobey the Lord her God, thus she inquired to know his intent and wherefrom he came.
14 And behold, Lucifer did lie unto her, stating in truth that he was her brother; yet he did not reveal that he had fallen from the grace of God, and kept not his first estate, and was cast out;
15 And he, Lucifer, our common enemy, whom Michael, who is Adam, had thrust out, had been placed in the Garden to tempt man and to try him, that he may know by his own experience the good from the evil.
16 Thus he lied also in stating this; as he is now a brother only to wickedness and darkness, and no longer of the children of Elohim.
17 And thus Eve asked him: Thou say thou art my brother, and come here to persuade me to disobey YHVH the Lord, who is the very Father of my flesh?
18 And with this Lucifer became angry, and said unto the woman, Behold, I have said nothing of the Lord.

19 Yea, I want thee to eat of the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and evil that thine eyes may be opened, for that is the way our very Father gained his know-ledge.
20 But behold, this was a lie, for Elohim was perfect even in all things, thus being God without beginning or end of days.
21 And Lucifer, being more subtle, said unto her, Behold, ye must eat of this fruit so as to comprehend that everything has its opposite: good and evil, virtue and vice, light and darkness, health and sickness, pleasure and pain:
22 Thus thine eyes shall be opened, and thou shall have knowledge.
23 And thus, being tricked by that serpent, Eve did eat, believing there was no other way.
24 And thus in her innocence, she did lose her inheritance; and thus began the days of her probation upon the earth.
25 ¶ And it came to pass that the woman. having eaten the fruit, her eyes were opened and she feared what she had done;
26 And in her fear believed that devil again when he taught her to go and give the fruit of that same tree unto Adam.
27 ¶ And thus it is forever in the days of man: behold, as one falls so to do they seek to drag another down too that they be not alone in their sin.
28 And behold, even as men do fall, so too might they be saved; and they that are saved desire to bring others unto salvation in Christ.
29 Yea even as one rises in Grace they desire to lift another up unto Christ and salvation.
30 Yea, and even as Lilith sought to gain profit over her husband, Eve sought only to remain with him and to be a helpmate unto him, and for him to be a helpmate unto her;
31 And thus we see that even those with good intent might bring forth destruction on man.
32 And so too shall I show unto thee that I was made a Savior for him, as was counseled in the beginning;
33 That man may be brought forth by the power of the redemption and the resurrection, and come again into my presence, and unto the presence of the Father, and with us partake of eternal life and exaltation. Even so, Amen.

Chapter 8

Revelation on the fall of Adam received in Ohio on January 12, 2016.

1 Behold, I have spoken to thee of the fall of Lilith, and too of the fall of Eve; and now I shall speak unto thee of the fall of Adam.
2 And Eve's eyes were now open, she being as the gods to know good from evil;
3 Thus she knew that she had sinned and broken the first commandments I gave unto mankind in the Garden.
4 ¶ And behold, she came unto Adam, her husband, with some of the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and evil, saying: Adam, here is some of the fruit of that tree; behold it is delicious to the taste and very desirable.
5 And the man asked of her, Doth thou know of what fruit that is?
6 And the woman she spoke unto him, answering him, saying: Yea, behold it is the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and evil.
7 And at this the man worried, saying: I cannot partake of it; doth thou not know that the Lord God, yea the very Father of us, by way of placing us here in this garden; he hath commanded us not to partake of the fruit of that tree?
8 And Eve, her eyes being open, asked the man, Doth thou intend to obey all of the commandments of the Lord God?
9 And the man, Adam, answered her, saying: Yea, all of them.
10 Now Eve, her eyes being open was wise, and thinking that this thing Adam had said was foolishness; and she sought to trick him;
11 For she too had become wise after the manner of the serpent from whom she had gained the fruit.
12 ¶ And it came to pass that she spake unto the man, saying: Doth thou not remember that the Lord commanded us that we should multiply and replenish the earth?
13 Yea, I have partaken of this fruit and by so doing shall be cast out, and thou shalt be left a lone man in the Garden of Eden.
14 Now Adam knew not whence Lilith had gone, only that she had eaten of the fruit and was no more to be found among them in the Garden.
15 Thus Adam, not wanting to be alone and not wanting to lose Eve too, his second wife, thus did he think he only had but two choices.

16 Behold, in his innocence, Adam believed that he could on the one hand sin and eat of the fruit or on the other sin and be alone, thus unable to multiply, being a lone man.
17 For Adam did not understand that the Lord God could take Him another man and thus plucking him, place him too in the Garden;
18 Thus Adam did not know that the Lord God could then give unto him a third wife.
19 ¶ And behold, it came to pass that Adam too, in his innocence, did partake of the fruit of that tree, knowing not that there was still a plan for him.
20 For behold, that tree represented the love of God, even Elohim, our Mother in heaven; and to partake of it unworthily, before it was time, was to sin before God.
21 And thus, through Adam and Eve his wife all mankind have a portion of Her spirit that we may be wise, as to know good from evil, yea and this was the plan from the beginning.
22 ¶ And thus ye worship the Father in my name, even Jesus who is the Christ; that they might come again unto that Elohim that brought life to their spirits.
23 And to this end was I born into the world, that my light, even the light of Christ, might shine through the darkness of the probation of man,
24 That all might be born again unto me and have my Holy Spirit to be with them.
25 But Adam knew this not, nor Eve his wife and thus they sought wisdom of the world and of themselves and not from me, the Lord their God.
26 ¶ But behold, there was and is a plan, that man may face the justice of God with the mercy of the Lord and both ends be met that they may regain their inheritance.
27 For behold, Eve too did partake of the fruit of that tree in temptation,
28 Yet she came unto Adam that he should become wise even as her, that they remain equals, for she was born such by his side.
29 ¶ And thus Adam partook of the fruit that they should remain together, as the Lord God commanded them.
30 And this was made possible for I have swallowed up victory over sin and death for all those that would come unto me;
31 Therefore, man should be faithful unto his wife, or even unto their wives, even as Adam was faithful unto Eve, who too was faithful unto him.

32 Yea, and they did journey forth from the garden together and did remain a helpmate unto each other.
33 ¶ And behold, I command those that shall read to give heed to that which is written;
34 And they shall pray always that I may unfold the same to their understanding.
35 And they shall give heed unto these words and trifle not, and I will bless them. Amen.

Chapter 9

Revelation on the confession of Adam and Eve received in Ohio on January 12, 2016.

1 Yea, and thou hast perceived that Adam fell; in his foolishness he lost his inheritance;
2 But this I knew should be, and so too did he before he was born;
3 And behold, to this end was he born, to be the first man unto God, even as I should be the last.
4 For behold, in my Father's name did I create the Heavens and the Earth, and thus I am the beginning and the end.
5 So too was Adam with me in the beginning, as thou were also with me in the beginning.
6 ¶ But I am before the beginning, the Only Begotten, even before the creation of thy spirit by God who is our Father.
7 For behold, I am the same which spoke, and the world was made, and all things came by me;
8 And I am he which knoweth all things, for all things are present before mine eyes.
9 ¶ And it came to pass that Adam did fall and thus Lucifer thought to thwart the designs of God;
10 But behold he did not account for the righteousness of my servants, Adam and Eve.
11 For, knowing wisdom, Eve said unto Adam, after he is partaking of the fruit: Yea, it is better for us to pass through sorrow that we may know the good from the evil.
12 ¶ And it came to pass that Eve spoke unto Lucifer saying: I know thee now; behold thou art Lucifer, he who was cast out of the presence of God for rebellion.

13 But behold, this Wisdom was from God, for the Spirit had not yet fallen upon Adam and Eve, but the wisdom in them from their Mother had been planted in their hearts from the fruit of that tree;
14 And thus, ye see the Light of Christ is given to every man, that he may know good from evil;
15 Wherefore, I, the Lord, might show unto you the way to judge, and behold this is how she was warned.
16 ¶ And thus did Lucifer say unto her, wisely, as to the wisdom of the world: Yea, and I see that thine eyes are now open, even as I promised.
17 For he sought to keep them trapped and ensnared in his lies, as he had Lilith.
18 ¶ And it came to pass that Adam looked upon the serpent and saw his apron of priestcraft and asked him: Yea, what is this apron that thou hast covered thyself with?
19 For behold, up to this time, man was naked as to the things of the Lord;
20 Yeah, this is not to say that Adam and Eve wore nothing, save it be their skins; yea they were naked as to clothing themselves in righteousness;
21 And, knowing good from evil, Adam saw that Satan was clothed in wickedness.
22 ¶ And it came to pass that Adam asked him again, saying: What is that skin that ye wear?
23 ¶ And twice did Lucifer seek to yield not unto the man an answer, but behold even as he was tempted three times, so too did the man ask a third time: Behold, what is this apron with which thou hath clothed thyself?
24 And it came to pass that devil, seeking to fool the man, spake unto him upon the third time, saying: It is an emblem of my power and priesthoods.
25 Yeah, and behold; the devil hath no power but unto evil and priestcraft and sorcery and wickedness;
26 Thus the devil called his darkness power, and his priestcraft priesthood to mock that which is holy before me.
27 ¶ At this, the man, Adam, knowing right from wrong by the power given him from the fruit of that tree, which is the spirit of Christ given unto every man, yea even my Light unto them;
28 Thus he did say unto that devil: I am looking for YHVH, my Father, to come down to give us further instructions.

29 And behold, this made the devil angry, and Lucifer said unto him, in much mocking: O! thou art looking for God to come down?
30 But behold, hearing the voice of Adam, calling upon the name of the Lord, Elohim spoke unto me, saying:
31 My beloved Son, we promised the sons and daughters of man that we should visit them and give them further instructions; Come, let us go down.
32 ¶ Thus did the Father send me down, and came I down with the Father, even as we did unto my servant Joseph;
33 And we were then with them, the men and that devil, even in the Garden.
34 And when we entered the Garden, Adam and Eve did hear, and Satan caused that fear should come over him, that the fate of Lilith, unknown to Adam, should fall on him and his wife, Eve.
35 ¶ And it came to pass that, mocking God, Lucifer gave unto Adam to make for themselves aprons of leaves to hide that they were naked in the things of the Lord, saying:
36 See ye art naked; take thee some fig leaves and make unto thee aprons; least Elohim see thy nakedness; Behold, hide yourselves with much speed!
37 And Adam and Eve hid, but unlike Lilith, they did not flee the Garden before us; yea they stood in our presence yet hidden from before us.
38 ¶ And it came to pass that I called out for man, knowing that they had hidden themselves; and the man and his wife called out, confessing their sins, even their nakedness.
39 And though they sought repentance, they did not confess their sins unto themselves;
40 But behold they placed blame one to another and upon that serpent, even that devil, Lucifer.
41 ¶ And it came to pass that I did curse him and cast him out; yea my servants, Sanvi, Sanzanvi, and Semangel commanded him saying unto that serpent: Depart!
42 ¶ And then said I unto Adam: Be not sorrowful, my son Adam, for thou did wish to become a god and yet did thou transgress my command.
43 For behold, knew he not that for this end came he into the world.
44 And I spoke unto him again saying: Behold, I will establish thee, not at this present, but after the days of thy probation, that thou may prove thyself.

45 And thus I prepared them to be sent out of the garden.

Chapter 10

Revelation on the washing of the Priesthood received in Ohio on January 12 & 16, 2016.

1 And there, in the Garden, said I unto them: I wash thee preparatory to your receiving your anointings, that you may become clean from the blood and sins of this generation.
2 And behold, I did command them to do these things one unto the other, instructed I them by the mouths of my servants; Sanvi, Sanzanvi and Semangel.
3 And thus did Adam wash Eve, and thus did Eve wash Adam.
4 ¶ And thus did I the Lord their God say unto them, by the mouths of my servants:
5 I anoint thy head, that thy brain and thy intellect may be clear and active;
6 Thy ears, that thou mayest hear the Word of the Lord;
7 Thy eyes, that thou mayest see the glory of God;
8 Thy nose, that thou mayest smell of the offerings of the Lord;
9 Thy mouth, that thou mayest speak forth His praise;
10 Thy neck, that it may bear up thine head properly;
11 Thy shoulders, that they may bear the burdens that shall be placed thereon;
12 Thy back, that there may be marrow in the bones and in the spine;
13 Thy breast, that it may be the receptacle of pure and virtuous principles;
14 Thy vitals and bowels, that these may be healthy and perform their proper functions;
15 Thy arms, that thou may be strong to perform His work;
16 Thy hands, that they may be strong and wield the sword of justice in defense of truth and virtue;
17 Thy loins, that thou may be fruitful and multiply and replenish the earth, that thou might have joy in posterity;
18 Thy legs, that thou might run and not be weary, and walk and not faint;
19 Thy feet, that they might be swift in the paths of righteousness and truth.

20 ¶ And thus did I command Adam to say unto Eve, and Eve unto Adam; and behold they were faithful.
21 ¶ And then commanded I them, to place their hands on one another's heads, to seal the washing.
22 But behold, when thou doest as such, behold a High Priest or High Priestess should perform the work, but at such time Adam and Eve were the only living to be ordained unto me.
23 ¶ And thus did I instruct Adam to say unto Eve: Eve, Mother of All Living; having authority, I lay them my hands upon thy head and seal upon thee this washing, that thou may become clean from the blood and sins of this generation through thy faithfulness. So mote it be. Amen.
24 But behold, these things shall thou seal unto me in my name, yea even the name of Jesus.
25 And thus did I teach them, through the mouths of my servants, Sanvi, Sanzanvi and Semangel.

Chapter 11

Revelation on the anointings of the Priesthood received in Ohio on January 16, 2016.

1 And behold, whilst still in the Garden did I anoint them also, that they, Adam and Eve, would be properly Initiated;
2 And after their feet were washed, and that washing sealed, thus were they anointed:
3 Behold, I commanded them by the mouths of my servants, Sanvi, Sanzanvi and Semangel, to put consecrated oil upon each other's heads and to bless one another, saying:
4 I pour this holy anointing oil upon thy head and anoint thee preparatory to thy becoming a priest or a priestess unto the Most High God; hereafter to rule and reign in the house of God forever.
5 ¶ And I commanded them to say unto one another thus, and this they did, calling one another by name, and stating the authority that I had given them.
6 ¶ And behold, these were the words which I gave unto them in the Garden to anoint one another:
7 I anoint thy head, that thy brain and thy intellect may be clear and active;
8 Thy ears, that thou may hear the Word of the Lord;

9 Thy eyes, that thou may see the glory of God;
10 Thy nose, that thou may smell of the sweet fragrance offered unto the Lord;
11 Thy mouth, that thou may speak forth His praise;
12 Thy neck, that it may bear up thy head properly;
13 Thy shoulders, that they may bear the burdens that shall be placed thereon;
14 Thy back, that there may be marrow in the bones and in the spine;
15 Thy breast, that it may be the receptacle of pure and virtuous principles;
16 Thy vitals and bowels, that they may be healthy and perform their proper functions;
17 Thy arms, that thou may be strong to perform His work;
18 Thy hands, that they may be strong and wield the sword of justice in defense of truth and virtue;
19 Thy loins, that thou may be fruitful and multiply and replenish the earth, that you might have joy in thy posterity;
20 Thy legs, that thou might run and not be weary, and walk and not faint;
21 Thy feet, that they might be swift in the paths of righteousness and truth.
22 ¶ And then did they again lay their hands one upon the other, this they did to confirm and seal the anointings.
23 ¶ And thus did Eve say unto Adam: given authority from the Lord, I lay my hands upon thy head and confirm upon thee this anointing, wherewith thou hast been anointed in the temple of our God, within this Garden; preparatory to becoming a king and a priest unto the most high God; hereafter to rule and reign in the house of God forever, and seal upon thee all the blessings hereunto appertaining, through thy faithfulness; So mote it be, Amen.
24 ¶ And again, I say unto thee, that thou shall do this in my name, sealing them up in the name of Jesus Christ.
25 And behold, these Initiatories and these Endowments are to prepare thee for service in my kingdom and exaltation in the Celestial worlds,
26 And these should not be seen as a requirement for salvation in the kingdom of God;
27 For the Endowment is given as one dedicates him or herself to a life of service to the Lord their God;

28 And all I require of this generation is a sacrifice unto me of a broken heart and a contrite spirit;
29 For whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him shall I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost.
30 ¶ Behold, the Endowment is an invitation to join the Church of the Firstborn; and this invitation is extended to all.
31 And I say unto thee, O man: Understand that if thou proceed and receive in thyself the full endowment, you will be required to take upon thee sacred obligations in your service to your Lord and Savior, even Jesus Christ;
32 Yea, and the violation of which shall bring upon thee the judgments of God; for I, the Lord your God shall not be mocked.
33 Therefore, all should be given warning that if they so desire to withdraw rather than accept these obligations of their own free will and choice, they may make it known.
34 Yea, and there is no harm in this, for behold not all that come unto me are called to the work;
35 But those that desire to do the work are called, and thus shall these be washed and anointed. Even so, Amen.

Chapter 12

Revelation on the garments of the Priesthood and the new name received in Ohio on January 16, 2016.

1 And at that day, after receiving their Washing and Anointing, Adam and Eve were ready to leave the Garden, to preach repentance in my name to those outside.
2 But behold, I had clothed them only in spiritual righteousness by my Grace; they had yet to put upon them the robes of my priesthood.
3 ¶ And it came to pass that I set them, even Adam and Eve before the altar, facing eastward, and there gave unto them the Garments of the Holy Priesthood;
4 There I did show unto them the proper wearing of these holy garments; tying it in a bow on the right side for these as they wert new to my works.
5 And this I did to prepare them to leave the Garden.
6 ¶ And it came to pass that they were given new names by my servants, Sanvi, Sanzanvi and Semangel.

7 And there they were then instructed to bless one another as such:
8 Having authority on the name of God, I place this garment upon thee, which thou art to wear in service to the Lord throughout thy life;
9 Inasmuch as thou doth not defile it, but are true and faithful to thy covenants, it will be a shield and a protection to thee against the power of the destroyer until thou hast finished thy work here upon the earth;
10 With this garment, I give thee a new name, which thou should always remember, thy name is Michael for the man and Chavah for the woman, and thus was given unto them a new name.
11 ¶ And further, they blessed one another, as they were moved by the power of the Holy Spirit.
12 And thou too shall do this, for thy garment represents the garments given to Adam and Eve when they were found naked in the Garden of Eden and is called the Garment of the Holy Priesthood;
13 Then shalt thou say: We leave with thee this blessing in the spirit of prophecy and in the name of our Lord and Savior, even Jesus Christ; So Mote It Be. Amen.
14 For behold, all things shall be done in my name, for thou art mine.
15 ¶ And this shall ye say unto the world when they receive these things:
16 Turn thee away from sin as thy father and mother, Adam and Eve, and walk the path of righteousness;
17 Behold, this is the secret mystery of the reverence of the Lord.
18 Those who are worthy, these shall go directly to the secret, for unto them the mystery has been revealed;
19 And I say unto these, look and see, for only unto those filled with the Spirit of God shall be revealed the secret of God.
20 ¶ Thus I say unto thee: Proclaim peace; praise God, the ruler above, in my name; yea preach repentance in my name;
21 And the chosen shall create heaven on earth; the beauty of Israel shall even blossom from their bosoms;
22 For prayers proclaim the glory; by prayer shalt thou stay upon the path of the Lord.
23 Therefore, give praise that thou may grow in grace that the world shall see my perfection in thee.
24 ¶ And thus were Adam and Eve made clean, anointed, and clothed, as thou too have been done;

25 And, as all shall do, just as Adam and Eve when they too prepared to leave the Garden into the world.
26 Let them that hath ears listen, and those that have lips share the secret of the Lord. Even so, Amen.

Chapter 13

Revelation on the "threads of the garments" received in Ohio on January 16, 2016. Compare to the Book of Raziel, verses 26-27.

1 And it came to pass that the Lord called, and another angel came among them; and his name was Raphael;
2 And the Lord introduced the angel to Adam and Eve, commanding them to listen to him as they had Sanvi, Sanzanvi and Semangel.
3 And behold, Raphael was called to be Melchizedek in the flesh and is the king of peace;
4 And he is the angel of mysteries, making known unto man the secrets of God, yea and even the revealer of the Rock of God.
5 And he is an angel of healing, for when he stirs the waters he brings healing to those that do wash in it.
6 And thus he was called upon by the Lord to teach his servants, Adam and Eve, that they might be healed of their sins against the Lord their God.
7 ¶ And unto them he said: The root of the commandments of God is love; and the love of God is the thread of the Garments of the Priesthood.
8 ¶ Behold, thine ears hath been anointed, that thou mayest hear the Word of the Lord;
9 And the first thread of the Garments of the Priesthood harmonizes with the ears; thus do not be deceived by hearing lies, nor hear the ending of the Word.
10 The path to God is straight (Ysrael) and hears the decrees.
11 ¶ Behold, thine eyes have been anointed, that thou mayest behold the glory of God;
12 And the second thread of the Garments of the Priesthood harmonizes with the eyes; thus shalt thou see by raising up the eyes.
13 Do not let thine eyes brim with tears, that after weeping they do not close;

14 Thine eyes are the windows of the soul; speak by the power of the eyes, lest you forget the words seen; yea, cast down thy eyes to salvation.
15 And the eye of revelation is that of understanding, showing unto thee the Crown of God (Keter); and it rests between the eyes.
16 ¶ Behold thy nose hath been anointed, that thou may smell the sweet offerings of the Lord;
17 The third thread of the Garments of the Priesthood harmonizes with the nose.
18 Let thy nose be not irritated or excited by the sweet scent of idolatry, nor desire to keep unto thyself the offerings given unto the Lord, but rather smell the sweet scents of the Sabbath, and other beautiful things of the Lord.
19 ¶ Behold thy mouth hath been anointed, that thou mayest speak forth God's praise;
20 The fourth thread of the Garments of the Priesthood harmonizes with the mouth.
21 Have patience; let the tongue not speak words out of anger;
22 Yea, of all words written, do not labor to make the oath without the intent to keep it, that thy promises be sure.
23 Do not deceive by words or speaking the name of God in vain; do not make the oath and speak falsehoods that thy words be pure.
24 Yea, perfection is of God and the Son of Man alone, all else are made perfect in Him, therefore let the Spirit be thy bridle.
25 ¶ Behold thy neck hath been anointed, that it may bear up thine head;
26 Thus, the fifth thread of the Garments of the Priesthood harmonizes with the throat.
27 Do not swallow any abominations, but maketh to eat unleavened bread, which is to say, only in righteousness and moderation.
28 ¶ Behold, thy hands hath been anointed, that they may be strong and wield the sword of justice in defense of truth and virtue;
29 Thus, the sixth thread of the Garments of the Priesthood harmonizes with the hands.
30 Do not lay the hand in sin and do not steal, but take hold of the Word of God;
31 Yea, open the door of the house of God with the hand and bind the signs and tokens by the means of it.

32 ¶ Behold thy loins hath been anointed, that thou may be fruitful and multiply and replenish the earth, that thou might have joy in posterity;
33 Thus, the seventh thread of the Garments of the Priesthood harmonizes with the loins.
34 Do not commit adultery, but to thy house be true that thou mayest have health in the navel, marrow in the bones, strength in the loins and in the sinews;
35 And that the power in the Priesthood shall be upon thee, and upon thy posterity through all generations of time, and throughout all eternity.
36 Be fruitful and multiply; have joy in thy posterity;
37 Yea, do this and the Lord YHVH your God shall circumcise thy hearts and the hearts of thine descendants.
38 ¶ Behold, thy feet hath been anointed, that they might be swift in the paths of righteousness and truth;
39 And the eighth thread of the Garments of the Priesthood harmonizes with the feet.
40 Thus, do not walk about after strange gods and thou shalt not stumble and fall;
41 Yea, walk after YHVH, the Lord God; journey by all paths, as commanded by the Lord God as spoken unto thee by the Holy Spirit;
42 And watch thy feet as you walk to the house of God, that thou shall do so in supplication before the Lord.
43 ¶ Man is to remember these eight things for all time; let them be written in the heart;
44 Ears first, eyes second, nose third, mouth fourth, neck fifth, hands sixth, loins seventh, and feet eighth.
45 Yea, do not sin by these, for the heart is with each;
46 Yea consider therefore the thoughts of all thou shalt meet:
47 Love thy neighbor as thyself, for to love another is to love the Lord God.
48 Yea, do these and ye shall be blessed. So mote it be, Amen.

Chapter 14

Revelation on the Torah of Sacrifice received in Ohio on January 16, 2016.

1 And behold, knowing I that Adam and Eve should be faithful, I did have my servants Sanvi, Sanzanvi and Semangel give unto them the First Endowment.
2 For behold, the Endowment is given in four parts; two in the lesser or Levitical Priesthood of the administering, and two in the greater or High Priesthood of the ministry.
3 The first is given as one enters back into the world enlightened after meeting the Lord in the Garden, as did Adam and Eve;
4 And I would that thou shall give such to all Deacons and Teachers, as they prepare to bring forth my word out unto the world.
5 And the second is given unto those that shall be my Priests and Priestesses, for these shall give unto mankind my saving ordinances.
6 The last two are given as my servants unto the High Priesthood; one for the Elder and one for the High Priest and High Priestess;
7 For these shall see unto the needs of my vineyard, and these they shall know to assist them, and they do my works of righteousness here upon the earth.
8 And before leaving the Garden, behold Sanvi, Sanzanvi and Semangel did give unto them such.
9 ¶ And wearing their garments, Adam and Eve came unto Sanvi, Sanzanvi and Semangel, prepared at that time to be dressed in the robes of the priesthood.
10 And they then verified that they did receive a new name unto me at the time they received their garments, and that they did still remember these names.
11 ¶ And thus they, Adam and Eve his wife, approached the altar;
12 The first facing East, the other speaking in the name of the Lord standing on the opposite, the one facing the other.
13 And thus did I command unto them to say: This Endowment is to prepare thee for service unto the Lord, and exaltation in the Celestial Kingdom, and thus are not requirements unto thy salvation in the kingdom of God.
14 The Endowment is given unto thee as thou hast dedicated thyself to a life of service to the Lord;

15 Yea, and thus the full endowment is an invitation to join the Church of the Firstborn and be one with God; and behold, this invitation is extended to all.
16 Understand therefore that if thou proceed and receive thy full endowment, thou will be required to take upon thyself sacred obligations in service to the Lord;
17 Yea, and the violation of which will bring upon thee the judgments of God, for God shall not be mocked.
18 If thou desire to withdraw rather than accept these obligations of thine own free will and accord, thou mayest now make it known.
19 ¶ And behold, it came to pass that each did accept that which they were charged with and given.
20 And thus, each were given a green apron of fig leaves and asked to put this on over their garments.
21 And when thou shall do this, thou shalt first remove thy shoes and thy gartel for these works are holy unto me;
22 Then, putting the apron on over the Garment of the Priesthood the gartel should be returned to the waist in the same fashion as it was when it was removed, with the bow to the right, and the shoes shall then be returned to the feet.
23 ¶ Then taught I unto them, by my servants: This apron represents the Holy Priesthood that thou have been ordained to, and the oaths thou hast made,
24 That thou should remember to repent of thy sins oft before me, and the priesthood and oaths that I did impart unto thee here in the Garden;
25 And this I do give unto thee that thou might worship me, and through me the Father in spirit and in truth, and that through me thou might return to the presence of thy God.
26 ¶ And thus I gave unto them that apron of cloth, spun from leaves, that they should remember to repent of their sins before me and the priesthood and oaths that I did impart unto them in the Garden.
27 And behold, I did teach them by the means of the holy emblems I did placed I upon them;
28 And I made them garments of skins, made holy unto me by the emblems placed I upon them:
29 The square for the justice of Elohim, and the compass for my mercy; for behold in my atonement are both ends met;

30 And the symbol of my Holy Spirit and also a sign unto them and to all generations that every knee shall bow and every tongue confess that I, even Jesus, am the Christ: Son of the Living God.
31 And this I shall give unto all that shall serve me that they may remember that from the beginning they might be saved in me by my name if they are faithful.
32 ¶ Then I commanded them next to say unto the other: Thou art to be given the token of the Law of Sacrifice with its accompanying name, and sign at the altar;
33 Behold, we desire to impress upon thy mind the sacred character of the token of the Law of Sacrifice, and its sign;
34 Yea, and always remember these covenants; to observe and keep the Law of Sacrifice, as contained in my Word.
35 And behold, this was the beginning of the sacrifice of animals unto me.
36 ¶ And then, from across the altar, each was given the Token of the Law of Sacrifice;
37 And to make this token, the individual will clasp the right hand with the right hand of the other presenting the endowment, placing the joint of the thumb directly over the first knuckle of one another's hand.
38 And the name of this token is the new name received with one's garments; each should share their names with the other as they give the token.
39 ¶ And then, from across the altar, each was given the Sign of the Law of Sacrifice;
40 This sign is made by bringing the right arm to the square, the palm of the hand to the front, the fingers close together, and the thumb extended.
41 And thus did they give unto one another the token and the sign of the Law of Sacrifice at the altar;
42 ¶ And I saw that all things which I had made were good.
43 For behold, this I did give them that they might worship me and through me the Father in Spirit and in Truth, and that through me they might return to the presence of God.
44 And by this did that which they had made become that which they sought; even an apron of the holy priesthood that both did have access to, and with this the first signs and tokens of that priesthood;
45 And the Office of the Priesthood that Adam did receive that he might offer sacrifices unto me, in similitude of my sacrifice,

yea as I AM, the Only Begotten of the Father, which is full of grace and truth.
46 And the power of the Priesthood after the Order of the Son of God unto Eve did I give, that she might come unto me in prayer, and that she might pray over her seed, even to bless them.
47 ¶ Yet they did not yet know why they should do these things which I, the Lord, did command them.
48 Nevertheless, said Elohim unto me: Behold, these wish to know Good from Evil,
49 Therefore, see that Adam and Eve are driven out of this garden into the lone and dreary world, there these may learn from experience to distinguish good from evil unto themselves.
50 And as it was said, so was it done.
51 ¶ And it came to pass that they did leave the Garden and my presence to bring forth my Gospel unto the world of mankind, to the eternal downfall of Satan, wickedness and evil.
52 And they did wear these and were faithful and became holy through mine atonement unto man.

Chapter 15

Revelation containing the teachings of Raphael on the Torah of Sacrifice received in Ohio on January 16, 2016. Compare to Raziel, verses 1-5.

1 And it came to pass that upon leaving the Garden, I sent my servant Raphael to instruct them further.
2 And Raphael said unto them: Blessed are the wise by the mysteries coming from the wisdom of that tree, given them of the Lord God.
3 Light is given to teach truth unto mankind; the power of the Lower and High Priesthoods is the foundation of the glory of Elohim.
4 This secret word, for it is as yet unknown to the world, is as milk and honey upon the tongues of the righteous;
5 For now, it be to you alone; for behold, these teachings are no longer foreign unto you.
6 ¶ And a commandment I give unto thee, not of my will, but a commandment of YHVH:

7 Stand in the middle of the day, without provocation and without reward, and pray unto God that thou mayest learn the tributes of the reverence of Elohim.
8 ¶ Behold, thou art cast out from the Garden and the face of God, this is but for a time;
9 Turn away thou from evil, journey on the path of righteousness that through Grace thou might see the face of God again while upon the earth.
10 ¶ Behold, I say unto thee: The great secret is reverence to the Lord; for the worthy go directly to the secret.
11 For now, only reveal the secret of God to those that serve the Lord;
12 But the time shall come that all shall know, and at that last day, every knee shall bow, and every tongue confess these secrets.
13 ¶ Yeah, and there are three secrets corresponding to the Law; and all secrets correspond to these three.
14 The first commandment is the first wisdom: Reverence of the Lord.
15 And Reverence of the Lord is the first knowledge;
16 Yea, the beginning of wisdom is reverence of the Lord, corresponding to three wisdoms.
17 And of the outer wisdom, rejoice and build the house of wisdom with the secret of the foundation.
18 Be wise by opening the heart to this secret; for there are but three types of secrets:
19 The secret of the journey, the secret of origins, and the secret of the laws of God;
20 These are made clear by the help of the Almighty God.
21 ¶ There are three kinds of reverence of heaven;
22 They are reverence to the Lord, reverence to the Spirit of God, and reverence to Elohim.
23 ¶ It is made clear that reverence to the Lord is to love God and serve in love;
24 For mankind only receives happiness when they revere the Lord YHVH (Jesus Christ).
25 And it is reverence of Elohim to revere the Lord; and this shall ye do in love.
26 ¶ Desire in thy hearts, yea even write these things upon your hearts, and ye shall keep the commandments;
27 For this is the whole Law: love the Lord thy God in reverence to Elohim; yea revere Elohim, lest you come into the hands of temptation.

28 Mankind is not to serve God in temptation; not rising up by the name of the Messiah (Christ).
29 It is decreed above, and it is written in the heavens: Mankind is beloved;
30 Therefore, to love God is to love thy neighbor.
31 God spoke to you and shall lead thy sons and daughters, even they that shall obey;
32 Thus ye shall know to revere Elohim; thus ye know of love.
33 Know too that mankind is not happy to journey by the counsel of wickedness; yea, mankind is only happy to revere the Lord;
34 Therefore, show ye reverence to the God of heavens and the Earth all of thy days.
35 ¶ Write love in thy hearts, for reverence of the God of the heavens is in thy heart at all times;
36 Yea, and this love is reverence, and this reverence is the purity of the Lord.
37 And those giving reverence are loved by the Lord.
38 Behold, there is much value in living in purity of spirit;
39 Therefore, bathe in the glory of the light of Elohim.
40 Ye that have gone forth from darkness into light, these have been divided from those led astray;
41 And as the light shines down upon the waters of baptism, this is the reverence of Elohim who spoke unto thee in the Garden.
42 From love, understanding was created by the love and reverence; and a thousand generations come after from that love.

Chapter 16

Revelation on the Torah of the Gospel received in Ohio on January 16, 2016.

1 Behold, I say unto thee, here is wisdom, whereby ye may know my mercy unto the meek, yea and unto those that will but humble themselves before me.
2 And it came to pass that Adam and his wife, Eve, did leave the Garden and the presence of the Lord; and they were faithful unto the commands I gave them in the Garden.
3 For behold, I did teach them to keep sacred that which they had learned in the Garden before being cast out;
4 And we commanded them that they should not sell them at any price nor give them unto those that know not the Lord.

5 ¶ And this they did; and they called unto me oft saying: Pe le-El, asking God to hear the words of their mouths.
6 And behold, that devil did try to come among them testing their patience; bringing with him the wizards and sorcerers of the world, and with them that priestcraft.
7 But behold, my servants, Adam and Eve, sought not after idols, nor the whisperings of false spirits; for they had known me in the Garden and would not be fooled.
8 And behold, it came to pass that I sent unto them mine angels, Sanvi, Sanzanvi, and Semangel;
9 And they came unto them appearing as men, to test them about in the world.
10 And behold, Adam and Eve would neither buy nor sell the things of God nor offer to offend the Lord and kept the commandments they were given;
11 Yea, they kept their priesthoods sacred unto me.
12 And thus it came to pass that I sent unto them mine angels, Sanvi, Sanzanvi and Semangel,
13 And they came unto them as themselves; and cast out Satan from their mist and gave unto them mine Everlasting Gospel.
14 And behold, this they did line upon line, and precept upon precept; here a little and there a little.
15 For Adam and Eve had created an altar as they had seen in the temple of the Garden of Eden;
16 And thus, after their own fashion, had created a temple unto the Lord for they, and for their their children, and for all those in the world that learned of the Goodness of God.
17 And thus, at the altar of God, where too these had made their sacrifices of animals, did my servants teach them.
18 After introducing the First Endowment, thus sharing it with their children and their friends as commanded by Sanvi, Sanzanvi, and Semangel, the people of God, led by my prophet Adam and my prophetess Eve, all were given the token and sign of the Law of Sacrifice at the altar.
19 It was then, at the altar, that Adam and Eve were presented with the robe and miznefet of the priesthood;
20 And there too were they instructed to wear them as officers of the Priesthood of the Son of God.
21 Their shoes, apron, and gartel first being removed; then the robe placed over the left shoulder, over the garments;
22 And the miznefet placed upon the head, that the crown of mankind be covered to show reverence to the Lord of prayer.

23 And after this, the Lord instructed that the apron and gartel be put back upon them, over the robes, and their shoes returned to their feet.

24 ¶ Then did the one stand across from the other, they that were receiving facing east, and the other across the altar, facing they that were to receive.

25 And behold, they were instructed to do my works, and they would be blessed and lifted up at the last day.

26 Then were they given the Law of the Gospel, and also a charge to avoid all light mindedness, loud laughter, evil speaking of one another or of the Lord's anointed, the taking of the name of God in vain, and every other unholy and impure practice.

27 And I impressed upon them the sacred character of the token of the Law of Sacrifice, and its sign;

28 And to remind them of their covenants to observe and keep the Law of the Gospel and this charge, as it has been explained to them, in the Garden.

29 And thus were they instructed before the Lord by my servants, Sanvi, Sanzanvi, and Semangel.

30 ¶ And it came to pass that they were then given the token and sign of the Law of the Gospel from across the altar.

31 The token of the Law of the Gospel was given by clasping the right hands and placing the joint of the thumb between the first and second knuckles of each other's hands;

32 And the name of this token is the first given name of the person receiving it, that is their earthly or worldly name.

33 Yea, and too were they given the Sign of the Law of the Gospel from across the altar;

34 This sign being made by bringing the right hand in front, with the hand, palm up, in cupping shape, the right arm forming a square;

35 The left arm raised to the square, the palm of the hand to the front, the fingers close together, and the thumb extended.

36 ¶ And it came to pass that the token and the sign of the Law of the Gospel at the altar were given and received by all that would partake of them from across the altar.

37 And behold, they then prayed as one, they using the sign of the Law of the Gospel;

38 Praying in a circle, placing the elbows of their left arms on the right shoulder of the brother or sister to their right, with their right hand in front, with the hand, palm up, in cupping shape.

39 And thus they did in the name of the Lord, and I saw it was good, and was much pleased.

Chapter 17

Revelation on the types of offering received in Ohio on January 16, 2016. Compare to the Book of Raziel, verses 6-8.

1 And after being ordained Priest and Priestess, God sent unto them the voice of instruction from Raphael.
2 And the archangel said unto them: There are three kinds of offerings:
3 These are the burnt offering, the peace offering, and the sin offering.
4 So too are there three classes of righteousness; they are love Celestial, petition Terrestrial, and reverence Telestial.
5 The burnt offering corresponds to love; the peace offering corresponds to petition; and the sin offering corresponds to reverence.
6 The burnt offering is a sacrifice to the glory of God alone, and this is to be done as a symbol of the Son of Man who shall come to be put to death by His friends.
7 The peace offering, and sin offering are for the sake of the living body.
8 Proclaim love from the petition and petition ye shall give in reverence.
9 From love, you serve God in righteousness; therefore, give glory and honor to the kingdoms of God: Celestial, Terrestrial, and Telestial, these alone before all things.
10 In his infinite righteousness, the Lord created the universe by the Word, not by the labor of His hands;
11 God the Father, and Jesus the King are strong and wise, good and compassionate.
12 God tolerates all things, filling all the highest and lowest, sustaining in the high places and bringing forth all creatures;
13 He reveals unto men the mysteries of the universe at his pleasure, the knowledge of good and evil he has given unto them that will receive by the fruit of that tree.
14 Yea, the Lord tolerates wickedness now for the sake of the Restoration to come.

15 ¶ Behold, all blessings shall be unto the righteous who love God.
16 Give praise and laud over His works, for they are the greatest works.
17 The burnt offering is sacrifice by petition; serve in the holy place, for blessed is it and as a temple unto the Lord shall it be until the Son of Man shall come.
18 And when thou shall worship the Lord God, fall in supplication and petition, yea and with a broken heart and a contrite spirit;
19 Yea, petition for every measure of goodness, being born again for the sake of the benefit of the body of mankind.
20 This is the foundation of Chokhmah (wisdom), and of Da'at (knowledge), and from wisdom comes Chesed (mercy) and from Da'at comes Gevurah (judgment);
21 Together these bring Binah (understanding); from Binah comes the light of the day to dispel the darkness, for Binah is but Keter (the Crown) to mankind.
22 ¶ And the light shall heal the woman which is the Church of God; and she shall conceive and make sons that shall stand upright before the Lord, for they shall be pierced in the heart.
23 And Raphael blessed them, saying: Thou shall succeed in the works of the Lord;
24 Thou hast forgone wealth, and glory, and worldly treasures, all to the goodness of God.
25 Therefore, as Priest and Priestess thou shall petition the Lord above and sacrifice unto him the peace offering.
26 ¶ Give reverence and serve God in great fear.
27 Be delivered from curses of the land in which thou dwellest.
28 The punishment that came forth from the holy place, Eden, might be a blessing, if thou can see it as it is;
29 Its measure is longer than the Earth and wider than the sea.
30 ¶ Receive salvation from affliction, injury, and suffering;
31 Do not writhe in pain; do not be ruled over by foreign lands or their gods.
32 Do not bring death or speak evil but fill thy days in goodness and blessings in the world.
33 Deliver others from misfortune and affliction and destruction, yea from the fire and burden of sin.
34 The wicked here outside the Garden, without Chesed it shall prepare to burn in flames on the day of the great judgment; So mote it be, Amen.

35 ¶ And the angel of the Lord commended them further: By reverence of the Lord, rise up by sacrifice of the sin offering, teach them the ways of the Lord (YHVH).
36 Make three sacrifices: the burnt offering, the peace offering, and the sin offering.
37 Of sacrifices in the first house through the first priest in the name of the one God, three times in righteousness: by love, by petition, and by reverence.
38 Complete them and be protected by God, protecting and loving you from petition and reverence.
39 ¶ The beginning wisdom is reverence of the Lord and love of heaven, for they that love their neighbors love the Lord their God.
40 The heart of the righteous burns as flames of fire, having been judged by Gevurah and found to possess Chesed; thus keep the commandments in reverence of the Lord.
41 This the Lord requires, not making reward for reverence and love; for reverence and love, the explicit Name was created;
42 Yea all things created by the Word were created of love.
43 Behold, this is the reverence of the Almighty God (El Shaddai); and thou shalt revere God by keeping every commandment, by keeping the Law of Love.
44 ¶ Fall down in supplication and cry out to God; establish the heart and grant the petition at once;
45 Reject wickedness, but condemn not the wicked, yea, ye shall teach them righteousness.
46 Unto those that forsake reverence of the Almighty, know that to withhold mercy for sins is God's judgement; let he who has ears hear.
47 Unto those that forsake the petition, not reverencing the name of the Almighty, teach them not to desire evil, and not to let evil grow in their hearts.
48 In the middle of thy house, behold: The humble show reverence and gather in the house;
49 Stand there, and serve the Lord before God;
50 Show reverence in prayer and receive tranquility therein and the Lord shall deliver thee from all evil.
51 Dwell there in the temple of the Most High, hidden in the light of the knowledge of God Almighty.
52 Pray unto Him that He shall deliver thee from the mouth of the trap of deceivers; petition him in prayer.
53 Yea, speak saying: O God, hear thee the words of my mouth; protect us from the traps of those that would oppose thee!

54 In every petition to God Almighty, be blessed by God the Father and His Queen.
55 By the blessings of God Almighty, I say unto thee: Be fruitful and multiply.
56 ¶ God Almighty sees and turns away the wicked; therefore, be silent unto those that seek not the wisdom of God,
57 And bring forth from the secret place that which the Father reveals to you; So mote it be, Amen.
58 ¶ This Raphael said unto them, and this they taught unto all that the Lord should bring unto them.
59 And Adam and Eve did establish a church unto the Almighty God, of sixty, four hundred, and thirty; and the Lord above counted them as five hundred.

Chapter 18

Revelation on the prayer of Eve and the Law of Christ received in Ohio on January 17, 2016.

1 And it came to pass that Adam was a humble man, and so too was his wife, Eve, bowing down and rising up before the Lord, making clear the reverence of God.
2 And behold, they served God with love in written the heart, yea and with great reverence and devotion and a prayer in their hearts.
3 And it came to pass that the Lord saw them keeping the commandments, and offering sacrifices to the Lord in reverence;
4 And he too saw them rejoice in supplication serving their creator;
5 And they taught their children too that they should serve the Lord.
6 ¶ And their hearts rejoiced to petition the Lord;
7 And Elohim saw this and blessed them with sons and daughters; one of which was Abel, and the other Cain.
8 And the Lord saw too the suffering and torment of Adam and Eve as Cain fell away from the light he had once received.
9 ¶ And it came to pass that Abel knew the reverence of Elohim; but Cain did not.
10 And Cain slew Abel to get gain, and he was judged and delivered unto retribution;

11 And the Lord was as angered by the sins of man.
12 ¶ And it came to pass that Eve went into the temple of the Lord and there she prayed saying: Pe le-El; my words are difficult to speak, Elohim.
13 I revere you and speak with great difficulty, for my heart is full;
14 Yet I shall not fall but have journeyed to the temple and revere you at the Altar, lest I too be punished.
15 Elohim, O Lord, my God: judge me by my reverence and forsake me not, for now I know good from evil;
16 And I feel as though I too have had my blood spilt, even my heart breaking and broken, spilling blood upon the earth.
17 But still I revere thee O God, speaking only the very word I fear is devouring or consuming my devoted heart.
18 ¶ And it came to pass that after this did I come unto her, and the words that were spoken by the Lord, between she and me, these shall thou not write.
19 Know thou that she was comforted by my Spirit, not to fall from grace;
20 And this because she did in every place revere me, and serve the Lord her God from the reverence of her humility; and thus I did call upon her in secret at this time.
21 ¶ And behold, it came to pass that I charged her to go into her home, that she might fetch her husband, that they should be given the Third Endowment, that they might know the suffering of the Son of Man.
22 And after bringing her husband to me at the altar, my servants Sanvi, Sanzanvi, and Semangel were there before them, waiting to instruct them.
23 ¶ And, there, at the altar, they were instructed how to wear the robes of the High Priesthood.
24 Their shoes, apron, gartel, robe and miznefet were first removed, for the very ground on which they stood was holy.
25 Their robes were placed on the right shoulder over the garments;
26 Their miznefet were returned to their heads, the apron and gartel were put back on over the robes, and the shoes returned to their feet.
27 And I gave unto them a vision, and said I unto them, Look!
28 And they looked, and they beheld the Son of Man, led away bearing His cross;

29 And they saw that I went forth into that place where they crucified me;
30 And they saw, and read the title put upon the cross saying:

JESUS OF NAZARETH
THE KING OF THE JEWS.

31 ¶ And then my servants Sanvi, Sanzanvi, and Semangel said unto them: We shall now give unto thee the Sign of the Nail, in preparation to receive the Law of Consecration;
32 To give unto thee also a charge to avoid all unholy and impure thoughts and practices;
33 And we are required to remind thee of thy covenants before the Lord to observe and keep the Law of the Gospel and this charge, as it has been explained unto thee.
34 Yea, and we desire to impress upon thy minds the sacred character of the token of the Sign of the Nail, and its sign;
35 And to remind thee again of thy covenants, and so to observe and keep these thy covenants and this charge, as it has been explained unto thee.
36 ¶ And thus they gave the token and sign of the Sign of the Nail to one another, as instructed from across the altar.
37 And the token of the Sign of the Nail is received by bringing the right hand vertical, the fingers close together with the thumb extended;
38 The person giving the token placing the tip of the forefinger of the right hand in the center of the palm, and the thumb opposite on the back of the hand of the one receiving it.
39 ¶ And behold, this token represents the nails in my palm when I was crucified for mankind;
40 And the meditation of this token is the Son, which is to say my name, even Jesus Christ; the Son of God, yea the very Son of Man.
41 ¶ And the sign of the Son is made by bringing the left hand in front, with the hand in cupping shape, the left arm forming a square;
42 And this is in reverence to the bitter cup from which I drank.
43 The right hand is then brought forward, with the palm facing down, the fingers close together, the thumb extended, placed over the left hip;
44 And this in reverence of the wound in my side, which was pierced by a spear, that my bones not be broken.

Chapter 19

Revelation on the call to build a temple and teachings of Raphael received in Ohio on January 17, 2016. Compare to the Book of Raziel, verses 10-14.

1 And Adam and Eve were thus given the token of the Sign of the Nail and the sign of the Son.
2 And upon seeing the death of God for the world, Eve's heart was pained further, and she said:
3 I shall not see without raising up my eyes unto the salvation of God;
4 I shall not brim with tears, lest I forget all that I have seen.
5 ¶ And it came to pass that the man and woman went out the next day to teach the sons and daughters of God;
6 And there were five hundred of them; five hundred strong ones, 248 sons and 252 daughters.
7 Yea, there were four more daughters than sons; and the Lord said unto these: Be fruitful and multiply;
8 Therefore, establish a house of prayer even to petition my name.
9 Thus, the course of the universe is as five hundred years, let he who has ears hear, for it is treasured by God as the measure of heaven.
10 ¶ And these he commanded to go out into the world and to speak of heaven;
11 And according to God, there were not enough to serve.
12 ¶ And it came to pass that they did build a house unto the Lord, and there again, the Lord sent Raphael unto them, to teach them further instructions.
13 And behold, Raphael did say unto them: Remember the Almighty God and the Messiah of all the nations sent unto the world by the Father.
14 Behold the reverence of the Son of Man, he being aided by the name of God, protected from the evil spirits.
15 Yea, by the protection of God, ye shall lodge and speak prayers of supplication;
16 Therefore the name of God is written upon the heart of mankind, or upon all those that serve the Lord.
17 Take hold of the rod of iron, place this the Word, over your hearts;

18 Proclaim and remember the sacred names of God to protect from the evil spirits, that is YHVH.
19 ¶ And when I return I shall reveal the secret of the fourteen signs of the holy name.
20 Thus, until then praise the Lord God in prayer;
21 Yea, proclaim thy praise, and speak saying: Praised is the Ruler above, and the chosen cast down to Earth.
22 For it is written before the earth was formed or even there was dry land for a beast to roam upon,
23 Be ye cast out from heaven to Earth, the beauty of those that shall return straight to the Lord (these are called *Israel*, or the straight path to God).
24 Prayers proclaim the glory; by prayer written with flame upon thy hearts in the letters of glory, stay upon the path of the Lord, which is Israel;
25 Therefore, by the nine Sephirot, thou shalt gain Keter, which is the Crown, in the Holy Temple, the Lord's House of Prayer.
26 Of the days of the Messiah, give praise below the crown, for in these are God's Chesed (Mercy).
27 ¶ Bind to Keter (the crown) and bind therein thy hearts to the heavens;
28 Therefore, fire is the Gevurah (justice) of God in heaven;
29 By the Holy Spirit of God shalt thou create fire and see fire therein, and thou shall feel this fire as it burns within thy bosom.
30 Thus, in the house of the Lord is fire corresponding to the angel of fire, even the Holy Spirit of God.
31 Know also, the Spirit has three branches, corresponding to the three names of God and is over His temples.
32 Go now, and upon the morrow teach unto thy seed all that thou hast learned.
33 And Raphael departed, leaving Adam and Eve alone in the temple.
34 And they wondered what more houses did the Lord have than this.
35 And it came to pass that the next day, they shared the sign and token of the Sign of the Nail with those that wished to receive;
36 But behold, the vision was for them alone, and thus mankind did not yet understand the fullness of my works.

Chapter 20

Revelation on the Torah of Consecration and the teachings of Raphael received in Ohio on January 17, 2016. Compare to Raziel, verse 15.

1 And it came to pass that Adam knew his wife again; and she bare a son, and called his name Seth: For God, said she, hath appointed me another seed instead of Abel, whom Cain slew.
2 And after introducing the third portion of the Endowment, unto Seth did the Lord reveal unto his servants, Adam and Eve, the final Endowment of the High Priesthood.
3 ¶ And it came to pass that I, the Lord, came unto my house and stood before the altar; and there did I give unto my servants Adam and Eve further instructions.
4 And then did I send unto them my servants Sanvi, Sanzanvi, and Semangel,
5 And these gave unto them the final token and sign of the High Priesthood saying unto them:
6 We now give unto thee the Law of Consecration, in connection with the Law of Sacrifice and the Law of the Gospel which thou hast already received,
7 And we remind thee of thy covenants; that thou art the very Children of God.
8 And behold, throughout time thou hast consecrated thyself;
9 Thy time, talents, and everything with which the Lord has blessed thee, or with which he may bless thee, to the service of the Lord and discipleship;
10 And, as a servant of God coming forth from the Garden of Eden, thou hast further dedicated thy services to the building up of the kingdom of God on the earth.
11 ¶ And it came to pass that they, Adam and Eve, were brought before the altar in the temple,
12 And my servants said unto them: The Law of Consecration is represented in the token of the Sure Sign of the Nail;
13 Behold, this token has reference to the crucifixion of our Lord and Savior when he shall be placed upon the cross.
14 Behold, thou hast seen that those that shall crucify him shall drive nails through the palms of his hands:

15 And behold then, that the weight of his body will not cause the nails to tear through the flesh of the hands, they shall also drive nails through his wrists;
16 Hence in the palm is the Sign of the Nail, and in the wrist is the Sure Sign of the Nail, or the Nail in the Sure Place.
17 ¶ And then did I give unto them the token of the Sure Sign of the Nail and the sign of the Law of Consecration.
18 And they did give these to one another from across the altar.
19 And the token is given by clasping the right hands, interlocking the little fingers, and placing the tip of the forefinger upon the center of the wrist, keeping the thumbs parallel with the fingers;
20 And the mediation of this token is Health in the navel, marrow in the bones, strength in the loins and in the sinews, power in the Priesthood be upon me, and upon my posterity through all generations of time, and throughout all eternity.
21 ¶ And behold, the sign of the Law of Consecration shall be made by raising both hands high above the head, and while lowering the hands three times repeating aloud the words Pe le-El each time, with the motion of the hands, which by interpretation means, mouth to God.
22 The hands shall be lowered in three movements, as each word is spoken; Pe: hands above head, le: the arms are dropped to the square, El: the hands lowered to the height of one's chest.
23 And behold at this shall thou come full circle, for thou started with the prayer of thy lips as thou grew the prayer of thy hearts.
24 ¶ And in that day, they did give unto one another the token of the Sure Sign of the Nail and the sign of the Law of Consecration.
25 And this wisdom was passed down orally after the first Book of Remembrance was taken from the earth,
26 And thus this wisdom that was called secret became a mystery because men, in their own wisdom did not understand that this secret was to be revealed by my Holy Spirit, and not of man;
27 For behold, this secret is the wisdom of the soul's awakening unto the understating of God.
28 ¶ And it came to pass that after they received the fourth endowment, I sent forth my servant Raphael to give unto them further light.
29 And my servant said unto them: Behold, the image engraved in the throne of glory resembles the image of a flying cherub.
30 Let thy souls fly over as the cherub takes flight; revere God by the hand of his strength;

31 Yea, revere God by the hand of Adam, the first man to walk with God upon the earth.
32 ¶ And God resembles the Son of Man over the many waters; and thus sing thee a hymn unto God.
33 And the hymn is this: The Lord reigns forever and ever; therefore, reverence to the Son of Man, according to the written truth.
34 Yea, give the children of God the truth of the Lord of Hosts, yea and give the truth to all of mankind.
35 ¶ Do not go forth unto carved images, for the daughter of Lilith was troubled by Eve and the maiden Asherah, who is Eden, the Mother of the Earth.
36 Thus the tribes of man multiply to put forth the Law, yet these do not know the Law; but condemn them not, for they know not what they do.
37 ¶ And ye shall not speak of idolatry in the house of God;
38 Written by the finger of God, the great name and the holy symbols of God shall not be mocked.
39 ¶ The sons of God shall take the daughters of God to wife, and the sons of God shall be their husbands; and ye shall proclaim them to take one another, seeking righteousness.
40 Around them, gather twelve in a circle to pray united, corresponding to the Three as One and Three that spread out as they go forth.
41 ¶ And it came to pass that wisdom was given them, and these were taught the true order of prayer.
42 And Raphael said again unto them: Straighten the back to unite the name of God, for there truth is written;
43 And place the sealing power upon them whilst in the flesh; yea and draw above and below, dwelling in the fourth firmament, the name in the Holy Temple;
44 Thus the holy tabernacle of four coverings: the first covering is spirit; the second veil is of skin; the third is of soul; and the fourth covering is white, as is the purity of the Lord.
45 Let they with ears understand, and these shall be blessed of Wisdom in the name of the Lord; So mote it be, Amen.
46 And the angel of the Lord took leave of them, and they marveled of his words.

Chapter 21

Revelation on receiving the Endowments received in Ohio on January 20, 2016.

1 And it came to pass that Adam and his wife Eve, having proven themselves unto the Lord,
2 And, YHVH, seeing that these had kept their covenants, sent other messengers to teach them further;
3 For behold, Adam and Eve and their sons and their daughters had built altars facing east to worship YHVH, yea unto the Lord their God.
4 ¶ And it came to pass that Seth, to him also there was born a son; and he called his name Enos: then began men to call upon the name of the Lord.
5 ¶ And the Lord sent unto them once again his messengers, Sanvi, Sanzanvi and Semangel, and these taught them many things.
6 And so too did he send others, Gabriel, Raphael, Suriel, Zadkiel, Sarathiel, and Ariel didst he sent unto them.
7 And they were blessed with the wisdom of God, and taught the mysteries of reverence, the Torah was given them to teach unto the sons of men.
8 And to those that would hear, their mouths opened, and from mouth to ear was the strength and glory, the light and power of the highest taught;
9 And such were the works and the foundation of the glory of Elohim.
10 ¶ But only unto the humble were the sacred words as milk and honey to their tongues;
11 From them did the world learn truth, and how to worship and pay tribute to YHVH in reverence of Elohim.
12 Yea, and in that day many were taught to turn away from evil and journey on the path of all righteousness.
13 ¶ And behold, the secret that was taught is thus:

REVERENCE UNTO
THE LORD

yea even this:

HOLINESS UNTO
THE LORD

14 The worthy desire this secret; yea and mankind in righteousness is happy to learn this secret wisdom, even at the last days.
15 ¶ And Sanvi, Sanzanvi and Semangel came unto them and they taught them once they and others had been ordained to the Holy Priesthood after the Order of the Son of God that these should receive a portion of their Endowment.
16 And unto these will they continue to be further Endowed with both light and knowledge as they grow in Grace and in Priesthood.
17 ¶ Behold, for thee in the Fellowship of Christ, the first Endowment is given after being ordained into the priesthood, the second after being ordained a Priest or Priestess, as were Adam and Eve;
18 And the third Endowments are given after one has been ordained an Elder, and the final after being made a High Priest or High Priestess unto the Lord.
19 ¶ And behold, the endowment may be given immediately after an ordination, but should be given no more than seven days from the time one has been ordained;
20 Yea, and none may be ordained to another degree without being properly endowed in the previous degree.
21 ¶ And those receiving an Endowment should wear their garments, and be dressed in the robes of the Priesthood, as they have been given.
22 And two witnesses should come forth and testify that the individual has been washed, anointed, and clothed in the garment of the Holy Priesthood.
23 For behold, in the Garden did the Lord Initiate Adam and his wife, Eve, into the Holy Priesthood;
24 And there they did the Washing of the Feet, and there they were anointed with oil and honey;
25 And thus they were washed clean and could receive of their endowments.

Chapter 22

Revelation on love and perfection received in Ohio on January 20, 2016. Compare to the Book of Raziel, verses 16-18.

1 And it came to pass that Adam and Eve grew old, and the angel of the Lord came to them in the temple.
2 And there Raphael said unto them: In the lowest dwelling, blood is sacrificed upon the altar of degrees, therefore corresponding to the door of selflessness and humility that all must walk through.
3 Teach with selflessness and humility; bind it tight and create mercy.
4 Yea, and this sacrifice shall purify all, it receives the heat of judgement to be dry as fire;
5 And this because of the sacrifice of the Son of Man; therefore, mercy corresponds to giving, the rising of the Son upon the Cross.
6 Judgment too is dry as fire and held overheat, and over anger and wrath;
7 Therefore, when God is angry, remember that He desires that we bestow unto others even as He bestoweth, and that in this God is honored.
8 ¶ And it came to pass that the angel of the Lord commanded them saying: Remove the ashes from the burnt offerings.
9 YHVH has seen that ye were tested by the ten trials, and ye that give these to God in prayer.
10 God, the creator of the Heavens and the Earth reigns;
11 Therefore, bind ye to Keter and He shall create unto thee a delightful throne of glory in the house of the world to come.
12 And God has given unto thee a bride, a virgin; or in other words a pure desire to bestow.
13 ¶ Know ye that the perfection of the Lord is removed at this time from man;
14 Yea, rise over by counsel from God and thou shalt reach the perfection by Christ, who is to come.
15 Yea, rise up to the perfection, but not by thy power, for man canst not do this alone, but by the power of Christ.
16 Do not follow the counsel of men but take instruction from God unto perfection.

17 And perfection is thus: Love thine enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them who despitefully use you and persecute you;
18 Do this that ye may be the children of your Father who is in heaven; for He maketh the sun to rise upon the evil and on the good.
19 ¶ As thou art ministers, a High Priest and High Priestess to the Lord God, thou art to give counsel and speak to close friends.
20 Know that perfection is as two fountains or springs of wisdom, and one is justice and the other mercy; for one is to give and the other is to give what they receive, and thou shall abide, binding balance in both.
21 ¶ And God is seen by mankind as to the lifting the hand to the Lord in the first token.
22 Yea, and God desires to reside in the heart; for the faithful reach out with the heart and man is the temple of His Spirit.
23 And thus the Lord desires mankind, as according to our desires to Elohim; and God foresees every man and woman will go through ten trials.
24 And the new name is written of in the heavens and upon the earth when a soul is born unto man;
25 And the new name is given at the altar, and name of the first token is this new name, and this is the name of the soul of man.
26 The ten numbers are as nothing; thus, one and two, three and four, five and six, seven and eight, nine and ten;
27 Then all repeat; begin eleven, twelve, and so on to cleanse the desires of man; yea, nothing is concealed by language when understood by the Spirit.
28 By ten numbers, speak and close the mouth to speak profoundly that thou might grow in grace unto the 125th degree.

Chapter 23

Revelation on the Second Anointing received in Ohio on January 20, 2016.
Compare to the Book of Raziel, verses 20-21.

1 And it came to pass that Adam and Eve, after they had heard these, the words from the angel of the Lord, Raphael called them up to the altar, facing east;

2 And there, at the altar, they were instructed as to the Second Anointing.
3 ¶ And it came to pass that they gathered twelve of the Saints, instructing Seth, their son, to lead them.
4 And the twelve they had set apart to lead the Church of God gathered in a circle of prayer;
5 And Adam washed the feet of Eve, his wife, and then she did wash the feet of her husband.
6 ¶ And laying her hands upon the head of her husband, Adam, Eve did bless him and ordain him as the head of the human family, a ruler and High Priest of the Most High God, to rule and reign in the House of Israel forever.
7 And she further blessed her husband, as the Spirit directed, and all those in the circle witnessed angels coming to rejoice;
8 For they knew Adam as Michael, their archangel, he who had led them before he was born;
9 Yea he who, in the name of Jesus Christ, had cast out those that had rebelled against God.
10 ¶ And it came to pass that when it was finished, Adam did bless Eve, his wife, ordaining her a ruler and High Priestess of the Most High God, to rule and reign in the House of Israel with her husband forever.
11 And the angel and the witnesses rejoiced and shouted: Hosanna! to God and the Lamb, glorifying them forever and ever; Saying: So mote it be, and Amen.
12 ¶ And one of the angels stepped forward, and he was Raphael;
13 And the angel of the Lord spoke to Adam and Eve before all in the temple, saying:
14 At the first, Ahman and Shekinah, our Elohim, and the Only Begotten preceded the universe by an eternity;
15 And the glory of the universe is both above and below, deep and profound;
16 It is in the east and west, and in the north and south, and so too is Elohim.
17 How great is the light! It shines forth, to take away the darkness; in darkness, therefore, obscure the firmament.
18 ¶ Here is the name of God: for Elohim is the unity of God;
19 At the end is the creation of the earth and of mankind.
20 As in the heavens above, so too below; as upon the earth, so too in the heavens above; which is to say, as above so below, as below so above.

21 Thus is the sealing power given unto mankind, unto the High Priest and the High Priestess;
22 And blessed is the Patriarch and the Matriarch that use this power.
23 And by constant transformation, change and motion, is man corrected by God through teshuvah to return above.
24 The door is below, here upon the earth; pass through the gates to know the mystery of being and return to the Elohim that sent thee fourth.
25 And the door has a key, and the key is the Holy Priesthood, after the Order of the Son of God.
26 ¶ The God, El Abba, is to the east; listen and heed his voice and revelation shall pour out unto thee.
27 And the sealing power of YHVH is to the west; in the hands of mankind, as the Lord shall give unto thee from time to time.
28 And the Sabbath is to the north; in wisdom rest and renew for Shekinah is with thee.
29 The Holy Ghost is to the south, and from whence come all the spiritual gifts and the fire of purification.
30 The light of all creation reveals light in the air; darkness obscures all things;
31 All is formed; it is in all and it is all; thus, bow down by all, yea rise up and give thanksgiving in the heart.
32 And as ye bow down before God, so too shall thy ancestors go forth.
33 Understand by these teachings, revealed over the Lord;
34 Place this light in thy bosom and kiss the forehead; make thee a covenant unto the Lord in his house.
35 ¶ And much more is revealed in the secret work of the creation with help of El Shaddai.
36 And see too that the powers of God are given in harmony to mankind, as God upholds the second token, the Sign of the Law of the Gospel; yea, from Adam until twenty generations.
37 ¶ The universe was created by God; thus, bring forth small things, as God is diminutive of the true name.
38 God is as a humble man, bowing down and rising up;
39 And thus man too must bow down and rise up to make clear the reverence to his Creator.
40 Yea, man serves God with love in the heart; and great is their reverence and devotion.
41 Establish thy heart; keep the commandments; rejoice in supplication to serve the Creator of the universe.

42 Yea, and by rejoicing and reverence, serve the Lord in reverence and tremble in exaltation; yea, serve the Lord by rejoicing.
43 ¶ The heart rejoices to petition the Lord!
44 Therefore, revere Elohim and serve in fear of Hell and the day of judgment, of the suffering and torment; for this is the reverence of Elohim.
45 YHVH shall judge and deliver retribution, as angered by the sins of mankind.
46 Pray thee: Of every word, it is difficult to speak, Elohim, I do revere you and speak with great difficulty, very loudly at your feet;
47 I shall not fall to rest, but journey to the House of the Lord and revere you, lest I be punished.
48 YHVH, judge me by reverence! I revere Elohim, speaking every word devoted in my heart! So mote it be, Amen.
49 It is spoken, by the YHVH of Elohim: Revere and uphold the reverence of Elohim, not to fall from Grace.
50 Therefore, in every place, revere Elohim and serve from the reverence.
51 ¶ Behold the reverence of the Lord! Serve in love, corresponding to the burnt offering.
52 Be sustained in exaltation by the reverence of the Almighty, for not to revere is not to serve the Lord.
53 Corresponding to the peace offering, fat and blood is consumed; the remainder is to YHVH.
54 The desire of the High Priest and High Priestess is the peace offering, bringing peace in the world.
55 Serve from love and supplication, and strengthen the body; give unto mankind the light of the Law;
56 For of such is wealth and treasures and glory and understanding.
57 Revere Elohim, serving in reverence is the foundation.
58 And of the house of man, do not deprive support corresponding to the sin offering, going over sins;
59 There is great love from the petition and supplication from the reverence.
60 ¶ Yea, verily I say unto you, all those that will fellowship in my name: Listen to the words of my servant, Raphael and if ye will come unto me ye shall have eternal life.
61 Behold, mine arm of mercy is extended towards all, and whosoever will come, these will I receive; and blessed are those who come unto me.

62 Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of God, the Great I AM, YHVH; created I the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are.
63 And I was even with the Father from the beginning; I am the light and the life of the world. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.
64 I am in the Father, and the Father in me; and in me hath the Father glorified His name;
65 I came unto my own, and my own received me not.
66 And behold, the scriptures concerning my coming are now fulfilled,
67 Therefore, as many as have received me, to them have I given to become the sons and daughters of God;
68 And even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name, for behold, by me redemption comes, and in me is the Law of Moses fulfilled.
69 And know ye this: Ye shall offer up unto me no more the shedding of blood;
70 Yea, your sacrifices and your burnt offerings shall be done away, for I will accept none of your sacrifices and your burnt offerings.
71 Therefore, when ye shall read these words, and study in this, the Book of Remembrance, know that ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit,
72 For this alone do I require, and my Grace shall be enough for thee.
73 And whoso come unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, they shall I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost.
74 Behold, I have come into the world to bring redemption unto the world, to save the world from sin;
75 Therefore, shed not any blood upon thine altars for these shall not be acceptable in my name.

Chapter 24

Revelation, teachings given by the angel of the Lord, received in Ohio on January 20, 2016. Compare to the Book of Raziel, verses 22-25.

1 And the angel of the Lord spoke unto them further, saying: At this time, become wise and prosper;

2 Of the love of the blessed, after, write the secret of the mysticism of the Holy Priesthood, after the Order of the Son of God.
3 Let the men and women of the Holy Priesthood, after the Order of the Son of God be wise by reverence of the Lord God forever; and I say unto thee that this is the wisdom of the Lord God unto the world.
4 ¶ And by glory to God, choose thee a High Priest and High Priestess to lead the people of God, for thy days grow long upon the land.
5 And unto those that are chosen I say unto thee: Teach thy people to go and teach the world in the name of the Lord.
6 In prayer, give reverence to the Lord before going out into the world to battle pride and sin;
7 Yea, and if there is not reverence, enemies lay waste, prevailing over the land in every dwelling.
8 The King of all kings, YHVH your God, exalts in reverence before going on all paths.
9 Behold, the Lord is everywhere and, in every place, therefore thou are not alone;
10 He observes both the good and wicked in every place; the worthy revere the Lord in righteousness.
11 Unite the people as one in the Lord in order that the people of God be not divided; yea, work for the sake of the heavens.
12 ¶ Behold, every path is created from the blessings of God; thus, establish the heart, satisfy the Lord; he is eternal, therefore established.
13 Those on the true path shall see that all things which are good come from God;
14 That which is evil comes of that devil that tempted thee in the Garden.
15 And the devil is an enemy unto God: thou shall preach and fighteth against him continually, for he inviteth and enticeth to sin, and to do that which is evil continually.
16 Behold, that which is of the Lord God inviteth and enticeth mankind to do good continually;
17 Therefore, know thou that everything which teacheth mankind to revere the Lord, and to do good, to love God, and to serve him, comes from that God that sent you forth, even the Lord God.
18 ¶ Blessed is the Lord! He commands mankind to bind and set forth in every season.

19 ¶ Of the man who is a sinner or thief or adulterer of women, blind to consider the light of the Lord;
20 Of the wisdom, this man knows not to come near the face of God, disgraced in every dwelling created by the wisdom of Elohim.
21 ¶ Consider the wisdom of God that created the commandments, making reward for love; yea, serve the Lord a little and ye shall serve him much.
22 And mankind considers forever not to forsake the will of Elohim;
23 Yea, bring the Lord of judgment before the earthly judges and their tongues shall be bound.
24 ¶ Reveal unto mankind that the Devil rules over the necromancer and the magician, which is to say those deceivers knowing only the wisdom of this world;
25 For these engage in priestcraft —demoniacal works, or works by the knowledge of the signs of Lilith and Satan.
26 Thus do not be false or deceitful, as it is revealed to those that serve Satan, making them to appear to know all;
27 And shun the works binding with an evil spell, lest you come forth to be judged before those that reject the Lord.
28 ¶ God gives life to man in the heart; by the path of reverence, reveal all thoughts and understanding of all works.
29 God is the Lord over all people, thus know to summon the Lord of judgment;
30 Yea, speak these words to end deceit, and rise up that the words may be true.
31 And those not pure will not rise up to know of the Lord, nor of that Elohim that created them.
32 Guilt makes known when shame is necessary, saying unto these: I will not do acts of iniquity, nor deceive by speaking or writing words, not to establish before the eyes.
33 Do this and in every hour and minute, consider the Lord and search the heart, praying always;
34 Yea, examine the perfection of the Lord and keep the commandments and show reverence over thy lifetime.
35 ¶ Of the root of benevolent acts, measure not what thou hast done previously or thou shalt be judged by every word you write, of favor over all works;
36 Of the root of reverence, the words are difficult; therefore, know that thou revere Elohim and perfection.
37 Of the root of supplication, rejoice in the heart in love of God;

38 Yea, rejoice in the heart from thy petition to the Lord.
39 If ye shall do these things, therefore, ye shall be loved and protected.
40 Of the root of the light and the Law, most profound knowledge of the works of all words, and all that is made by the Lord is good. So mote it be: Amen.

Chapter 25

Revelation on the eight tasks given to Adam and Eve and a few others, received in Ohio on January 23, 2016. Compare to the Book of Raziel, verses 29-31.

1 And behold, Raphael, who is the Keeper of Secrets and the Angel of Mysteries, yeah even the keeper of the great mysteries, did send away all but Adam and Eve and they who were chosen to be the High Priest and High Priestess over the Church of God;
2 ¶ And he said unto them, in the temple of the Lord: Behold eight tasks shall I give unto thee, teach thy people to do these each in their proper order.
3 First, beginning thy rituals in prayer.
4 Second, rehearse unto all the proclamations of the Word of God.
5 Third, open thy hearts to hear and to feel that thou might learn and be blessed.
6 Fourth, place oils and flowers pleasing to the nose to welcome the Lord into thy midst.
7 Fifth, keep thy bodies clean that thy hands might give in righteousness.
8 Sixth, consecrate upon the altar in supplication before God.
9 Seventh, renew thy covenants that the body, mind, and spirit might be renewed therein.
10 Eight, thy feet walk into the temple, yea the house of study and even the house of prayer, therefore complete these that thou mayest return into the world of men in perfection.
11 ¶ Behold, I say again unto thee: The root of the reverence of the Lord is to forsake the pleasures of lust by the path of the reverence of the Lord.
12 Do not revere the Lord for the world's sake, nor for thy eternal glory;

13 Thou shalt revere for the Lord's sake, and the light of God shall spring from thee as from a fountain,
14 And by this thou shall be perfected before God in love, for it is by grace thou art saved, and thy works are as a sign unto the world.
15 As the commandments come into thy hands, thou shall labor in the works, for by thy works shall the grace of God be seen by the eyes of mankind that they too might be converted.
16 ¶ Revere Elohim not so that the secrets of the mystery might be revealed, for was not this knowledge not yet concealed before the womb?
17 Speak truthfully therefore and see that ye are not tempted.
18 Henceforth ye shall be tempted by all temptations, were it not so, how in would thou learn truth?
19 Also, learn the letters that they might reveal unto thee the Word, and teach thy children likewise that they might gain wisdom in their youth.
20 ¶ Thy heart is perfect by all commandments, as it is not necessary to be tempted, but the mind and the body must be overcome;
21 Thus at this time, know this: The Lord is great, yea and the Lord giveth all glory unto to Elohim even as thou give all glory unto the Lord.
22 Therefore go forth and serve in love, believe in love, and teach in love; and by this ye shall be known as the children of God; So mote it be.
23 ¶ And upon hearing these words, Adam and Eve did speak, saying: Elohim, we show reverence to thee;
24 Yea, it is difficult to rise up and go forth to thee by the feet.
25 And Seth and his wife, the chosen High Priest and High Priestess of the Lord, spoke as one, saying: Behold Elohim; I revere thee.
26 And it came to pass that Adam and Eve spoke again saying: Behold, our sons and daughters endured in famine of thy Word; yet now thou, our Lord, art revered.
27 Yea, it is difficult for man to rise up and bow down before God,
28 And also they that fail to rise up and bow down the Lord, His secrets shall not be revealed,
29 Nor shall the Spirit of the Lord dwell with them, and they shall suffer in darkness which is spiritual death.

30 However, thou speaketh of reverence of God with devotion in thy heart;
31 Yea, ye spoke to the Lord, and I, the servant of the Lord, honor thee in thy reverence.
32 Ye that beseech the Lord by the holy words; the weight is upon thy hearts.
33 ¶ Consider therefore the reverence of the Lord, and say in thy hearts: I revere you, O Lord; come not to bind thy Word.
34 And it is difficult to rise up beyond worldly desires to see that the root of love is to cherish the Lord.
35 ¶ The Nephesh is filled with love, yet mankind rejoiceth by passing over the pleasures of the body;
36 Mankind doth desire to reign over the pleasures of the Lord.
37 Love is rejoicing in stren-gth, ye even strengthen the heart;
38 Thus shall thou consider always to create within the desire of God;
39 Then shall mankind bring forth pleasure, walking as the bride unto the bridegroom before the love of Elohim.
40 ¶ From youth and till the passing of days, many do not come before God;
41 Yet the desire of the Lord God, the heart burns to rise up to the Lord;
42 Yea, from much love and desire shall mankind rise up to the Lord.
43 ¶ Behold the lightning of the early rain, how it doth benefit much from all without making desire of the Creator;
44 So too is the body kept in purity and holiness by love.
45 ¶ Yea, place thy hand to the highest when thou art being dragged below;
46 Bind the divisions, that ye be not cast forth to and fro by every gust of wind;
47 Deny not women their priesthood nor their sisterhood.
48 End the bickering words of fools; toil and labor one with another, making favor of the Creator.
49 ¶ The root of humility is to go away from the glory and be praised when returning before the teacher;
50 But thou shall delight not by praises but to fulfill holy desires and rejoice to cherish the Lord.
51 Know when to rest, lie down after hard labors; know when not to toil.
52 Speak thus of labor and desire, for the Lord loves they who are humble before him;

53 Therefore, go before the Lord with the name of thy friend in the house of prayer that thou might give praise to the Lord in the house of heaven together.
54 Great is the glory to revere the name of the Lord; so mote is be, Amen.
55 And Adam and Eve pondered upon what they had heard.

Chapter 26

Revelation on teachings from the angel of the Lord received in Ohio on January 23, 2016. Compare to the Book of Raziel, verses 33-39.

1 And Raphael withdrew from them for a time.
2 And it came to pass that they went out unto the people and taught them all that they had learned;
3 And Seth and his wife Azura did lead the tzaddikim, or the people of God.
4 ¶ And it came to pass that Seth did erect twin pillars, and upon them he did write the words of the Lord that all might know the light and life of the Lord God.
5 And Azura, the wife of Seth, did lead the Sisterhood of God in righteousness;
6 And they taught all that would learn the writings of the Lord that they might read the letters inscribed upon the pillars.
7 And the Sisterhood of God did bless and heal the sick and perform many miracles in the name of the Lord.
8 ¶ And it came to pass that the angel of the Lord came again unto the temple, and upon his return he said unto them: Keep all these commandments in secret;
9 In secret, go with Elohim; when keeping these commandments, may thy obedience be in secret and not by boasting;
10 And YHVH who seeth in secret shall reward thee openly.
11 ¶ In secret shalt thou pray, and when thou prayeth, thou shalt wear the tzitzit in righteousness before the Lord;
12 Thy prayers be in secret; and YHVH who seeth in secret himself shall reward thee openly.
13 ¶ Yea, and thou shalt speak of righteousness, for by the Lord art thou righteous by every commandment; thus, be not occupied by other matters.

14 Place the love of God in thy heart; reverence is necessary before him; thus, shall thou be skillful making thy rules and thy laws.
15 Rejoice before God and speak with honesty and wisdom; in every place and in thy temples, stand in awe before Shekinah; yet establish thy heart only to God;
16 Do not withhold any ordinance from those that are worthy nor passage to the endowments, as there is disgrace before making the covenant.
17 God is angered when mankind is not seen to revere him; thou shall make known to humanity these things so as to not be disgraced.
18 ¶ All passes forth, that which the hands of man make; do not make labor multiply; everyone who toils for the world toils in vain.
19 Let all thy works then be for the sake of the heavens; it is good to possess more from them of the light.
20 When you work for the Lord, be happy in the world; yea, may good things come to thee forever:
21 And they come from the assistance of the Lord who created the heavens and Earth; remember the secret is reverence of the Lord.
22 ¶ All was created in order to know and understand and make wise by the greatest and most wondrous works;
23 Bear witness there is none as, and there is none other than.
24 Write these things in the book to proclaim the secrets and reveal the strength of the creator of the universe;
25 Man is happy to learn the secrets; revere the Lord, shelter him in thy temples.
26 Come and write over the mouth of the gates of all that is above; know of the unity of God;
27 Of the glory, give the heart over to reverence; yea, bow down to Him.
28 He is one and there are not two of him: Blessed is He.
29 ¶ The Lord God is the first and the last; He is king over all the universe; there is no other unto Him.
30 God is first of all.
31 ¶ The first word is El Achad, written of a myriad of myriads before existence.
32 Before the world was, a star was fallen, as he was the first to rebel;

33 Speak sharply, for the morning star fell, as he was at the end of his glory, yea and he tried to rise greater than God: but behold there is none greater.
34 God alone is first and is last; the beginning of days and the end of days:
35 Let it be known that God is in the universe; the Lord that created the universe turned away from the universe; speak in reverence of His power.
36 ¶ Ye do not understand, as foreseen by the destruction of the earth;
37 Speak of the Lord thy God; do not permit destruction in the world; hide thy faces from it.
38 Know that, in the beginning, to create the universe Elohim wrote in the Holy Temple; written therein upon the heavens of the first place of the most holy.
39 ¶ Through the gate of Earth, mankind is falling into chaos;
40 And these kept their first estate, and those serving as angels come here to fall in the second estate, serving in chaos.
41 The Lord God has given mankind two temples; both serving mankind and for mankind to serve God;
42 That is to say, God shall dwell in mankind, and mankind shall dwell in the House of God, Holiness to the Lord.
43 ¶ Remember that to destroy is also to create; they who kept their first estate were destroyed in their second;
44 Yea, all created by God are in pairs; two worlds, heaven and Earth;
45 All enter the Garden of Eden, their path alight by the Sun and the Moon, man and woman.
46 Therefore, by being destroyed mankind is reborn, yea and falls, though is lifted up by the Son of Man;
47 He is one in the kingdom; blessed is he; So mote it be, Amen.

Chapter 27

Revelation on the fire of God received in Ohio on January 23, 2016. Compare to the Book of Raziel, verses 41-43.

1 And it came to pass that Adam and Eve watched over the church, and the Church was led in righteousness by Seth and Azura.

2 And as the Church of God grew, many men and women were called of God to the ministry, to fulfill the will of God and see to the needs of the people of the church.
3 And those that followed in the path of righteousness were blessed; and the people were one.
4 And because the pride of the people was stilled, yea, and all sought to the needs of the others, none lived in want, and the Lord God blessed them.
5 And those that would not live as one left the church, some to join other peoples, and some formed churches of men;
6 And the people of the Church of God mourned them.
7 And they that rejected the Gospel the people of the church still loved, and they that desired to come back were welcomed with tears of joy and much rejoicing.
8 ¶And it came to pass that Adam and Eve and Seth and Azura were praying alone in the temple,
9 And behold, Raphael came again unto them to give unto them the Word of the Lord.
10 And behold, he said unto them: The Lord has sent me this day to speak unto you, and I say unto thee:
11 The whole of the world, and even the whole of the universe was created by the commandments of Elohim and filled all.
12 And God's creation is united above the seven firmaments.
13 God is the ruler of all, and therefore, He has named the ten sefirot, above to below;
14 The Lord is the end of the ten sephiroth, beginning by Elohim; complete them to see everyone by these, the eyes of God.
15 ¶ Recognize all the most holy names; God begins the chosen name YHVH;
16 Reveal unto mankind that the Lord is one and created all the universe, the highest, middle, and lowest, filling all at the direction of Elohim;
17 There is not a rock placed or the covenant made without Him; blessed is He!
18 Elohim is one dwelling above the seven firmaments, and rules over all.
19 ¶ Consider the one God for many eternities of infinite years;
20 In the beginning of the worlds, mankind sees by them and by them, the splendor and glory.
21 Speak in the heart: Human beings are not to consider the glory of the kingdom.

22 As YHVH commanded and Elohim instructed did ye create the world, and it is to be for a time, yea it is to pass.
23 Therefore, complete the understanding of God in the heart in reverence;
24 Serve in truth with the perfect heart, and goodness to them all thy days.
25 ¶ And when mankind was created, the Lord spoke: All come forth from the breath of the Holy Spirit; it is the first of all the covenants of man.
26 From the Word, this breath comes forth from the mouth; therefore, spirits are not shut up by the worthy in silence.
27 ¶ Here are words of the breath of fire and water: From the Word, man presses the lips; by force, the voice goes forth.
28 Sparks go forth by the breath; therefore, it is spoken, as a hammer smashing rocks;
29 Just as sparks go forth from stones, when in faith thou shall speak, fire comes from the power of the sparks breathed from thy mouth.
30 Therefore, is it not so the power of the Word is as fire?
31 Here is power from the voice of man: the breath of water, which is baptism, to rise from the water as men shall rise from the grave born anew in the Lord;
32 And the heat of the fire consuming the old, making new, in every dwelling as the soul is born and mankind is born again in the Lord.
33 ¶ Behold the Word of God; fire consumes fire;
34 Therefore, speak of how to create new life in the Lord with water and fire.
35 The breath of life is the glory of Elohim, the Word made flesh; from blessings over the days, all exist by the Word.
36 Believers in truth are healing as the light of the Lord flows from them, healing the world to fill the earth and finish the creation in the day after God has rested.
37 Blessed is the Lord God to create all the commandments given unto mankind;
38 The Great Lord: Eternal is His glory and power. So mote it be; Amen.
39 ¶ And it came to pass that this angel of the Lord left them, but they were not alone in the temple;
40 The light of the Lord continued to shine upon them, and their eyes were opened,

41 And they did see many visions, and they did speak many words that shall not be written here.

Chapter 28

Revelation given to Adam from God, received in Ohio on January 23, 2016.

1 And behold, after such was the Gospel preached unto the world, and any of those sons of men that would hear were given wisdom from the seed of that tree in righteousness;
2 And the Holy Spirit fell upon them, yea and they were then counted as the seed of Adam and Eve and as the sons and daughters of God.
3 ¶ And it came to pass that I came to Adam many times, as he was a mighty prophet in my name;
4 And it came to pass that I did speak to him, and teach him of my coming, though he understood not the fullness of it at first.
5 ¶ And I spoke unto him, saying: I am YHVH, that God who made thee to go forth from the Garden of Eden into the world, which does shoot forth thorns and brambles, behold even this part of the earth, this land that thou now dwell in.
6 Behold thy body, it is bent and weakened in age, and yet shall the time come when I shall make thy flesh food for the worms.
7 And after a few days, will I have compassion upon thee and thy seed, and shew thee my mercy in the abundance of my compassion for thee;
8 And I will come down into thy house, and I will dwell in thy flesh, and for thy sake I will be pleased to be born as a man, for thus was the plan, even from the beginning.
9 And for thy sake I will be pleased to endure many sufferings;
10 And for thy sake I will be pleased to hang and to die by the hands of these thy seed.
11 For as one man brought death into the world, so too shall another bring eternal life;
12 Yea and as one man ate of the tree, so shall another be hung upon a tree for all mankind;
13 ¶ Yea, and all these things will I do for thy sake, and the sake of thy seed, O man, that thou and all thy generations may be blessed if they choose to forgo sin and this world and take upon themselves my name.

14 ¶ And behold, many things did I prophesy unto him and unto his wife, the mother of all living;
15 And this was too hard a thing for him to hear, yet he knew it to be true, and thus by my Spirit, the very Spirit of the Lord, did I console him.
16 ¶ And it came to pass that Adam and Eve brought their seed to a rock, yea the very rock where they had first prayed unto me outside of the Garden, even Adam ondi Ahman.
17 And there Adam prayed unto me, and he said unto me: El Shaddai, or God Almighty, yea even the Lord my God;
18 Great is thy name and Holiness is thy name, behold I shall praise thee forever, and forever shall thy works be my works, even the works of God.
19 ¶ And thus was his mouth opened and he did prophesy until the end of the world; and all things were shown unto him, and these were written in a book, which was sealed unto heaven.
20 And behold, every word uttered forth from his mouth has and shall come to pass, for they were said in my name and in my power.
21 ¶ And I tell thee this as a sign that thou should know that this man, Adam, has not yet tasted of the first resurrection;
22 For behold, before I was born, was I AM and I was a spirit, even the spirit of YHVH and He the spirit of Elohim.
23 And it must needs be that I am resurrected, and thus my spirit cannot fall upon man as such, for I am the Second Comforter.
24 ¶ And behold, this man, Adam, was made perfect in me, yea in my atonement;
25 And thus being perfect, I kept my promise unto him, and he is God, even the Holy Ghost, for he was such before the world began.
26 For behold, he is Adam who shall come unto Adam ondi Ahman;
27 He is Michael, the prince, the Archangel, the seventh angel who shall gather together his armies, even the hosts of heaven and shall sound the trump of God.
28 For behold, even as a man is baptized with water unto me, so too is he baptized with fire and the Holy Ghost.
29 ¶ Even as I, the second comforter, sent Raphael, who is Melchizedek, unto you as I did my servant Joseph Smith Jr., to make thee unto me a High priest,

30 So too does Michael or the Holy Ghost send angels unto those in need of comfort and to testify of the truth of my words and my works;
31 For he is the First Comforter, thus he shall send those in spirit, and I am the Second Comforter and I shall send whom I shall send.
32 ¶ And behold, when ye feel of the Spirit, thou dost entertain angels unaware;
33 Therefore, keep thyself holy and teach my people to be a holy people in my name, yea to follow my Word and my Spirit.
34 This men and women shall do that they too may join with thee in the Church of the Firstborn, to be called when Michael shall sound the trump.
35 Behold, he or she that asketh in the Spirit asketh according to my will; wherefore it is done even as he or she asks; So mote it be, Amen.

Chapter 29

Revelation on nonbinary Saints received in Ohio on May 19, 2022.

1 Verily, thus saith the Lord unto my servant, David: Thou hath asked me regarding those that identify as neither male nor female,
2 For as I have said: They that identify as male are they of the Brotherhood of Christ, and they that identify as female are of the Sisterhood of Christ;
3 But what then of those that identify not as male nor female?
4 Behold, this shall I explain unto thee and thou shall add these, my words, unto the Book of Remembrance.
5 ¶ Behold the Tree of life: to the left is the masculine; at the top of the branches is Da'at, representing the Father and below Him, the Left Hand of God, even Gevurah the Holy Ghost.
6 And at the right of the Tree of Life is the feminine; at the top of the branches is Chokhmah, representing the Mother, and below Her, the Right Hand of God, even Chesed, for in Mercy did I, the Son, create all that is.
7 ¶ And in the middle of the tree; at the top, is Keter, the Crown worn by the Father and the Mother, given to the Son in the Holy Spirit;

8 Yet these, Keter, Da'at, and Chokhmah are above the creation; thus is Chesed the first day of the creation, the light separating from the darkness.

9 Gevurah is then the second day of creation, separating the waters from the waters,

10 And in Tif'eret is the third day of creation, for it is the compassion of YHVH and only by the light of Christ can mankind grow desires from the soil.

11 And the fourth day is Netzach and the fifth day Hod, for only through endurance and submission to YHVH can mankind see the stars and read the night sky, and with that knowledge grow the desires that are the birds of the air and the fish of the sea.

12 And the sixth day is Yesod, for mankind is the foundation, and all the desires that mankind doth name.

13 And on the seventh day, I and the gods did rest, and this is Malchut the seventh day, in exaltation.

14 And hidden amongst the branches at the top of the tree, between the five pointed star that is Keter, Da'at, Chokhmah, Chesed, and Gevurah is Binah, where Understanding may be found.

15 ¶ And in all this is En Sof, the Infinite to be found; for before I gave shape to this world, the creation was without form and there was only the Creator.

16 And after the creation the sacred name, YHVH, was formed upon the lips of mankind.

17 ¶ What then does this tell thee of those that identify as neither male nor female, or they that identify as both male and female?

18 These are they of the middle line of the tree, for they are neither right nor left, or they are both right and left.

19 And of this I shall tell thee more, but not yet; for when thou were given the Book of Remembrance it was unknown to thee that I was teaching thee the mysteries of Kabbalah;

20 But now that thine eyes can see, and thy mind comprehend, more shall be unfolded unto thee, and this that Israel shall see, and shall know; for only in this shall Zion be established.

Chapter 30

Revelation on the Saints as Adam and Eve, Cain and Lilith received in Ohio on May 19, 2022.

1 This earth, she is Eden, and as thou has seen, as I have shown thee in vision, there in Eden did I plant a garden, the orchard of YHVH Elohim.

2 And there in did I place Adam, and Lilith, and Eve; and there too did I plant the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, and the tree of life.

3 ¶ But these mankind did eat before their time from the tree, and thus they were cast out;

4 But I did prepare a way back for them into that orchard, the Pardes, that they might see salvation in me; for the Kingdom of God is inside you:

5 The mind, spirit, and body of mankind is that of four people: Adam, the man who desires to bestow good, and Cain the man that desires to bestow in wickedness, so to is Eve, the woman who desires to receive that which is good and Lilith, the woman that desires to receive in wickedness;

6 And all have these, be they male, female, or any of the other genders.

7 And each Adam and Eve has a part of every gender within them, be they male or female, intersex, nonbinary, or eunuch:

8 And these five types of people are equally represented in the five Sefirot, the five pointed star that is Keter, Da'at, Chokhmah, Chesed, and Gevurah.

9 And they are in each of these genders, and each of these genders are in the five Sefirot; for these were before they were born and shall be everlasting.

10 ¶ Cholem is the soul born in me when, through my everlasting atonement, the spirit and the mortal body until in preparation of the resurrection, and the soul is born to eternal life.

11 When the spirit is born from the waters, by the divine Grace of the Father and of the Mother, in the Shamayim are the elohim born.

12 And they that kept their first estate do come here to be born in the flesh, finite beings;

13 And thus by sin, by the ego, do they keep themselves from me, and thus it shall be until they are born again in me, for the Cholem itself is from Me, and I have made many souls.

14 The white stone given to they that overcome is the Cholem; and the stone is given that mankind may see past jealousy, hatred and contention;

15 Thus it is a seer stone, the great Urim and Thummim that unites mankind and their God.

16 And thus with my mercy is born the Cholem, that through my mercy (Chesed) can mankind survive the fire of judgment that is Gevurah;

17 For all shall burn in that great burning in the Eshmayim, and this that the impurities from this life may be purged away, that only the love and light of Christ shall remain.

18 And thus is the Church a field of the seers, the Sadeh on the Pardes, and at the center, the Tree of Life, and that tree is the Mother.

19 ¶ The voice of YHVH comes in strength, the voice of YHVH comes in majesty, the voice of YHVH draws out flames of fire, and my righteousness stands forever.

20 And all of this and more ye shall read in the Book of Melchizedek, for in its seventy-two chapters are all the secrets of this Book of Remembrance, and this book shall be a key to understanding the mystery that is his teachings.

21 But this book shall only be given to the righteous, and thou, David, shall translate it if I see fit that the Saints are worthy of it, for now they fight in their pride, setting my Gospel to the side for their creeds, and their contention is an abomination to me.

22 I have suffered, died, and been raised again on their third day that my people should live, and I accept them, they that would be my Israel;

23 Yet they forsake me when they war with one another; know ye not that am the Creator, and that thou art my creation?

24 And I love my creation; therefore, it is my will that my creation should love one another, even as I love them;

25 For in this shall the world know that ye are mine: Love one another.

Chapter 31

Revelation, the parable of the garden, received in Ohio on May 19, 2022.

1 And I shall give thee a parable: the Church is like a lord who has a beautiful garden, and in it are thirty-two paths with the tree of life at the very center.

2 And the Lord placed a gardener to watch over his orchard and to look after the thirty-two paths that they not grow wild, and to help guide those that should walk the paths.

3 And it came to pass that the lord said unto the Gardner: Watch over the trees of the orchard and the fields, and walk upon these thirty-two paths daily, for as long as you walk these paths, peace shall be in you.

4 Yet the gardener appointed others in his stead to walk the paths and he spoke unto himself, saying: This task is impossible for me alone,

5 And that the people shall not say: Look there, the lord is walking about in his orchard, I shall assign another gardener for each of the paths.

6 The gardener said: I now fear that the other gardeners shall say: Behold! This orchard and these paths, they do belong to each of us!

7 And thus in fear did he walk the path, and chase the other gardeners about the orchard that none did have peace upon the path.

8 And thus did the weeds come up, and the garden withdrew, that the peace of the thirty-two paths could not be found.

9 ¶ And thus is the kingdom of heaven: for it is so large that it may fit all of the creation within, yet so small that even one of the seed of mankind cannot fit if their ego be too great.

10 ¶ The tree of life is one tree, and it has twelve sides: the northeast and the southeast, the upper East and the lower East, the southwest and the northwest, the upper West and the lower West, the upper South and the lower South, the upper North and the lower North;

11 And these continue on forever and ever for they are the arms of the whole world, for they are a circle and a circle has no beginning, and no ending;

12 And inside the circle is the tree, and these twelve sides are the Twelve Shevet, thus is the number twelve sacred:

13 My twelve tribes with Dinah in the center, my twelve apostles with Mary in the center, and all these with me in their midst;

14 Hear O Israel: YHVH is our Elohim, YHVH is Unity.

15 And this because the white stone is precious, and in it is the sea of wisdom, and thus it is that blue and white are the colors of the Tzitzit; let they that have ears hear, for this is wisdom.

16 ¶ Israel is holy unto me, for they that are Israel do take the Tree into their hearts.

17 And this tree is a pillar that extends from the heavens to the earth, and her name is Righteousness;

18 For it is not of mankind to take the earth into the heavens, but to bring the heavens to the earth;

19 And they that do this are my Church, for the Priest and the Priestess do prepare the earth of the coming of the heavens, and the High Priest and the High Priestess do bring the heavens to the earth,

20 And I am the Great High Priest, and all they that serve the Church, and walk the path, and prune the garden, they are mine.

Chapter 32

Revelation on the nature of God received in Ohio on May 19, 2022.

1 And I say unto thee, my servant, David, and what I say unto thee I say unto all Israel: Upon the Tree of Life rest Ten Sephiroth and unto these the earth, Eden, is sealed.

2 And what are the Sefirot? These are the divine attributes of mankind, calling down from the heavens declaring the Glory of God.

3 ¶ And they are three from before the creation, they are seven from the days of creation.

4 And even as mankind climbs the tree up towards God they are in sin, but through me, Jesus, who is the Christ, they climb down, bringing the heavens to the earth and in this there is salvation.

5 Holy is the highest Crown (Keter) and holy is the root of the Tree, and holy is the tree; holy, holy, holy,

6 And this because the holiness on high is three, for I am King, and I will be King forever and ever.

7 ¶ Knowledge is the air, and the Father; wisdom is the earth, and the Mother; mercy is the water, and the Son; judgement (strength) is fire, and the Ghost.

8 And the Church, she cries: Where is our mother?

9 And the creeds they sing: You cannot see her now; she is too holy! Let her be hidden from the eyes of Her creation!

10 But She is a woman of valor, of beauty, and She is refined in all Her ways.

11 She cannot come from the Light, for the Light is the Son, which comes from the Mother, and She illuminates the creation through Her deeds;

12 Thus she is the very Presence of Elohim, for it is She that lifts up the prayers of mankind, receiving them into Her bosom:

13 For the Father desireth to bestow, and the Mother to receiveth; and this in the Son may the Father bestow, and the Mother receive and thus are both ends met in me.

14 ¶ Is this not the Glory of God? Did I not show thee thy ministry as a garden and behold the vastness of it!

15 And yet when I took thee up to see my creation, then did thou realize how small thy garden is! And the breath of all the gardens!

16 And would the water be spread throughout all the gardens, that through my mercy knowledge and wisdom might be received,

17 That when the judgment should come thou shall not be found wanting, but understanding should open up, and give unto thee the crown.

18 For behold: The King and the Queen of Heaven did have a Son, and the Son he had sons and daughters, begotten in the flesh as the Cholem is born;

19 And thus are all sons and daughters of the Father and the Mother, and of the Son;

20 And thus is Mercy granted by the Father and the Mother by way of the Son.

21 Let all they who are thirsty come for water, let them drink from my waters, for the fountain is eternal;

22 Yea, without silver nor gold, come all ye and drink from the fountain of eternal mercy, eat of the fruit of the tree of the Mother, for She is Eden; yea, drink and be filled.

Chapter 33

Revelation on the Sefirot and the archangels received in Ohio on May 19, 2022.

1 The first is Keter (Crown), the Highest Crown: Blessed be its name and Israel, its people; let Israel be one.

2 And by the first comes all light before the creation, and all knowledge before the creation, and all wisdom from all of creation.

3 And Keter is not above the Elohim but is All, and thus is Keter the Unity of all they who are unified in All things.

4 And Mitatrun (Metatron) is its herald, and Mitatrun walked the earth as Enoch, until I took him.

5 ¶ The second and the third is Chokhmah (Wisdom), the beginning of the path, before the creation.

6 And by only by Wisdom may knowledge be understood, for the beginning of wisdom is the fear of YHVH.

7 Wisdom is the Right Eye; from Wisdom came the Torah, the treasure of Heaven.

8 And Raphael who is Raziel is its herald, and Raphael walked the earth as Melchizedek until I took him.

9 ¶ The second and the third is Da'at (Knowledge), the Truth of the way, before the creation.

10 And only by Knowledge may wisdom be gained, for the beginning of knowledge is truth.

11 Knowledge is the Left Eye; from Truth came the Torah, the treasure of Heaven.

12 And I, the Great Jehovah, am its herald, but in my place stands Khamael to be its herald, and Khamael walked the earth as Alma, until I took him.

13 ¶ The fourth is Chesed (Mercy) to all the world, the first day of the creation.

14 In my Mercy is mankind washed clean, Mercy is the charity of YHVH, thus is the Right Hand of the Father.

15 And Tzadkiel is its herald, and Tzadkiel walked the earth as John who was known as the Baptist, until he died from the lust of another.

16 ¶ The fifth is Gevurah (Strength) to the repentant, the second day of the creation.

17 Strength is the judgement of YHVH, for all shall look upon themselves and judge, and this is the Holy Ghost, thus is the Left Hand of the Mother.

18 And Michael is its herald, and Michael walked the earth as Adam, and neither he nor Eve, his wife shall taste of the resurrection until the end of the first resurrection.

19 ¶ The sixth is Tif'eret (Beauty), compassion for all the world, the third day of the creation.

20 It is here that the great fire of the soul of mankind is born, and thus it is the Bosom.

21 And Ariel who is Uriel is its herald, and Ariel walked the earth as Joseph Smith Jr. until his blood was spilt.

22 ¶ The seventh is Netzachhe (Eternity), the victory of YHVH, the fourth day of creation.

23 It is the house of the World to Come, and its place is Wisdom; from the Compassion of YHVH did the Torah enter the world, and thus it is the right foot.

24 And Haniel is its herald, and Haniel walked the earth as Moses, the Law giver, until I took him.

25 ¶ The eighth is Hod (Glory), submission to YHVH for all creation, the fifth day of the creation.

26 In submission all are placed into the Fire of Judgement to be made clean to be burnt asunder, thus it is the left foot.

27 And Qaphsiel who is Moroni is its herald, and Qaphsiel walked the earth as Moroni until I took him.

28 ¶ The ninth is Yesod (Foundation), the bridge between the heavens and the earth, the sixth day of creation.

29 It is the resting place of the Saints, and the path ever forward, and thus it is the reproductive organs, the genitals.

30 And Gabriel is its herald, and Gabriel walked the earth as Noah until his death upon this earth.

31 ¶ The tenth is Malchut (Kingdom), exaltation to all the world, the seventh day of creation.

32 Resting at the bottom of the tree of life, it is Netzach Netzachim, the victory of victories;

33 And thus it is the earth upon which all things rest, and that is my footstool, and it is Eden, as my bride, the Church, my body upon this earth.

34 And Sandalphon is its herald, and Sandalphon was Elijah upon the earth, until I took him.

35 ¶ The eleventh is Binah (Understanding), the reason of creation, the eighth day of creation.

36 Only through it may Keter be found.

37 And Tzaphkiel is its herald, and Tzaphkiel walked the earth as Enoch until I took him.

38 ¶ And the twelfth is the En Sof (Everlasting), the Tree of Life who is before the creation and is the creation.

39 And is all things, and it is apart from all things; and it is the tree in the center of the orchard of the garden of Eden, and the fruit of it makes mankind wise, and grants them eternal life.

40 And Yophiel is its herald, and Yophiel walked the earth as Eve, and neither she nor Adam, her husband, shall taste of the resurrection until the end of the first resurrection.

41 ¶ And Mitatrun is the archangel of the veil, and Raphael who is Raziel is the keeper of the mysteries of YHVH, and Khamael holds the flaming sword to keep mankind out of the garden of Eden.

42 ¶ And Mitatrun is the great teacher, and Raphael who is Raziel is the archangel of healing, and Khamael is the keeper of the chalice, and Tzadkiel holds the blade (athame) of sacrifice, and Michael, the one who was chosen when Lucifer was rejected, is the messenger of YHVH, even the first comforter.

43 ¶ Tzadkiel is the archangel of mercy, and of kindness, and of all benevolence, and Michael, is the watchman over Israel, and Ariel who is Uriel is the altar of YHVH and bringer of the light of the Gospel at the last days.

44 And Haniel is the archangel of life, and he I send to bring unto me they that shall not taste of death, and Qaphsiel who is Moroni is the archangel of caution, and the other guardian of the tree of life keeping mankind away with the flaming sword.

45 And Gabriel is the revealer, and Sandalphon the protector of the righteous, and Tzaphkiel the keeper of understanding.

46 ¶ And Yophiel is the beauty of YHVH, and the watcher of YHVH, and the archangel of wisdom, understanding, and judgment.

47 She is the protector of the Torah, and the keeper of the flaming sword that doth bring illumination unto mankind.

48 She is the protector of the earth, the rib (side) of the tabernacle, she is the Song of Songs, and she is she who did comfort Mary Magdalene in her hour of need.

49 ¶ Thus there are three sefirot above and before the creation, seven that are the creation, and twelve that are after the creation; let they who have ears to hear, hear.

Chapter 34

Revelation on light of God received in Ohio on May 19, 2022.

1 There are two types of light; the pure light of YHVH through which the world and all of creation was made, and the light of Christ that seeps through all they that are born again and glory in my name,

2 All other lights are the illusions of this world, for behold even Lucifer and Lilith may come unto mankind as angels of light, yet they reject the light of the creation and the light of Christ, for they repent not and are perdition.

3 But the illusions of their world are seen through by the true light of YHVH, the very light of Christ; for behold, both the light of the Creator and the light of Christ are one light.

4 But the light of the Creator is hidden away from the creation, not by YHVH but by mankind for they close their eyes to the brightness of it.

5 Yet when they are born again, that light shines forth from the darkness, bringing the light of the Creator back into the creation.

6 The Torah, the scriptures, the Word of God, these are a reflection of the light, but only I, Jesus the Christ, am that light, for I AM the Creator and ye mine creation.

7 And I have sent my chariot unto those that did embrace the light, and these tasted not death, but were changed in a twinkling, brought up unto me to serve me as archangels before my throne.
8 ¶ To sit upon the throne of YHVH Elohim, one must embrace both the man and the woman, the Adam and the Eve, inside themselves:
9 Here is the heart, and the wellspring of wisdom, here are the twelve rods that stand firm and from them flow the clear water from the fountain of righteousness the is before the beginning of the world.
10 And resting above it, the Holy Place, before time, before thought, before all creation: this is the throne of the Creator, in the throne is inside of you.
11 This represents the power of the priesthood, and the blessings and majesty of YHVH, and from all of this grow the tree of life.
12 ¶ Here is wisdom: That the souls of the righteous shall fly forth from the tree of life, and shall partake of the water, for these are the fruits of that tree.
13 Let they that have ears hear, that they might understand, for these are they that shall inherit the earth.
14 These are they that shall stand in the divine Presence of YHVH, these are they that shall be called Tzedek.
15 These are they that shall stand from generation to generation, these are they who do wear the garments without spots.
16 These are they who do stand in holy places, and from who the Holy of Holies shall appear.
17 These are they to whom I have said: I will gather you, these are they whom I have gathered.
18 These are they that wait not for the new world to come, for these are they to whom the new world hath already come unto.
19 These are my good and faithful servants, these are they to whom I have said: Come and be my peace, come and rest in me forever and ever.
20 These are they that shall never lack water, these are they that shall never again hunger.
21 These are they to whom I have come, and who are with me, and to whom I have given al things, even as my Father hath given me all things; blessed be they that are holy.

Chapter 35

Revelation on the temple rituals and a promise of further revelations received in Ohio on May 19, 2022.

1 Behold, my son, my servant David: I have called thee, and I have set thee apart, and I shall tell thee:

2 The ordinances of the ministry begin the moment that a man or a woman is born again, there they enter the garden, and I permit them to eat of the fruit, save it be the tree of knowledge of good and evil.

3 And there, all sin; yet my grace is sufficient to save them, and thus all partake of the sacraments in worthiness.

4 And some have I called to partake in these endowments, even as they have been taught in this book, the Book of Remembrance.

5 But behold, the Initiatories, and the Endowments taught here in are but the beginning, taking thee to the middle of the year, speaking after the manner of mankind.

6 Behold, thy ministry shall take thee out of the garden, and into the world, yet the true path of my temples is back into the garden, back into my presence.

7 And I did give the keys of these endowments to my servant Joseph while he walked this earth, yet he died before the fullness could come, and thus Satan thinks to thwart the things of YHVH.

8 But behold, my will cannot be thwarted, for as thou hast seen, my people were not one, thus they were not ready for my fullness, and so my temple was not finished.

9 ¶ Build my temple, that I may share with my Israel the full endowments, that all may return to the Garden of Eden.

10 And this is not to say that I require it of you for salvation or for exaltation, but I have made these things available to all they that desire it that they may learn the signs and the tokens of the ministry;

11 And these are symbols to help mankind understand my teachings, and to give greater access to my priesthood, which are the power of the Father given unto me, and from me they are given unto you:

12 And these shall help all they called into the ministry, to have power from upon high, and to grant wisdom, and to show my

love for mankind, for all these are my creation, and I am the Creator, through the Father and the Mother, and these things are known through the Holy Ghost, and we are one God;

13 Therefore, I say unto thee: Build up my works in my name and set the four pillars straight that those seeking knowledge, wisdom, mercy, and strength shall gain understanding of these things.

14 ¶ There is more to come, therefore wait patiently for more light and knowledge and I shall send thee, and thou shall send it to the world:

15 Worry not that mankind shall not understand these things at the first, for all that is in this book is but an explanation of what shall be read from the Book of Melchizedek,

16 And these things are written as a parable, as a sign, that those with ears may hear and those with eyes shall see.

17 These are not secrets, but plain and precious truths that my Israel shall understand in their own way, and their understanding of it shall increase as they grow closer unto me;

18 Therefore, worry not of the things of this world, but build ye up Israel in my name;

19 Teach teshuvah and unity in my name, and those that hear my voice shall come; even so shall it be, Amen and amen.

Chapter 36

Revelation on the churches of men and the kingdom of God received in Ohio on November 28, 2022.

1 Verily, thus saith the Lord unto my servant, David: I came unto my own, and my own knew me not, and this because they saw only the flesh, and not things as they truly are;

2 And this is the sin of the world, for I, the Creator did not make sin, nor did I make mankind to sin;

3 But mankind, my creation, did create sin when they walked in adultery before me, rejecting teshuvah, and this be the sin of the world.

4 I came into your midst, I walked among you as myself, yet my people did not see me, they saw but a man;

5 And this is why I came: to restore all to the very essence of thy true nature, to restore my creation back to its true form;

6 Therefore, I say unto my Israel: Shalom! My peace be with you, receive thou my peace.

7 ¶ These churches of men, with their creeds, these are an abomination unto me, they cry out saying: Lo here or Lo there!

8 Yet there I am not, for I am with you; follow me therefore from that true source of light in thee, from the broken heart and contrite spirit;

9 Do this and ye shall know me and be my Israel;

10 And they that seek shall find, and they that find shall share my light preaching the gospel of my Kingdom.

11 Wherefore, this instruction shall I give unto thee: Make no laws beyond what I have given thee;

12 And make not any laws as thou should be my lawgiver, lest thou shall be judged by thy own laws and found wanting.

13 ¶ Behold, my passion hath no equal, for love which proceedeth from me is as something contrary to human nature;

14 Yet in me is the Torah fulfilled, and in me is the love and the light of the world;

15 Therefore, do even as I did command my servants, my disciples and my friends:

16 Love one another that the world will know that thou art mine.

17 And if thou love not one another, but build kingdoms and churches unto thyselves, then ye are not mine, but belongeth to they that build up these churches of men.

18 ¶ But there will be those that have been deceived by the churches of men, rejecting my Kingdom for their creeds and abominations;

19 Unto these I say: Ye are mine, for my grace is enough, and will protect you,

20 My atonement is unto thee all powerful and thou shall be restored again unto the Father and the Mother through me.

21 Blessed are all they that do not waver at the sight of me, for they that love me shall know me, and that I am.

22 Behold, I say unto thee: It is not the eyes of man nor the spirit of man that shall see me, but the very soul that is born again in me;

23 Therefore, when the vision comes, they that know me shall see me and not be afraid,

24 They that know me shall see my messengers, and not be afraid,

25 They that know me shall dream dreams, and see visions, and be not afraid.

26 Those that see me but do not recognize me shall learn of me, and be not afraid,

27 But those that see me not, yet fear me; these shall, when they learn of me, they will be afraid, and shall work out their salvation in fear and trembling;

28 But I would that these should know me, and see that my work is sufficient, and when they know me, they will know peace and understand fear and war nor more.

29 ¶ But woe unto they that should know me and commit adultery against me, to pollute themselves before me!

30 Woe unto they that would know me and forsake me, as an old man that would forget the wife of his youth for another!

31 Woe unto these, except they return to me in teshuvah, for they that know me, and yet they that abandoned me, these shall be left alone until they return again to their first love.

32 Wherefore, I say into all ye that shall read this: Judge not, for as thou shall judge another, so too shall thou be judged.

33 For as thou doth grow in my grace, thy soul shall take form as it grows from degree to degree, line upon line and precept upon precept.

Chapter 37

Revelation on casting unclean spirits received in Ohio on November 28, 2022.

1 Go ye and teach my people, that when thou should need to cast out any unclean thing, proclaim thus:

2 I, the Kohen/ Kohanot, in the name of YHVH (or Jesus Christ), mighty be the Name, cast out all destroying spirits, the souls of mamzerim that fled the Lord of Hosts, never to take life in an earthly vessel, the sons of perdition, the daughters of Lilith, they that dwell in the deserts where no life may be found, the

whispering spirits that lead mankind astray, any that would lead men and women away from that Spirit of God, of understanding, and all they that would make the hearts of mankind to rot, walking in desolation, to adultery spoiling themselves before YHVH; I cast all thee out, in the name of Jesus who is the Christ, the Living Word, YHVH made flesh: So mote it be; Amen.

3 Then take thee a piece of earth and write or carve upon it a straight line with a circle resting about the middle as the sun risen from the East, and there seal the unclean spirits that they bother mankind no more,

4 Watching over it, least the sign upon it be broken, or the token therein be destroyed, and that evil be freed:

5 And there shall the unclean spirit, that perdition, rest until judgement;

6 For all of nature, and all of the creation, all creatures that exist from before the creation shall be restored again to their true form at the last day,

7 For the nature of these things is resolved in the origins of its true nature, and in its true nature alone through my atonement.

8 ¶ And these are the sins of mankind: first is that of darkness, separated from my light.

9 And the second thy desire, for thyself alone, and not for the creation, for these have already rejected my light.

10 And the third is ignorance, which is to reject things as they are, for all they know is themselves.

11 And the fourth is the love of death and murder, for these do seek to hide in their sins.

12 And the fifth is that church of the devil, the kingdom of pride, for these do make war against Israel.

13 And the sixth is the wisdom of the earth, kesheph, that priestcraft, for these do lead mankind astray.

14 And the seventh is mahan, that great secret and its many combinations that seek to trap mankind in this path of sin.

15 ¶ These are the seven branches of the tree of death, the Qliphoth, the husk, which lay in the shadows of the tree of life for there must be opposition in all things.

16 And this Qliphoth is the great lie, that which would be hidden from the truth, the darkness that must be separated from the light,

17 And there lies Lilith in wait to trap those that would flee from the light to the darkness;
18 Yea, and her name, Lilith, is written upon the sword of death, that taketh the life of mankind, that only through me can be overcome:
19 For like all shadows, the Qliphoth is a shadow, an illusion that fades as the sun reaches its peak in the sky,
20 For sin is but an illusion, yea, and sin is nothing but the rejection of all reality, and like a shadow it disappears in the fullness of the light;
21 Therefore, I say unto thee: Find my light and eat freely from the tree of life.

Chapter 38

Revelation on the five temples received in Ohio on November 28, 2022.

1 There are five temples in the heavens and the earth, and these are: the temple body to house the Holy Spirit,
2 The home temple that all may worship where they are in their homes and synagogues,
3 The temple of the congregation, that communities might gather together in my name,
4 The tabernacles and temples of gathering, that my people might gather from afar off to worship as my Israel,
5 The temple of the heavens that shall descend to the earth when I come, and the city of Zion shall return.
6 And all of these are the same temple, for each temple is a model of the other that all might be one, for I am one.
7 ¶ And the temple altar is a map of the earth, the creation, and upon it rests the Creator, for the earth is my footstool:
8 The Mother to the North, the Father to the East, the Holy Ghost to the South, and the Son to the West;
9 And these are seen as the Earth and the trees, the Wind and the air, the Fire and the incense, the Water and the wine.
10 And in the middle of the altar, as the heart of my temples, lay the scriptures open to my truth:
11 Hear O Israel: YHVH is our Elohim, YHVH is Unity,

12 For I am unity, and in me is the light and the life of the world, and I am thy advocate before the Father and the Mother, in me, the Creator, is peace found.

13 ¶ And verily, the temple and the altar, and these rituals were made for mankind, and not mankind for the temple;

14 Therefore, worry not so much for the temple that thou forsake thy duties to the fields that thy people go hungry,

15 Or to the digging of wells that thy people go thirsty,

16 Or to the raising of thy children, that thy offspring know not me, for I AM YHVH, thy Elohim.

17 ¶ There is no doctrine, no mystery, no secret known or unknown, knowable or unknowable greater than this:

18 Love thy neighbor as thyself, for in love was the Torah written, and in love is the Torah lived;

19 Therefore, keep my holy days in thanksgiving, that thou should know my love by thy love for one another, for I am unity;

20 Therefore, if ye are mine, Israel, thou shall stand united, as one, even as I stand with the Father and the Mother and the Holy Ghost as one.

Chapter 39

Revelation on the holy days received in Ohio on November 28, 2022.

1 I shall speak plainly unto thee on the nature of the sun, the moon, and the stars:

2 These thou shall use to instruct thee all through thy days, for these were given for signs and for seasons, and for the gathering of Israel.

3 And my Israel shall appoint a Chief Priest to watch the skies and to gather my Israel to celebrate Rosh Chodesh, the Sabbath of the New Moon;

4 And this he shall do, that when the new moon appears Israel will gather and give unto me thy sacrifice, that of the broken heart, and the contrite spirit;

5 And this ye shall do that ye may share in testimony, and rejoice one with another, drinking wine in celebration, and remembering to walk in teshuvah:

6 For even as the new moon is in darkness, the light is come, even as Israel grows in my light.

7 And the first of this Sabbath shall be in the spring, before the full moon of the Passover,

8 And six months hence Israel shall gather again at Yom Teruah, and here Israel shall gather locally to prepare to gather my Israel for Sukkot.

9 ¶ And my Israel shall appoint a Chief Priestess to watch the skies and to gather my Israel to celebrate Harah Keseh, the Sabbath of the Pregnant Moon;

10 And this she shall do, that when the pregnant moon appears, Israel will gather and give unto me thy sacrifice, that of the broken heart, and the contrite spirit;

11 And this ye shall do that ye may share in song and in dance and in testimony, pouring out thy libations in celebration, and remembering to walk in teshuvah:

12 For even as the pregnant moon is full of light, so too does my light, the very light of Christ, shine from thee, my Israel.

13 And the first of the Sabbath shall be in the spring, the full moon of the Passover,

14 And six months hence Israel shall gather again at Sukkot, and here Israel will remember that I, YHVH did save her from slavery and sin.

15 ¶ And these are the three times that my Israel shall gather: The Passover or Easter, Shavuot or Pentecost, and Sukkot.

16 And this shall be the season of teshuvah for you, from Passover to Sukkot,

17 And in the winter months, from Sukkot to Passover, this shall be the time of the pain of thy labor, as my Israel is born anew.

18 And the Chief Priest and the Chief Priestess shall give the days, as I have written them for my Israel in the night sky;

19 And all new moons and all pregnant moons ye shall watch and observe that ye not forget, my Israel, that my voice calls thee home.

Chapter 40

Revelation on temple worship received in Ohio on November 28, 2022.

1 And when thou shall build me a tabernacle or a temple, thou shall invite all that should come in, to worship in my name;
2 And then thou shall seal up the place, even as I have revealed unto Israel by my servants, Allen and David:
3 My High Priests and High Priestesses of my temple shall first call upon the Deacons to close my temple doors,
4 And then my High Priests and High Priestesses shall call upon the Elders to prepare my chamber.
5 And then my High Priests and High Priestesses shall call upon the Teachers to prepare the altar and instruct my Israel.
6 And then my High Priests and High Priestesses shall call the ministry to order, and this shall be the Order of the Ministry.
7 And there in my rituals may be performed, that Israel be nourished and enlightened.
8 And when the Ministry has concluded its service, my High Priests and High Priestesses shall cut the binds and permit the Deacons to open the doors that Israel may re-enter the world.
9 ¶ And remember all ye that read this, that in this place, sealed up unto me, that the very ground shall be holy,
10 That Israel shall be open to visions, and revelations, and prophecy, for the very powers of Heaven shall be open unto you;
11 Therefore, mock these things not, yet allow all that would come to do so that these may stand in witness of my sacred works.
12 And worry not that many will not understand at the first, for my grace is sufficient them; therefore, all may enter that all they that seek may find.
13 But know that the darkness cannot see the light;
14 Therefore, I will blind the eyes and the ears of the unworthy that these shall not see that which they cannot comprehend.
15 Yea, all are welcome in the House of the Lord, but not all they that come shall know,
16 But they that have eyes to see shall see and they that have ears to hear shall hear.

Chapter 41

Revelation on David's call and role in working with the Saints, received in Ohio on November 28, 2022.

1 My servant, David, my friend: Thou has asked of me of thy calling, asking if thou are the servant chosen as the successor of my servant, James J. Strang.

2 Behold, I say unto thee: That many have been called as the successors to my servants, Joseph Smith Jr. and James J. Strang,

3 Some were called by me, some by my Saints, and some have called themselves.

4 Know that thou art one of these that have been called by me, and for this reason did I send my servant Raphael to ordain thee—

5 But as I have said unto thee before: The keys of leadership unto any of the branches of the Church of Christ I shall not give thee, except thou be called of them that leadeth these, my churches, within my vineyard, and this that thou not be seen as a usurper.

6 For my Saints to be Israel, and my Kingdom to be built, my people must be a prophetic people, relying not upon the arm of the flesh.

7 ¶ Thou hast been called to move forward the restoration of all things, as my servant Joseph was called to begin this dispensation,

8 But even as my servant James J. Strang was rejected by the many Saints, and thus the progress of this restoration has been slowed, many that I have called have also been rejected.

9 ¶ My Saints of the restoration seek my servants, but know not how to find them;

10 There have been many that cry out: Lo here! and Lo there! But not all that were called have been chosen, and why were they not chosen?

11 Some were called of themselves, and they taught of themselves, and they took for themselves,

12 Some did not have the faith sufficient—they could not see themselves as I see them,

13 And some could not be seen by the Saints for they would not look, therefore these were called but my Saints would not choose them.

14 ¶ But I say unto thee: Worry not on these things, for my servants are born unto every generation until the time shall come that my Saints are ready to be my Israel,

15 And when that time comes, you will have helped lay the foundation even as my servants Joseph Smith Jr. and James J. Strang, for these were truly called of me.

16 ¶ And should my Saints reject the testimony of my servants, and the day come that I appear, and they find their lamps empty, their works shall stand against them,

17 For the oil is offered unto them, but they that take no oil with them, unto these shall I say: Verily I say unto you, I know you not.

18 But worry not, for I say unto thee that my grace is sufficient, even for these,

19 Yet these shall know that I stood ready while they kicked against the pricks.

20 ¶ Least thou misunderstand, I will show unto thee truth:

21 Behold, my Saints were not yet ready when my servant Joseph died,

22 Yet I took him, both that he seal his testimony in blood and because the world was not ready yet for all he had been shown.

23 And as a testimony against my Saints, when I took him, they scattered; yet I had given them the keys to stay organized:

24 James J. Strang, Sidney Rigdon, and Emma Smith as prophets and prophetess in the First Presidency,

25 For did I not send an angel to ordain James J. Strang, after Joseph had sent his letter of appointment and he was taken?

26 And did I not send an angel to my servant Sidney Rigdon to instruct him to be the guardian of the Church?

27 And was not my servant Emma Smith ordained by the hand of her husband, Joseph, as a leader amongst women?

28 And even as I said through my servant Joseph Smith Jr.: All members of the First Presidency are accounted as equal in holding the Keys of this last kingdom;

29 Therefore, my will was made known, but in their pride my Saints warred with one another, for they were not yet ready.

30 ¶ And now I have called thee, my servant David, and others to bring my people home,

31 Yet if my Saints are not yet ready to be Israel, then thou hast not been called in vain,

32 For all that thou hast been instructed to do shall prepare the way when the time shall come that my Saints be ready.

33 Wherefore, again I say unto thee: Worry not, for I am with thee, and in thy works, I am well pleased.

34 ¶ And this counsel shall I give thee: Do not waste thy time with any that would seek to debate or debase thee;

35 Send out emissaries in my name that will represent me and my Fellowship well;

36 Those that I have called to seek out the Saints, and invite them to my Fellowship,

37 Help make them ready, endow them with power from upon high, and send them forth in my name that Israel shall be found and Zion built.

38 Behold, through thee and those that though shall send forth in my name shall Israel be called back home.

39 ¶ Worry not what the world shall say of thee, for just as my servants Joseph Smith Jr. and James J. Strang, thy name shall be had for both good and evil,

40 But find those that would do my works and speak in my name, for I have called others that thou should not do this work alone.

41 Build my temple that I may come unto my house and speak unto my friends; and behold, I come quickly! Even so: Amen.

Chapter 42

Revelation on Israel received in Ohio on November 28, 2022.

1 My children, Israel: Know that I have sent you out into all the world that all may be included in the name Abraham, of whom I call friend.

2 I created you in the flesh in my image, even as the Father and the Mother created you in their image before the foundation of the world,

3 Being created in the image of Elohim, being their offspring, your life proceeds from the middle column of the tree of life, for

you are my first born, Israel, even as I am the First Born of the Father and the Mother.

4 It is my light, from that tree from before the creation, through me into the creation, that nourisheth all the world.

5 ¶ And so it is that I have given Israel this book, the beginning of the teachings of my temple, that in prayer and supplication you may once again be in the Presence of YHVH;

6 The Shekinah has been taken from thee, but not from the earth; and why was she taken? Because thou, O man, refused her.

7 With the ten Sefirot in place, and the Father and the Mother sitting upon their thrown, equal in all power and authority, I, the Christ, have been sent out, but will you receive me?

8 My light shineth in the darkness, but will thou see it, O Israel?

9 The Mother stands ready to receive thy prayers, and the Father stands ready to send out the Holy Ghost to fill thee with the Spirit of God.

10 ¶ These gifts of the Holy Spirit have awaited Israel from the time the Book of Mormon was sent out upon the earth, will you receive them?

11 I, YHVH, who is Jesus who is the Christ, yearns to break the yoke and bondage of that old serpent who seeks always to thwart thee, my Israel.

12 In thy prayers, Israel must first seek to unify as Zion with the Divine Presence who is the Shekinah,

13 And use the whole armor of God in combat against that adversary and overcome his temptations of pride, egoism, and doubt.

14 It is the very living consciousness of the Divine spark that has ignited within Israel, in and about all they that have been born again, that is the very same power that endows you with strength and fortitude,

15 It is this power that will set Israel free, allowing her to tread the path of calm in calamity and unperturbed when the world around her falls.

16 Thus it is that Israel is able to achieve the greatest victory in the realization of her destiny, that is the union of the heavens and the earth:

17 Then it shall be that mankind will see the true creation,

18 That throughout the universe, the divine glory of Elohim remains ever the same both in the heavens above and on the

earth below; for these are worlds mirrored, that the spiritual and the physical are one.

19 ¶ When mankind understands this secret, the truth shall be known, and this is that truth:

20 Hear, O Israel, YHVH is your Elohim, I AM Unity.

21 Therefore, let the Creator and the creation be one; so mote it be forever and ever: Amen and amen.

The Book of Enoch

The seventh from Adam, great-grandfather of Noah;
he who walked with God and was not, for he was taken.

The Book of the Watchers

The fall of the Iyrin, angels who fathered the Nephilim (Genesis 6:1–2), the travels of Enoch in the heavens. Said to have been composed in the 4th or 3rd century BC.

Chapter 1

Parable of Enoch on the Future Lot of the Wicked and the Righteous.
(Enoch 1-5)

1 The words of the blessing of Enoch, wherewith he blessed the elect and the righteous, who will be living in the day of tribulation, when all the wicked and godless are to be removed.
2 [1:2a] And he took up his parable and said: Enoch a righteous man, whose eyes were opened by God, saw the vision of the Holy One in the heavens, which the angels showed me, and from them I heard everything,
3 [1:2b] And from them I understood as I saw; yet not for this generation, but for a remote one which is for to come.
4 [1:2c] From them I heard all things and understood what I saw; that which will not take place in this generation, but in a generation, which is to succeed at a distant period, on account of the elect.
5 [1:3] Concerning the elect I took up my parable concerning them and said: The Holy Great One will come forth from His dwelling,
6 [1:4] And the eternal God will tread upon the earth, *even as* on Mount Sinai, and appear from His camp; and appear in the strength of His might from the heaven of heavens.
7 [1:5] And all shall be smitten with fear; and the *Iyrin or* Watchers *(guardians)* shall quake, and great fear and trembling shall seize them unto the ends of the earth.

8 [1:6] And the high mountains shall be shaken, and the high hills shall be made low, and shall melt like wax before the flame.
9 [1:7] And the earth shall be wholly rent in sunder, and all that is upon the earth shall perish, and there shall be judgement upon all *mankind*.
10 [1:8a] But with the righteous He will make peace, and will protect the elect, and mercy shall be upon them;
11 [1:8b] And they shall all belong to God, and they shall be prospered, and they shall all be blessed;
12 [1:8c] And He will help them all, and light shall appear unto them, and He will make peace with them.
13 [1:9] And behold! He comes with ten thousands of His holy ones to execute judgement upon all, and to destroy all the ungodly: and to convict all flesh of all the works of their ungodliness which they have ungodly committed, and of all the hard things which ungodly sinners have spoken against Him.
14 [2:1] ¶ Observe ye everything that takes place in the heaven, how they do not change their orbits, and the luminaries which are in the heaven, how they all rise and set in order each in its season and transgress not against their appointed order.
15 [2:2] Behold ye the earth and give heed to the things which take place upon it from first to last, how steadfast they are, how none of the things upon earth change, but all the works of God appear to you.
16 [2:3] Behold the summer and the winter, how the whole earth is filled with water, and clouds and dew and rain lie upon it.
17 [3:1] ¶ Observe and see how *in the winter* all the trees seem as though they had withered and shed all their leaves, except fourteen trees, which do not lose their foliage but retain the old foliage from two to three years till the new comes.
18 [4:1a] ¶ And again, observe ye the days of summer how the sun is above the earth over against it.
19 [4:1b] And you seek shade and shelter by reason of the heat of the sun, and the earth also burns with growing heat,
20 [4:1c] And so you cannot tread on the earth, or on a rock by reason of its heat.
21 [5:1] ¶ Observe ye how the trees cover themselves with green leaves and bear fruit: wherefore give ye heed and know with regard to all His works and recognize how He that liveth for ever hath made them so.

22 [5:2] And al His works go on thus from year to year forever, and all the tasks which they accomplish for Him, and their tasks change not, but according as God hath ordained, so is it done.
23 [5:3] And behold how the sea and the rivers in like manner accomplish and change not their tasks from His commandments.
24 [5:4a] But ye—ye have not been steadfast, nor done the commandments of the Lord,
25 [5:4b] But ye have turned away and spoken proud and hard words with your impure mouths against His greatness.
26 [5:4c] O, ye hardhearted, ye shall find no peace.
27 [5:5a] Therefore shall ye execrate your days, and the years of your life shall perish,
28 [5:5b] And the years of your destruction shall be multiplied in eternal execration, and ye shall find no mercy.
29 [5:6a] In those days ye shall make your names an eternal execration unto all the righteous,
30 [5:6b] And by you shall all who curse, curse, and all the sinners and godless shall imprecate by you, and for you the godless there shall be a curse.
31 [5:6c] And all the *morning stars and sons of God* shall rejoice, and there shall be forgiveness of sins, and every mercy and peace and forbearance: there shall be salvation unto them, a goodly light.
32 [5:6d] *But* for all of you sinners there shall be no salvation, but on you all shall abide a curse.
33 [5:7] But for the elect there shall be light and joy and peace, and they shall inherit the earth.
34 [5:8a] And then there shall be bestowed upon the elect wisdom;
35 [5:8b] And they shall all live and never again sin, either through ungodliness or through pride: but they who are wise shall be humble.
36 [5:9] And they shall not again transgress, nor shall they sin all the days of their life, nor shall they die of *the divine* anger or wrath, but they shall complete the number of the days of their life.
37 [5:9b] And their lives shall be increased in peace, and the years of their joy shall be multiplied, in eternal gladness and peace, all the days of their life.

Chapter 2

The Iyrin or "Watchers" fall and teach priestcrafts, the God sends angels to intercede on behalf of Mankind. The God pronounces judgment.
(Enoch 6-11)

1 [6:1] And it came to pass when the children of men *(those that knew not the Lord)* had multiplied that in those days were born unto them beautiful and comely daughters.
2 [6:2] And the *messenger of God*, the children of the heaven, saw and lusted after them, and said to one another: Come, let us choose us wives from among the children of men and beget us children.
3 [6:3] And Semjâzâ, who was their leader, said unto them: I fear ye will not indeed agree to do this deed, and I alone shall have to pay the penalty of a great sin.
4 [6:4] And they all answered him and said: Let us all swear an oath, and all bind ourselves by the curse of an oath not to abandon this plan, but to do this thing.
5 [6:5] Then they swore all together and bound themselves in secret combinations upon it.
6 [6:6] And they were in all two hundred; who descended in the days of Jared on the summit of הר חרמון Mount Hermon, and they called it Mount Hermon, because they had sworn and bound themselves by an oath in secret combinations upon it.
7 [6:7] And these are the names of their leaders:

Sêmîazâz,	Tâmîêl,	Asâêl,	Samsâpêêl,
their leader,	Râmîêl,	Armârôs,	Satarêl,
Arâkîba,	Dânêl,	Batârêl,	Tûrêl,
Râmêêl,	Êzêqêêl,	Anânêl,	Jômjâêl,
Kôkabîêl,	Barâqîjâl,	Zaqîêl,	Sari êl

.
8 [6:8] These are their chiefs of tens.
9 [7:1a] ¶ And all the others together with them took unto themselves wives, and each chose for himself one, and they began to go in unto them and to defile themselves with them,
10 [7:1b And they taught them charms, and enchantments, and the cutting of roots, and made them acquainted with plants.
11 [7:2-3a] And *their wives* became pregnant, and they bare great nephilim, whose height was three thousand ells who consumed all the acquisitions of men.
12 [7:3b-4] And when men could no longer sustain them, the nephilim turned against them and devoured mankind.
13 [7:5] And they began to sin against birds, and beasts, and reptiles, and fish, and to devour one another's flesh, and drink the blood.
14 [7:6] Then the earth laid accusation against the lawless ones.
15 [8:1a] ¶ And Azâzêl taught men to make swords, and knives, and shields, and breastplates, and made known to them the metals *of the earth* and the art of working them,
16 [8:1b] And *of* bracelets, and ornaments, and the use of antimony, and the beautifying of the eyelids, and all kinds of costly stones, and all coloring tinctures.
17 [8:2a] And there arose much godlessness, and they committed fornication, and they were led astray, and became corrupt in all their ways.
18 [8:2b] Semjâzâ taught enchantments, and rootcuttings,
19 [8:2c] Armârôs the resolving of enchantments,
20 [8:2d] Barâqîjâl, *taught* astrology,
21 [8:2e] Kôkabêl the constellations,
22 [8:2f] Ezêqêêl the knowledge of the clouds,
23 [8:2g] Araqiêl the signs of the earth,
24 [8:2h] Shamsiêl the signs of the sun, and Sariêl the course of the moon.
25 [8:2i] And as men perished, they cried, and their cry went up to heaven.
26 [9:1] ¶ And then Michael, Uriel, Raphael, and Gabriel looked down from heaven and saw much blood being shed upon the earth, and all lawlessness being wrought upon the earth.
27 [9:2] And they said one to another: The earth made without inhabitant cries the voice of their crying up to the gates of heaven.
28 [9:3] And now to you, the holy ones of heaven, the souls of men make their suit, saying: Bring our cause before the Most High.

29 [9:4] And they said to the Lord of the ages: Lord of lords, God of gods, King of kings, *and God of the ages*, the throne of Thy glory *standeth* unto all the generations of the ages, and Thy name holy and glorious and blessed unto all the ages!
30 [9:5] Thou hast made all things, and power over all things hast Thou: and all things are naked and open in Thy sight, and Thou seest all things, and nothing can hide itself from Thee.
31 [9:6] Thou seest what Azâzêl hath done, who hath taught all unrighteousness on earth and revealed the eternal secrets which were *preserved* in heaven, which men were striving to learn:
32 [9:7] And Semjâzâ, to whom Thou hast given authority to bear rule over his associates.
33 [9:8] And they have gone to the daughters of men upon the earth, and have slept with the women, and have defiled themselves, and revealed to them all kinds of sins.
34 [9:9] And the women have borne nephilim, and the whole earth has thereby been filled with blood and unrighteousness.
35 [9:10a] And now, behold, the souls of those who have died are crying and making their suit to the gates of heaven,
36 [9:10b] And their lamentations have ascended: and cannot cease because of the lawless deeds which are wrought on the earth.
37 [9:11] And Thou knowest all things before they come to pass, and Thou seest these things and Thou dost suffer them, and Thou dost not say to us what we are to do to them in regard to these.
38 [10:1] ¶ Then the Most High, the Holy and Great One spake, and sent Uriel to the son of Lamech, and said to him:
39 [10:2a] Go to Noah and tell him in my name: Hide thyself! and reveal to him the end that is approaching:
40 [10:2b] That the whole earth will be destroyed, and a deluge is about to come upon the whole earth and will destroy all that is on it.
41 [10:3] And now instruct him that he may escape, and his seed may be preserved for all the generations of the world.
42 [10:4] And again the Lord said to Raphael: Bind Azâzêl hand and foot and cast him into the darkness: and make an opening in the desert, which is in Dûdâêl, and cast him therein.
43 [10:5] And place upon him rough and jagged rocks, and cover him with darkness, and let him abide there forever, and cover his face that he may not see light.

44 [10:6-7a] And on the day of the great judgement he shall be cast into the fire and heal the earth which the *Iyrin* have corrupted,
45 [10:7b] And proclaim the healing of the earth, that they may heal the plague, and that all the children of men may not perish through all the secret things that the *Iyrin* have disclosed and have taught their sons.
46 [10:8] And the whole earth has been corrupted through the works that were taught by Azâzêl: to him ascribe all sin.
47 [10:9] And to Gabriel said the Lord: Proceed against the debased and the reprobates, and against the children of fornication: and destroy the children of fornication and the children of the *Iyrin* from amongst men and cause them to go forth: send them one against the other that they may destroy each other in battle: for length of days shall they not have.
48 [10:10a] And no request that they, *their fathers*, make of thee shall be granted unto their fathers on their behalf;
49 [10:10b] For they hope to live an eternal life, and that each one of them will *have* five hundred *degrees*.
50 [10:11] And the Lord said unto Michael: Go, bind Semjâzâ and his associates who have united themselves with women so as to have defiled themselves with them in all their uncleanness.
51 [10:12] And when their sons have slain one another, and they have seen the destruction of their beloved ones, bind them fast for seventy generations in the valleys of the earth, till the day of their judgement and of their consummation, till the judgement that is forever and ever is consummated.
52 [10:13] In those days they shall be led off to the abyss of fire: *and* to the torment and the prison in which they shall be confined forever.
53 [10:14] And whosoever shall be condemned and destroyed will from thenceforth be bound together with them to the end of all generations.
54 [10:15] And destroy all the spirits of the reprobate and the children of the *Iyrin*, because they have wronged mankind.
55 [10:16a] Destroy all wrong from the face of the earth and let every evil work come to an end: and let the plant of righteousness and truth appear:
56 [10:16b] And it shall prove a blessing; the works of righteousness and truth shall be planted in truth and joy for evermore.

57 [10:17] And then shall all the righteous escape, and shall live till they beget thousands of children, and all the days of their youth and their old age shall they complete in peace.
58 [10:18] And then shall the whole earth be tilled in righteousness and shall all be planted with trees and be full of blessing.
59 [10:19a] And all desirable trees shall be planted on it, and they shall plant vines on it: and the vine which they plant thereon shall yield wine in abundance,
60 [10:19b] And as for all the seed which is sown thereon each measure *of it* shall bear a thousand, and each measure of olives shall yield ten presses of oil.
61 [10:20a] And cleanse thou the earth from all oppression, and from all unrighteousness, and from all sin, and from all godlessness:
62 [10:20b] And all the uncleanness that is wrought upon the earth destroy from off the earth.
63 [10:21] And all the children of men shall become righteous, and all nations shall offer adoration and shall praise Me, and all shall worship Me.
64 [10:22] And the earth shall be cleansed from all defilement, and from all sin, and from all punishment, and from all torment, and I will never again send *them* upon it from generation to generation and forever.
65 [11:1] ¶ And in those days I will open the store chambers of blessing which are in the heaven, so as to send them down upon the earth] over the work and labor of the children of men.
66 [11:2] And truth and peace shall be associated together throughout all the days of the world and throughout all the generations of men.

Chapter 3

Dream-Vision of Enoch: his Intercession for Azazel and the fallen angels: and his Announcement of their first and final Doom.
(Enoch 12-16)

1 [12:1] Before these things Enoch was hidden, and no one of the children of men knew where he was hidden, and where he abode, and what had become of him.

2 [12:2] And his activities had to do with the *Iyrin*, and his days were with the holy ones.
3 [12:3] And I, Enoch was blessing the Lord of majesty and the King of the ages, and lo! The angels called me—Enoch the scribe—and said to me:
4 [12:4a] Enoch, thou scribe of righteousness, go, declare to the Watchers of the heaven who have left the high heaven, the holy eternal place, and have defiled themselves with women, and have done as the children of earth do, and have taken unto themselves wives:
5 [12:4b] Ye have wrought great destruction on the earth:
6 [12:5] And ye shall have no peace nor forgiveness of sin: and inasmuch as they delight themselves in their children,
7 [12:6] The murder of their beloved ones shall they see, and over the destruction of their children shall they lament, and shall make supplication unto eternity, but mercy and peace shall ye not attain.
8 [13:1a] ¶ And Enoch went and said: Azâzêl, thou shalt have no peace:
9 [13:1b] A severe sentence has gone forth against thee to put thee in bonds:
10 [13:2] And thou shalt not have toleration nor request granted to thee, because of the unrighteousness which thou hast taught, and because of all the works of godlessness and unrighteousness and sin which thou hast shown to men.
11 [13:3] Then I went and spoke to them all together, and they were all afraid, and fear and trembling seized them.
12 [13:4] And they besought me to draw up a petition for them that they might find forgiveness, and to read their petition in the presence of the Lord of heaven.
13 [13:5] For from thenceforward they could not speak *with God* nor lift up their eyes to heaven for shame of their sins for which they had been condemned.
14 [13:6] Then I wrote out their petition, and the prayer in regard to their spirits and their deeds individually and in regard to their requests that they should have forgiveness and length *of days*.
15 [13:7] And I went off and sat down at the waters of Dan, in the land of Dan, to the south of the west of Hermon: *there* I read their petition till I fell asleep.
16 [13:8a] And behold a dream came to me, and visions fell down upon me;

17 [13:8b] And I saw visions of chastisement, and a voice came bidding *me* I to tell it to the sons of heaven and reprimand them.
18 [13:9] And when I awaked, I came unto them, and they were all sitting gathered together, weeping in 'Abelsjâîl, which is between Lebanon and Sênêsêr, with their faces covered.
19 [13:10a] And I recounted before them all the visions which I had seen in sleep,
20 [13:10b] And I began to speak words of righteousness, and to reprimand the heavenly Iyrin;
21 [14:1] ¶ *And* the book of the words of righteousness, and of the reprimand of the eternal *Iyrin* in accordance with the command of the Holy Great One in that vision.
22 [14:2] *And* I saw in my sleep what I will now say with a tongue of flesh and with the breath of my mouth: which the Great One has given to men to converse therewith and understand with the heart.
23 [14:3a] As He has created and given to man the power of understanding the word of wisdom,
24 [14:3b] So hath He created me also and given me the power of reprimanding the Iyrin, the children of heaven.
25 [14:4] *And* I wrote out your petition, and in my vision it appeared thus, that your petition will not be granted unto you throughout all the days of eternity, and that judgement has been finally passed upon you: yea *your petition* will not be granted unto you.
26 [14:5] And from henceforth you shall not ascend into heaven unto all eternity, and in bonds of the earth the decree has gone forth to bind you for all the days of the world.
27 [14:6] And *that* previously you shall have seen the destruction of your beloved sons and ye shall have no pleasure in them, but they shall fall before you by the sword.
28 [14:7] And your petition on their behalf shall not be granted, nor yet on your own: even though you weep and pray and speak all the words contained in the writing which I have written.
29 [14:8a] And the vision was shown to me thus: Behold, in the vision clouds invited me and a mist summoned me,
30 [14:8b] And the course of the stars and the lightnings sped and hastened me, and the winds in the vision caused me to fly and lifted me upward, and bore me into heaven.
31 [14:9] And I went in till I drew nigh to a wall which is built of crystals and surrounded by tongues of fire: and it began to affright me.

32 [14:10a] And I went into the tongues of fire and drew nigh to a large house which was built of crystals:
33 [14:10b] And the walls of the house were like a tessellated floor *made* of crystals, and its groundwork was of crystal.
34 [14:11] Its ceiling was like the path of the stars and the lightnings, and between them were fiery cherubim, and their heaven was *clear as* water.
35 [14:12] A flaming fire surrounded the walls, and its portals blazed with fire.
36 [14:13] And I entered into that house, and it was hot as fire and cold as ice: there were no delights of life therein: fear covered me, and trembling got hold upon me.
37 [14:14] And as I quaked and trembled, I fell upon my face.
38 [14:15] And I beheld a vision, And lo! there was a second house, greater than the former, and the entire portal stood open before me, and it was built of flames of fire.
39 [14:16] And in every respect it so excelled in splendor and magnificence and extent that I cannot describe to you its splendor and its extent.
40 [14:17] And its floor was of fire, and above it were lightnings and the path of the stars, and its ceiling also was flaming fire.
41 [14:18] And I looked and saw therein a lofty throne: its appearance was as crystal, and the wheels thereof as the shining sun, and there was the vision of cherubim.
42 [14:19] And from underneath the throne came streams of flaming fire so that I could not look thereon.
43 [14:20] And the Great Glory sat thereon, and His raiment shone more brightly than the sun and was whiter than any snow.
44 [14:21] None of the angels could enter and could behold His face by reason of the magnificence and glory and no flesh could behold Him.
45 [14:22] The flaming fire was round about Him, and a great fire stood before Him, and none around could draw nigh Him: ten thousand times ten thousand *stood* before Him, yet He needed no counselor.
46 [14:23] And the most holy ones who were nigh to Him did not leave by night nor depart from Him.
47 [14:24a] And until then I had been prostrate on my face, trembling:
48 [14:24b] And the Lord called me with His own mouth, and said to me: Come hither, Enoch, and hear my word.

49 [14:25] And one of the holy ones came to me and waked me, and He made me rise up and approach the door: and I bowed my face downwards.
50 [15:1] And He answered and said to me, and I heard His voice: Fear not, Enoch, thou righteous man and scribe of righteousness: approach hither and hear my voice.
51 [15:2] ¶ And go, say to the Watchers of heaven, who have sent thee to intercede for them: You should intercede for men, and not men for you:
52 [15:3] Wherefore have ye left the high, holy, and eternal heaven, and lain with women, and defiled yourselves with the daughters of men and taken to yourselves wives, and done like the children of earth, and begotten Nephilim *as your* sons?
53 [15:4] And though ye were holy, spiritual, living the eternal life, you have defiled yourselves with the blood of women, and have begotten *children* with the blood of flesh, and, as the children of men, have lusted after flesh and blood as those also do who die and perish.
54 [15:5] Therefore have I given them wives also that they might impregnate them, and beget children by them, that thus nothing might be wanting to them on earth.
55 [15:6] But you were formerly spiritual, living the eternal life, and immortal for all generations of the world.
56 [15:7] And therefore I have not appointed wives for you; for as for the spiritual ones of the heaven, in heaven is their dwelling.
57 [15:8] And now, the nephilim, who are produced from the spirits and flesh, shall be called demons upon the earth, and on the earth shall be their dwelling.
58 [15:9] Demons have proceeded from their bodies; because they are born from men *(wickedness)*, and from the holy *Iyrin* is their beginning and primal origin; they shall be *as* evil spirits on earth, and demons shall they be called.
59 [15:10] As for the *those with the* spirits of heaven *(Zion)*, in heaven shall be their dwelling, but as for *those with the* spirits of the earth which were born upon the earth, on the earth shall be their dwelling.
60 [15:11a] And the spirits of the nephilim afflict, oppress, destroy, attack, do battle, and work destruction on the earth, and cause trouble:
61 [15:11b] And they take no food, but nevertheless hunger and thirst, and cause offences.

62 [15:11c] And these spirits shall rise up against the children of men and against the women, because they have proceeded from them.
63 [16:1a] ¶ From the days of the slaughter and destruction and death of the nephilim, from the souls of whose flesh the spirits, having gone forth, shall destroy without incurring judgement—
64 [16:1b] Thus shall they destroy until the day of the consummation, the great judgement in which the age shall be consummated, over the *Iyrin* and the godless, yea, shall be wholly consummated.
65 [16:2a] And now as to the *Iyrin* who have sent thee to intercede for them, who had been aforetime in heaven, *say to them*: You have been in heaven, but all the mysteries had not yet been revealed to you, and you knew worthless ones,
66 [16:3] And these in the hardness of your hearts you have made known to the women, and through these mysteries women and men work much evil on earth.
67 16:4] Say to them therefore: You have no peace.

Chapter 4

Enoch's first journeys through the Earth and the spirit worlds. Enoch learns the names and functions of the Seven Archangels.
(Enoch 17-20)

1 [17:1] And they *me* took and brought me to a place in which those who were there were like flaming fire, and, when they wished, they appeared as men.
2 [17:2] And they brought me to the place of darkness, and to a mountain the point of whose summit reached to heaven.
3 [17:3] And I saw the places of the luminaries and the treasuries of the stars and of the thunder and in the uttermost depths, where were a fiery bow and arrows and their quiver, and a fiery sword and all the lightnings.
4 [17:4] And they took me to the living waters, and to the fire of the west, which receives every setting of the sun.
5 [17:5] And I came to a river of fire in which the fire flows like water and discharges itself into the great sea towards the west.
6 [17:6] I saw the great rivers and came to the great river and to the great darkness and went to the place where no flesh walks.

7 [17:7] I saw the mountains of the darkness of winter and the place whence all the waters of the deep flow.
8 [17:8] I saw the mouths of all the rivers of the earth and the mouth of the deep.
9 [18:1] ¶ I saw the treasuries of all the winds: I saw how He had furnished with them the whole creation and the firm foundations of the earth.
10 [18:2] And I saw the cornerstone of the earth: I saw the four winds which bear the earth and the firmament of the heaven.
11 [18:3a] And I saw how the winds stretch out the vaults of heaven and have their station between heaven and earth:
12 [18:3b] These are the pillars of the heaven.
13 [18:4] I saw the winds of heaven which turn and bring the circumference of the sun and all the stars to their setting.
14 [18:5a] I saw the winds on the earth carrying the clouds:
15 [18:5b] I saw the paths of the angels; I saw at the end of the earth the firmament of the heaven above.
16 [18:6] And I proceeded and saw a place which burns day and night, where there are seven mountains of magnificent stones: three towards the east, and three towards the south.
17 [18:7] And as for those towards the east, one was of colored stone, and one of pearl, and one of jacinth, and those towards the south of red stone.
18 [18:8] But the middle one reached to heaven like the throne of God, of alabaster, and the summit of the throne was of sapphire.
19 [18:9] And I saw a flaming fire.
20 [18:10] And beyond these mountains is a region the end of the great earth: there the heavens were completed.
21 [18:11a] And I saw a deep abyss, with columns of heavenly fire,
22 [18:11b] And among them I saw columns of fire fall, which were beyond measure alike towards the height and towards the depth.
23 [18:12a] And beyond that abyss I saw a place which had no firmament of the heaven above, and no firmly founded earth beneath it:
24 [18:12b] There was no water upon it, and no birds, but it was a waste and horrible place.
25 [18:13a] I saw there seven stars like great burning mountains, and to me.
26 [18:13b-14] And when I inquired regarding them, the angel said: This place is the end of heaven and earth: this has become a prison for the stars and the host of heaven.

27 [18:15] And the stars which roll over the fire are they which have transgressed the commandment of the Lord in the beginning of their rising, because they did not come forth at their appointed times.
28 [18:16] And He was wroth with them and bound them till the time when their guilt should be consummated *even* for ten thousand years.
29 [19:1a] ¶ And Uriel said to me: Here shall stand the angels who have connected themselves with women, and their spirits assuming many different forms are defiling mankind and shall lead them astray into sacrificing to demons as gods,
30 [19:1b] *Here shall they stand*, till the day of the great judgement in which they shall be judged till they are made an end of.
31 [19:2] And the women also of the angels who went astray shall become sirens.
32 [19:3] And I, Enoch, alone saw the vision, the ends of all things: and no man shall see as I have seen.
33 [20:1] ¶ And these are the names of the holy archangels who watch.
34 [20:2] Uriel *(God is my light)*, one of the holy angels, who is over the world and over Tartarus.
35 [20:3] Raphael *(God heals)*, one of the holy angels, who is over the spirits of men.
36 [20:4] Raguel *(friend of God)*, one of the holy angels who takes vengeance on the world of the luminaries.
37 [20:5] Michael *(one who is like God)*, one of the holy angels, to wit, he that is set over the best part of mankind and over chaos.
38 [20:6] Saraqâêl *(prince of God)*, one of the holy angels, who is set over the spirits, who sin in the spirit.
39 [20:7] Gabriel *(God is my strength)*, one of the holy angels, who is over Paradise and the serpents and the Cherubim.
40 [20:8] Remiel *(thunder of God)*, one of the holy angels, whom God set over those who rise.

Chapter 5

Enoch's first journeys through the Earth and the spirit worlds, continued. (Enoch 21-27)

1 [21:1] And I proceeded to where things were chaotic.

2 [21:2] And I saw there something horrible: I saw neither a heaven above nor a firmly founded earth, but a place chaotic and horrible.
3 [21:3] And there I saw seven stars of the heaven bound together within them, like great mountains and burning with fire.
4 [21:4] Then I said: For what sin are they bound, and on what account have they been cast in hither?
5 [21:5] Then said Uriel, one of the holy angels who was with me, and was chief over them, and said: Enoch, why dost thou ask, and why art thou eager for the truth?
6 [21:6] These are of the number of the stars of heaven, which have transgressed the commandment of the Lord, and are bound here till ten thousand years, the time entailed by their sins, are consummated.
7 [21:7] And from thence I went to another place, which was still more horrible than the former, and I saw a horrible thing: a great fire there which burnt and blazed, and the place was cleft as far as the abyss, being full of great descending columns of fire: neither its extent or magnitude could I see, nor could I conjecture.
8 [21:8] Then I said: How fearful is the place and how terrible to look upon!
9 [21:9a] Then Uriel answered me, one of the holy angels who was with me, and said unto me: Enoch, why hast thou such fear and affright?
10 [21::9b] And I answered: Because of this fearful place, and because of the spectacle of the pain.
11 [21:10] And he said unto me: 'This place is the prison of the angels, and here they will be imprisoned forever.
12 [22:1] ¶ And thence I went to another place, and he showed me in the west another great and high mountain and of hard rock.
13 [22:2a] And there was in it four hollow places, deep and wide and very smooth: three of them were dark and one bright; and there was a fountain of water in its midst.
14 [22:2b] And I said: How smooth are these hollow places, and deep and dark to look at.
15 [22:3] Then Raphael, one of the holy angels who was with me, answered and said unto me: These hollow places have been created for this very purpose, that the spirits of the souls of the dead should assemble therein, yea that all the souls of the children of men should assemble here.

16 [22:4] And these places have been made to receive them till the day of their judgement and till their appointed period till the period appointed, till the great judgement *comes* upon them.'
17 [22:5] I saw the spirits of the children of men who were dead, and their voice went forth to heaven and made petitions.
18 [22:6] And I asked Raphael the angel who was with me, and I said unto him: This spirit which maketh petition, whose is it, whose voice goeth forth and maketh suit to heaven?
19 [22:7] And he answered me saying: This is the spirit which went forth from Abel, whom his brother Cain slew, and he makes his suit against him till his seed is destroyed from the face of the earth, and his seed is annihilated from amongst the seed of men.
20 [22:8] Then I asked regarding it, and regarding all the hollow places: Why is one separated from the other?
21 [22:9a] And he answered me and said unto me: These three have been made that the spirits of the dead might be separated.
22 [22:9b] And such a division has been made for the spirits of the righteous, in which there is the bright spring of water.
23 [22:10] And such has been made for sinners when they die and are buried in the earth and judgement has not been executed upon them in their lifetime.
24 [22:11a] Here their spirits shall be set apart in this great pain till the great day of judgement, and scourgings, and punishment, and torment of those who curse forever, so that *there may be* retribution for their spirits.
25 [22:11b] *And* there He shall bind them forever.
26 [22:12] And such a division has been made for the spirits of those who make their petition, who make disclosures concerning their destruction, when they were slain in the days of *their probation*.
27 [22:13a] Such has been made for the spirits of men who were not righteous but sinners, who were complete in transgression, and who are godless transgressors.
28 [22:13b] And of the lawless they shall be companions: but their spirits shall not be slain *nor* punished in the day of judgement nor shall they be raised from thence.
29 [22:14] Then I blessed the Lord of glory and said: Blessed art thou my Lord, the Lord of righteousness, who ruleth over the world forever.
30 [23:1] ¶ From thence I went to another place to the west of the ends of the earth.

31 [23:2] And I saw a burning fire which ran without resting and paused not from its course day or night but *ran* regularly.
32 [23:3] And I asked saying: What is this which rests not?
33 [23:4] Then Raguel, one of the holy angels who was with me, answered me and said unto me: This course of fire which thou hast seen is the fire in the west which persecutes all the luminaries of heaven.
34 [24:1] ¶ And from thence I went to another place of the earth, and he showed me a mountain range of fire which burnt day and night.
35 [24:2a] And I went beyond it and saw seven magnificent mountains, all differing each from the other,
36 [24:2b] And the stones *thereof* were magnificent and beautiful, magnificent as a whole, of glorious appearance and fair exterior:
37 [24:2c] Three towards the east, one founded on the other, and three towards the south, one upon the other, and deep rough ravines, no one of which joined with any other.
38 [24:3] And the seventh mountain was in the midst of these, and it excelled them in height, resembling the seat of a throne: and fragrant trees encircled the throne.
39 [24:4a] And amongst them was a tree such as I had never yet smelt, neither was any amongst them nor were others like it:
40 [24:4b] *And* it had a fragrance beyond all fragrance, and its leaves and blooms and wood wither not forever:
41 [24:4c] And its fruit is beautiful, and its fruit resembles the dates of a palm.
42 [24:5] Then I said: How beautiful is this tree, and fragrant, and its leaves are fair, and its blooms very delightful in appearance.
43 [24:6] Then answered Michael, one of the holy and honored angels who was with me and was their leader.
44 [25:1a] ¶ And he said unto me: Enoch, why dost thou ask me regarding the fragrance of the tree, and ⌈why⌉ dost thou wish to learn the truth?
45 [25:1b] Then I answered him saying: I wish to know about everything, but especially about this tree.
46 [25:1c] And he answered saying: This high mountain which thou hast seen⌉⌉, whose summit is like the throne of God, is His throne, where the Holy Great One, the Lord of Glory, the Eternal King, will sit when He shall come down to visit the earth with goodness.

47 [25:4a] And as for this fragrant tree no mortal is permitted to touch it till the great judgement, when He shall take vengeance on all and bring *everything* to its consummation forever.
48 [25:4b] It shall then be given to the righteous and holy.
49 [25:5[Its fruit shall be for food to the elect: it shall be transplanted to the holy place, to the temple of the Lord, the Eternal King.
50 [25:6a] Then shall they rejoice with joy and be glad, and into the holy place shall they enter;
51 [25:6b] And its fragrance shall be in their bones, and they shall live a long life on earth, such as thy fathers lived:
52 [25:6c] And in their days shall no sorrow or plague or torment or calamity touch them.
53 [25:7] Then blessed I the God of Glory, the Eternal King, who hath prepared such things for the righteous, and hath created them and promised to give to them.

Chapter 6

Enoch's first journeys through the Earth and the spirit worlds, continued. (Enoch 26-36)

1 [26:1] And from thence went I to the middle of the earth, and I saw a blessed place in which there were trees with branches abiding and blooming of a dismembered tree.
2 [26:2] And there I saw a holy mountain, and underneath the mountain to the east there was a stream and it flowed towards the south.
3 [26:3] And I saw towards the east another mountain higher than this, and between them a deep and narrow ravine: in it also ran a stream underneath the mountain.
4 [26:4] And to the west thereof there was another mountain, lower than the former and of small elevation, and a ravine deep and dry between them: and another deep and dry ravine was at the extremities of the three mountains.
5 [26:5] And all the ravines were deep and narrow, *being formed* of hard rock, and trees were not planted upon them.
6 [26:6] And I marveled at the rocks, and I marveled at the ravine, yea, I marveled very much.

7 [27:1] ¶ Then said I: For what object is this blessed land, which is entirely filled with trees, and this accursed valley between?
8 [27:2a] Then Uriel, one of the holy angels who was with me, answered and said: This accursed valley is for those who are accursed forever:
9 [27:2b] Here shall all the accursed be gathered together who utter with their lips against the Lord unseemly words and of His glory speak hard things.
10 [27:2c] Here shall they be gathered together, and here shall be the place of their judgement, *and thus* the place of their habitation.
11 [27:3a] In the last days there shall be upon them the spectacle of righteous judgement in the presence of the righteous forever:
12 [27:3b] Here shall the godly *and* the merciful bless the Lord of glory, the Eternal King.
13 [27:4] In the days of judgement over the former, they shall bless Him for the mercy in accordance with which He has assigned them *their lot*.
14 [27:5] Then I blessed the Lord of Glory and set forth His glory and lauded Him gloriously.
15 28:1] ¶ And thence I went towards the east, into the midst of the mountain range of the desert; and I saw a wilderness and it was solitary, full of trees and plants.
16 [28:2] And water gushed forth from above.
17 [28:3] Rushing like a copious watercourse which flowed towards the northwest; it caused clouds and dew to ascend on every side.
18 {29:1] ¶ And thence I went to another place in the desert and approached to the east of this mountain range.
19 [29:2] And there I saw aromatic trees exhaling the fragrance of frankincense and myrrh, and the trees also were similar to the almond tree.
20 [30:1] ¶ And beyond these, I went afar to the east, and I saw another place, a valley *full* of water.
21 [30:2] And therein there was a tree, the color of fragrant trees such as the mastic.
22 [30:3a] And on the sides of those valleys I saw fragrant cinnamon.
23 [30:3b] And beyond these I proceeded to the east.
24 [31:1] ¶ And I saw other mountains, and amongst them were groves of trees, and there flowed forth from them nectar, which is named sarara and galbanum.

25 [31:2] And beyond these mountains I saw another mountain to the east of the ends of the earth, whereon were aloe trees, and all the trees were full of stacte *(nataf)*, being like almond trees.
26 {32:3] And when one burnt it, it smelt sweeter than any fragrant odor.
27 [33:1] ¶ And after these fragrant odors, as I looked towards the north(east) over the mountains I saw seven mountains full of choice nard, and fragrant trees, and mastic, and cinnamon, and pepper.
28 [33:2] And thence I went over the summits of all these mountains, far towards the east of the earth, and passed above the Erythraean sea and went far from it and passed over the angel Zotîêl.
29 [33:3] And I came to the Garden of Righteousness, and from afar off trees more numerous than these trees and great—two trees there, very great, beautiful, and glorious, and magnificent, and of goodly fragrance; and *one of these was* the tree of knowledge, whose holy fruit they eat and know great wisdom.
30 [33:4] That tree is in height like the fir, and its leaves are] like those of the Carob tree: and its fruit is like the clusters of the vine, very beautiful: and the fragrance of the tree penetrates afar.
31 [33:5] Then I said: How beautiful is the tree, and how attractive is its look!
32 [33:6] Then Raphael the holy angel who was with me answered me and said: This is the tree of wisdom, of which thy father old *in years* and thy aged mother, who were before thee, have eaten, and they learnt wisdom and their eyes were opened, and they knew that they were naked and they were driven out of the garden.
33 [34:1] ¶ And from thence I went to the ends of the earth and saw there great beasts, and each differed from the other; and *I saw* birds also differing in appearance and beauty and voice, the one differing from the other.
34 [34:2] And to the east of those beasts I saw the ends of the earth whereon the heaven rests, and the portals of the heaven open.
35 [34:3] And I saw how the stars of heaven come forth, and I counted the portals out of which they proceed, and wrote down all their outlets, of each individual star by itself, according to their number and their names, their courses and their positions, and their times and their months, as Uriel the holy angel who was with me showed me.

36 [34:4] He showed all things to me and wrote them down for me: also their names he wrote for me, and their laws and their companies.

37 [35:1] ¶ And from thence I went towards the north to the ends of the earth, and there I saw a great and glorious device at the ends of the whole earth.

38 [35:2] And here I saw three portals of heaven open in the heaven: through each of them proceed north winds: when they blow there is cold, hail, frost, snow, dew, and rain.

39 [35:3] And out of one portal they blow for good: but when they blow through the other two portals, it is with violence and affliction on the earth, and they blow with violence.

40 [36:1] ¶ And from thence I went towards the west to the ends of the earth and saw there three portals of the heaven open such as I had seen in the east, the same number of portals, and the same number of outlets.

The Book of Parables of Enoch

Based on the Book of Watchers, this portion of the Book of Enoch was not to be found in the Dead Sea Scrolls. Thought to have been composed between 94 BC and 270 AD.

Chapter 7

Enoch's first parable: the coming judgement of the wicked; the abode of the righteous and the Elect One: the praises of the blessed; and the four Archangels; astronomical secrets; the dwelling places of Wisdom and of unrighteousness; astronomical secrets.
(Enoch 37-44)

1 [37:1] The second vision which he saw, the vision of wisdom—which Enoch the son of Jared, the son of Mahalalel, the son of Cainan, the son of Enos, the son of Seth, the son of Adam, saw.
2 [37:2a] And this is the beginning of the words of wisdom which I lifted up my voice to speak and say to those which dwell on earth:
3 [37:2b] Hear, ye men of old time, and see, ye that come after, the words of the Holy One which I will speak before the Lord of Spirits.
4 [37:3] It were better to declare *them only* to the men of old time, but even from those that come after we will not withhold the beginning of wisdom.
5 [37:4] Till the present day such wisdom has never been given by the Lord of Spirits as I have received according to my insight, according to the good pleasure of the Lord of Spirits by whom the lot of eternal life has been given to me.
6 [37:5] Now three parables were imparted to me, and I lifted up my voice and recounted them to those that dwell on the earth.

THE COMING JUDGEMENT OF THE WICKED

7 [38:1] ¶ The First Parable: When the congregation of the righteous shall appear, and sinners shall be judged for their sins, and shall be driven from the face of the earth:
8 [38:2a] And when the Righteous One shall appear before the eyes of the righteous, whose elect works hang upon the Lord of

Spirits, and light shall appear to the righteous and the elect who dwell on the earth,
9 [38:2b] Where then will be the dwelling of the sinners, and where the resting place of those who have denied the Lord of Spirits?
10 [38:2c] It had been good for them if they had not been born.
11 [38:3] When the secrets of the righteous shall be revealed, and the sinners judged, and the godless driven from the presence of the righteous and elect,
12 [38:4] From that time those that possess the earth shall no longer be powerful and exalted: and they shall not be able to behold the face of the holy, for the Lord of Spirits has caused His light to appear on the face of the holy, righteous, and elect.
13 [38:5] Then shall the kings and the mighty perish and be given into the hands of the righteous and holy.
14 [38:6] And thenceforward none shall seek for themselves mercy from the Lord of Spirits For their life is at an end.

THE ABODE OF THE RIGHTEOUS AND OF THE ELECT ONE: THE PRAISES OF THE BLESSED

15 [39:1] ¶ And it shall come to pass in those days that elect and holy children will descend from the high heaven, and their seed will become one with the children of men.
16 [39:2a] And in those days Enoch received books of zeal and wrath, and books of disquiet and expulsion.
17 [39:2b] And mercy shall not be accorded to them, saith the Lord of Spirits.
18 [39:3] And in those days a whirlwind carried me off from the earth and set me down at the end of the heavens.
19 [39:4] And there I saw another vision, the dwelling places of the holy, and the resting places of the righteous.
20 [39:5a] Here mine eyes saw their dwellings with His righteous angels, and their resting places with the holy.
21 [39:5b] And they petitioned and interceded and prayed for the children of men,
22 [39:5c] And righteousness flowed before them as water, and mercy like dew upon the earth: thus it is amongst them forever and ever.
23 [39:6a] And in that place mine eyes saw the Elect One of righteousness and of faith,

24 [39:6b] And righteousness shall prevail in his days, and the righteous and elect shall be without number before Him forever and ever.
25 [39:7a] And I saw his dwelling place under the wings of the Lord of Spirits.
26 [39:7b] And all the righteous and elect before Him shall be strong as fiery lights, and their mouth shall be full of blessing,
27 [39:7c] And their lips extol the name of the Lord of Spirits, and righteousness before Him shall never fail, and uprightness shall never fail before Him.
28 [39:8] There I wished to dwell, and my spirit longed for that dwelling place: and there heretofore hath been my portion, for so has it been established concerning me before the Lord of Spirits.
29 [39:9] In those days I praised and extolled the name of the Lord of Spirits with blessings and praises, because He hath destined me for blessing and glory according to the good pleasure of the Lord of Spirits.
30 [39:10] For a long time my eyes regarded that place, and I blessed Him and praised Him, saying: Blessed is He, and may He be blessed from the beginning and for evermore.
31 [39:11] And before Him there is no ceasing. He knows before the world was created what is forever and what will be from generation unto generation.
32 [39:12] Those who sleep not bless Thee: they stand before Thy glory and bless, praise, and extol, saying: Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of Spirits: He filleth the earth with spirits.
33 [39:13] And here my eyes saw all those who sleep not: they stand before Him and bless and say: Blessed be Thou, and blessed be the name of the Lord for ever and ever.
34 [39:14] And my face was changed; for I could no longer behold.

THE FOUR ARCHANGELS

35 [40:1] ¶ And after that I saw thousands of thousands and ten thousand times ten thousand, I saw a multitude beyond number and reckoning, who stood before the Lord of Spirits.
36 [40:2] And on the four sides of the Lord of Spirits I saw four presences, different from those that sleep not, and I learnt their names: for the angel that went with me made known to me their names and showed me all the hidden things.
37 [40:3] And I heard the voices of those four presences as they uttered praises before the Lord of glory.

38 [40:4] The first voice blesses the Lord of Spirits forever and ever.
39 [40:5] And the second voice I heard blessing the Elect One and the elect ones who hang upon the Lord of Spirits.
40 [40:6] And the third voice I heard pray and intercede for those who dwell on the earth and supplicate in the name of the Lord of Spirits.
41 [40:7] And I heard the fourth voice fending off the Satans and forbidding them to come before the Lord of Spirits to accuse them who dwell on the earth.
42 [40:8] After that I asked the angel of peace who went with me, who showed me everything that is hidden: Who are these four presences which I have seen and whose words I have heard and written down?
43 [40:9a] And he said to me: This first is Michael, the merciful and longsuffering:
44 [40:9b] And the second, who is set over all the diseases and all the wounds of the children of men, is Raphael:
45 [40:9c] And the third, who is set over all the powers, is Gabriel:
46 [40:9d] And the fourth, who is set over the repentance unto hope of those who inherit eternal life, is named Phanuel.
47 [40:9e] And these are the four angels of the Lord of Spirits and the four voices I heard in those days.
48 [41:1] ¶ And after that I saw all the secrets of the heavens, and how the kingdom is divided, and how the actions of men are weighed in the balance.
49 [41:2a] And there I saw the mansions of the elect and the mansions of the holy, and mine eyes saw there all the sinners being driven from thence which deny the name of the Lord of Spirits, and being dragged off:
50 [41:2b] And they could not abide because of the punishment which proceeds from the Lord of Spirits.

ASTRONOMICAL SECRETS

51 [41:3a] ¶ And there mine eyes saw the secrets of the lightning and of the thunder, and the secrets of the winds, how they are divided to blow over the earth, and the secrets of the clouds and dew,
52 [41:3b] And there I saw from whence they proceed in that place and from whence they saturate the dusty earth.

53 [41:4] And there I saw closed chambers out of which the winds are divided, the chamber of the hail and winds, the chamber of the mist, and of the clouds, and the cloud thereof hovers over the earth from the beginning of the world.
54 [41:5] And I saw the chambers of the sun and moon, whence they proceed and whither they come again, and their glorious return, and how one is superior to the other, and their stately orbit, and how they do not leave their orbit, and they add nothing to their orbit and they take nothing from it, and they keep faith with each other, in accordance with the oath by which they are bound together.
55 [41:6] And first the sun goes forth and traverses his path according to the commandment of the Lord of Spirits, and mighty is His name forever and ever.
56 [41:7a] And after that I saw the hidden and the visible path of the moon, and she accomplishes the course of her path in that place by day and by night—the one holding a position opposite to the other before the Lord of Spirits.
57 [41:7b] And they give thanks and praise and rest not; For unto them is their thanksgiving rest.
58 [41:8] For the sun changes oft for a blessing or a curse, and the course of the path of the moon is light to the righteous and darkness to the sinners in the name of the Lord, who made a separation between the light and the darkness, and divided the spirits of men, and strengthened the spirits of the righteous, in the name of His righteousness.
59 [41:9] For no angel hinders and no power is able to hinder; for He appoints a judge for them all and He judges them all before Him.

THE DWELLING PLACES OF WISDOM & OF UNRIGHTEOUSNESS

60 [42:1] ¶ Wisdom found no place where she might dwell; then a dwelling place was assigned her in the heavens.
61 [42:2] Wisdom went forth to make her dwelling among the children of men and found no dwelling place: Wisdom returned to her place and took her seat among the angels.
62 [42:3] And unrighteousness went forth from her chambers: whom she sought not she found, and dwelt with them, as rain in a desert and dew on a thirsty land.

ASTRONOMICAL SECRETS

63 [43:1] ¶ And I saw other lightnings and the stars of heaven, and I saw how He called them all by their names, and they hearkened unto Him.

64 [43:2] And I saw how they are weighed in a righteous balance according to their proportions of light: *I saw* the width of their spaces and the day of their appearing, and how their revolution produces lightning: and *I saw* their revolution according to the number of the angels, and *how* they keep faith with each other.

65 [43:3] And I asked the angel who went with me who showed me what was hidden: What are these?

66 [43:4] And he said to me: The Lord of Spirits hath showed thee their parable: these are the names of the holy who dwell on the earth and believe in the name of the Lord of Spirits forever and ever.

67 [44:1] ¶ Also, another phenomenon I saw in regard to the lightnings: how some of the stars arise and become lightnings and cannot part with their new form.

Chapter 8

Enoch's second parable: continued: the lot of the apostates; the Ancient of Days and the Son of Man; the prayer of the righteous; the fount of righteousness; the power & wisdom of the Elect One; the glorification & victory of the righteous.
(Enoch 45-50)

THE LOT OF THE APOSTATES: THE NEW HEAVEN & THE NEW EARTH

1 [45:1] ¶ And this is the Second Parable concerning those who deny the name of the dwelling of the holy ones and the Lord of Spirits.

2 [45:2] And into the heaven they shall not ascend, and on the earth, they shall not come; such shall be the lot of the sinners who have denied the name of the Lord of Spirits, who are thus preserved for the day of suffering and tribulation.

3 [45:3a] On that day Mine Elect One shall sit on the throne of glory and shall try their works, and their places of rest shall be innumerable.

4 [45:3b] And their souls shall grow strong within them when they see Mine Elect Ones, and those who have called upon My glorious name:
5 [45:4] Then will I cause Mine Elect One to dwell among them; and I will transform the heaven and make it an eternal blessing and light
6 [45:5a] And I will transform the earth and make it a blessing: and I will cause Mine elect ones to dwell upon it:
7 [45:5b] But the sinners and evil doers shall not set foot thereon.
8 [45:6a] For I have provided and satisfied with peace My righteous ones and have caused them to dwell before Me:
9 [45:6b] But for the sinners there is judgement impending with Me, so that I shall destroy them from the face of the earth.

THE HEAD OF DAYS & THE SON OF MAN

10 [46:1] ¶ And there I saw One who had a head of days, and His head was white like wool, and with Him was another being whose countenance had the appearance of a man, and His face was full of graciousness, like one of the holy angels.
11 [46:2a] And I asked the angel who went with me and showed me all the hidden things, concerning that Son of Man, who he was, and whence he was, *and* why he went with the Head of Days?
12 [46:2b] And he answered and said unto me: This is the son of Man who hath righteousness, with whom dwelleth righteousness, and who revealeth all the treasures of that which is hidden, because the Lord of Spirits hath chosen him, and whose lot hath the preeminence before the Lord of Spirits in uprightness forever.
13 [46:4] And this Son of Man whom thou hast seen shall raise up the kings and the mighty from their seats, and the strong from their thrones and shall loosen the reins of the strong and break the teeth of the sinners.
14 [46:5] And he shall put down the kings from their thrones and kingdoms because they do not extol and praise Him, nor humbly acknowledge whence the kingdom was bestowed upon them.
15 [46:6a] And he shall put down the countenance of the strong and shall fill them with shame.
16 [46:6b] And darkness shall be their dwelling, and worms shall be their bed, and they shall have no hope of rising from their beds, because they do not extol the name of the Lord of Spirits.
17 [46:7a] And these are they who judge the stars of heaven, and raise their hands against the Most High, and tread upon the earth and dwell upon it;

18 [46:7b] And all their deeds manifest unrighteousness, and their power rests upon their riches, and their faith is in the gods which they have made with their hands, and they deny the name of the Lord of Spirits;
19 [46:8] And they persecute the houses of His congregations, and the faithful who hang upon the name of the Lord of Spirits.

THE PRAYER OF THE RIGHTEOUS FOR VENGEANCE & THEIR JOY AT ITS COMING

20 [47:1] ¶ And in those days shall have ascended the prayer of the righteous, and the blood of the righteous from the earth before the Lord of Spirits.
21 [47:2a] In those days the holy ones who dwell above in the heavens shall unite with one voice and supplicate and pray and praise, and give thanks and bless the name of the Lord of Spirits on behalf of the blood of the righteous which has been shed,
22 [47:2b] And that the prayer of the righteous may not be in vain before the Lord of Spirits, that judgement may be done unto them, and that they may not have to suffer forever.
23 [47:3] In those days I saw the Head of Days when He seated himself upon the throne of His glory, and the books of the living were opened before Him: and all His host which is in heaven above and His counselors stood before Him;
24 [47:4] And the hearts of the holy were filled with joy because the number of the righteous had been offered, and the prayer of the righteous had been heard, and the blood of the righteous been required before the Lord of Spirits.

THE FOUNT OF RIGHTEOUSNESS; THE SON OF MAN—THE STAY OF THE RIGHTEOUS: JUDGEMENT OF THE KINGS & THE MIGHTY

25 [48:1a] ¶ And in that place I saw the fountain of righteousness which was inexhaustible:
26 [48:1b] And around it were many fountains of wisdom; and all the thirsty drank of them, and were filled with wisdom, and their dwellings were with the righteous and holy and elect.
27 [48:2] And at that hour that Son of Man was named In the presence of the Lord of Spirits, and his name before the Head of Days.
28 [48:3] Yea, before the sun and the signs were created, before the stars of the heaven were made, His name was named before the Lord of Spirits.

29 [48:4] He shall be a staff to the righteous whereon to stay themselves and not fall, and he shall be the light of the Gentiles, and the hope of those who are troubled of heart.
30 [48:5] All who dwell on earth shall fall down and worship before him and will praise and bless and celebrate with song the Lord of Spirits.
31 [48:6] And for this reason hath he been chosen and hidden before Him, before the creation of the world and for evermore.
32 [48:7a] And the wisdom of the Lord of Spirits hath revealed him to the holy and righteous;
33 [48:7b] For he hath preserved the lot of the righteous, because they have hated and despised this world of unrighteousness, and have hated all its works and ways in the name of the Lord of Spirits:
34 [48:7c] For in his name they are saved, and according to his good pleasure hath it been in regard to their life.
35 [48:8a] In these days downcast in countenance shall the kings of the earth have become, and the strong who possess the land because of the works of their hands;
36 [48:8b] For on the day of their anguish and affliction they shall not *be able to* save themselves.
37 [48:9] And I will give them over into the hands of Mine elect as straw in the fire so shall they burn before the face of the holy; as lead in the water shall they sink before the face of the righteous, and no trace of them shall any more be found.
38 [48:10a] And on the day of their affliction there shall be rest on the earth, and before them they shall fall and not rise again:
39 [48:10b] And there shall be no one to take them with his hands and raise them, for they have denied the Lord of Spirits and His Anointed.
40 [48:10c] The name of the Lord of Spirits be blessed.

THE POWER & WISDOM OF THE ELECT ONE

41 [49:1] ¶ For wisdom is poured out like water, and glory faileth not before him for evermore.
42 [49:2a] For he is mighty in all the secrets of righteousness, and unrighteousness shall disappear as a shadow, and have no continuance;
43 [49:2b] Because the Elect One standeth before the Lord of Spirits, and His glory is forever and ever, and His might unto all generations.

44 [49:3] And in Him dwells the spirit of wisdom, and the spirit which gives insight, and the spirit of understanding and of might, and the spirit of those who have fallen asleep in righteousness.
45 [49:4] And He shall judge the secret things, and none shall be able to utter a lying word before him; for he is the Elect One before the Lord of Spirits according to His good pleasure.

THE GLORIFICATION & VICTORY OF THE RIGHTEOUS: THE REPENTANCE OF THE GENTILES

46 [50:1] And in those days a change shall take place for the holy and elect, and the light of days shall abide upon them, and glory and honor shall turn to the holy;
47 [50:2a] On the day of affliction on which evil shall have been treasured up against the sinners.
48 [50:2b] And the righteous shall be victorious in the name of the Lord of Spirits and He will cause the others to witness *this* that they may repent and forgo the works of their hands.
49 [50:3] They shall have no honor through the name of the Lord of Spirits, yet through His name shall they be saved, and the Lord of Spirits will have compassion on them, for His compassion is great.
50 [50:4] ¶ And He is righteous also in His judgement, and in the presence of His glory unrighteousness also shall not maintain itself; at His judgement the unrepentant shall perish before Him.
51 [50:5] And from henceforth I will have no mercy on them, saith the Lord of Spirits.

Chapter 9

Enoch's second parable continued: the resurrection of the dead; the six metal mountains & the Elect One; the valley of Judgement; final judgement of Azazel, the Iyrins and their children; last struggle against Israel; the return from the Dispersion.
(Enoch 51-57)

THE RESURRECTION OF THE DEAD, & THE SEPARATION BY THE JUDGE OF THE RIGHTEOUS & THE WICKED

1 [51:1] ¶ And in those days shall the earth also give back that which has been entrusted to it, and Sheol also shall give back that which it has received, and Hell shall give back that which it owes.

2 [51:2] And He shall choose the righteous and holy from among them: for the day has drawn nigh that they should be saved.
3 [51:3a] And the Elect One shall in those days sit on My throne, and His mouth shall pour forth all the secrets of wisdom and counsel: for the Lord of Spirits hath given *them* to Him and hath glorified Him.
4 [51:4] And in those days shall the mountains leap like rams, and the hills also shall skip like lambs satisfied with milk, and the faces of all the angels in heaven shall be lighted up with joy.
5 [51:5] For in those days the Elect One shall arise, and the earth shall rejoice, and the righteous shall dwell upon it, and the elect shall walk thereon.

THE SEVEN METAL MOUNTAINS & THE ELECT ONE

6 [52:1] ¶ And after those days in that place where I had seen all the visions of that which is hidden—for I had been carried off in a whirlwind and they had borne me towards the west—
7 [52:2] There mine eyes saw all the secret things of heaven that shall be, a mountain of iron, and a mountain of copper, and a mountain of silver, and a mountain of gold, and a mountain of soft metal, and a mountain of lead.
8 [52:3] And I asked the angel who went with me, saying: What things are these which I have seen in secret?
9 [52:4] And he said unto me: All these things which thou hast seen shall serve the dominion of His Anointed, that He may be potent and mighty on the earth.
10 [52:5] And that angel of peace answered, saying unto me: Wait a little, and there shall be revealed unto thee all the secret things which surround the Lord of Spirits.
11 [52:6a] And these mountains which thine eyes have seen; the mountain of iron, and the mountain of copper, and the mountain of silver, and the mountain of gold, and the mountain of soft metal, and the mountain of lead;
12 [52:6b] All these shall be in the presence of the Elect One as wax: before the fire, and like the water which streams down from above upon those mountains, and they shall become powerless before his feet.
13 [52:7] And it shall come to pass in those days that none shall be saved, either by gold or by silver, and none be able to escape.
14 [52:8a] And there shall be no iron for war, nor shall one clothe oneself with a breastplate.

15 [52:8b] Bronze shall be of no service, and tin shall be of no service and shall not be esteemed, and lead shall not be desired.
16 [52:9] And all these things shall be denied and destroyed from the surface of the earth when the Elect One shall appear before the face of the Lord of Spirits.

THE VALLEY OF JUDGEMENT: THE ANGELS OF PUNISHMENT: THE COMMUNITIES OF THE ELECT ONE

17 [53:1] ¶ There mine eyes saw a deep valley with open mouths, and all who dwell on the earth and sea and islands shall bring to Him gifts and presents and tokens of homage, but that deep valley shall not become full.
18 [53:2a] And their hands commit lawless deeds, and the sinners devour all whom they lawlessly oppress:
19 [53:2b] Yet the sinners shall be destroyed before the face of the Lord of Spirits, and they shall be banished from off the face of His earth, and they shall perish forever and ever.
20 [53:3] For I saw all the angels of punishment abiding *there* and preparing all the instruments of Satan.
21 [53:4] And I asked the angel of peace who went with me: For whom are they preparing these instruments?
22 [53:5] And he said unto me: They prepare these for the kings and the mighty of this earth, that they may thereby be destroyed.
23 [53:6] And after this the Righteous and Elect One shall cause the house of His congregation to appear: henceforth they shall be no more hindered in the name of the Lord of Spirits.
24 [53:7] And these mountains shall not stand as the earth before His righteousness, but the hills shall be as a fountain of water, and the righteous shall have rest from the oppression of sinners.
25 [54:1] ¶ And I looked and turned to another part of the earth and saw there a deep valley with burning fire.
26 [54:2] And they brought the kings and the mighty and began to cast them into this deep valley.
27 [54:3] And there mine eyes saw how they made these their instruments, iron chains of immeasurable weight.
28 [54:4] And I asked the angel of peace who went with me, saying: For whom are these chains being prepared?
29 [54:5] And he said unto me: These are being prepared for the hosts of Azâzêl, so that they may take them and cast them into the abyss of complete condemnation, and they shall cover their jaws with rough stones as the Lord of Spirits commanded.

30 [54:6] And Michael, and Gabriel, and Raphael, and Phanuel shall take hold of them on that great day, and cast them on that day into the burning furnace, that the Lord of Spirits may take vengeance on them for their unrighteousness in becoming subject to Satan and leading astray those who dwell on the earth.
31 [54:7] And in those days shall punishment come from the Lord of Spirits, and He will open all the chambers of waters which are above the heavens, and of the fountains which are beneath the earth.
32 [54:8] And all the waters shall be joined with the waters: that which is above the heavens is the masculine, and the water which is beneath the earth is the feminine.
33 [54:9] And they shall destroy all who dwell on the earth and those who dwell under the ends of the heaven.
34 [54:10] And when they have recognized their unrighteousness which they have wrought on the earth, then by these shall they perish.
35 [55:1] ¶ And after that the Head of Days repented and said: 'In vain have I destroyed all who dwell on the earth.
36 [55:2] And He swore by His great name: Henceforth I will not do so to all who dwell on the earth, and I will set a sign in the heaven: and this shall be a pledge of good faith between Me and them forever, so long as heaven is above the earth; and this is in accordance with My command.
37 [55:3] When I have desired to take hold of them by the hand of the angels on the day of tribulation and pain because of this, I will cause My chastisement and My wrath to abide upon them, saith God, the Lord of Spirits.
38 [55:4] Ye mighty kings who dwell on the earth, ye shall have to behold Mine Elect One, how he sits on the throne of glory and judges Azâzêl, and all his associates, and all his hosts in the name of the Lord of Spirits.
39 [56:1] ¶ And I saw there the hosts of the angels of punishment going, and they held scourges and chains of iron and bronze.
40 [56:2] And I asked the angel of peace who went with me, saying: To whom are these who hold the scourges going?
41 [56:3] And he said unto me: To their elect and beloved ones, that they may be cast into the chasm of the abyss of the valley.
42 [56:4] And then that valley shall be filled with their elect and beloved, and the days of their lives shall be at an end, and the days of their leading astray shall not thenceforward be reckoned.

THE LAST STRUGGLE OF HEATHEN POWERS AGAINST ISRAEL

43 [56:5] ¶ And in those days the angels shall return and hurl themselves to the east upon the Parthians and Medes: they shall stir up the kings, so that a spirit of unrest shall come upon them, and they shall rouse them from their thrones, that they may break forth as lions from their lairs, and as hungry wolves among their flocks.

44 [56:6a] And they shall go up and tread underfoot the land of His elect ones, and the land of His elect ones shall be before them a threshing floor and a highway:

45 [56:7] But the city of My righteous shall be a hindrance to their horses; and they shall begin to fight among themselves, and their right hand shall be strong against themselves, and a man shall not know his brother, nor a son his father or his mother, till there be no number of the corpses through their slaughter, and their punishment be not in vain.

46 [56:8] In those days Sheol shall open its jaws, and they shall be swallowed up therein and their destruction shall be at an end; Sheol shall devour the sinners in the presence of the elect.

THE RETURN FROM THE DISPERSION

47 [57:1] ¶ And it came to pass after this that I saw another host of wagons, and men riding thereon, and coming on the winds from the east, and from the west to the south.

48 [57:2] And the noise of their wagons was heard, and when this turmoil took place the holy ones from heaven remarked it, and the pillars of the earth were moved from their place, and the sound thereof was heard from the one end of heaven to the other, in one day.

49 [57:3] And they shall all fall down and worship the Lord of Spirits. And this is the end of the second Parable.

Chapter 10

Enoch's third parable: the blessedness of the saints; the lights and the thunder; quaking of the Heaven; angels go off to measure Paradise. (Enoch 58-61)

THE BLESSEDNESS OF THE SAINTS

1 [58:1] ¶ And I began to speak the third Parable concerning the righteous and elect:
2 [58:2] Blessed are ye, ye righteous and elect, for glorious shall be your lot.
3 [58:3a] And the righteous shall be in the light of the sun.
4 [58:3b] And the elect in the light of eternal life: The days of their life shall be unending, And the days of the holy without number.
5 [58:4] And they shall seek the light and find righteousness with the Lord of Spirits: *And* there shall be peace to the righteous in the name of the Eternal Lord.
6 [58:5a] And after this it shall be said to the holy in heaven that they should seek out the secrets of righteousness, the heritage of faith:
7 [58:5b] For it has become bright as the sun upon earth, And the darkness is past.
8 [58:6a] And there shall be a light that never endeth, and to a number of days they shall not come,
9 [58:6b] For the darkness shall first have been destroyed, and the light established before the Lord of Spirits, and the light of uprightness established for ever before the Lord of Spirits.

THE LIGHTS & THE THUNDER

10 [59:1a] ¶ In those days mine eyes saw the secrets of the lightnings, and of the lights, and the judgements: and they lighten for a blessing or a curse as the Lord of Spirits willeth.
11 [59:2] And there I saw the secrets of the thunder, and how when it resounds above in the heaven, the sound thereof is heard, and he caused me to see the judgements executed on the earth, whether they be for wellbeing and blessing, or for a curse according to the word of the Lord of Spirits.
12 [59:3] And after that all the secrets of the lights and lightnings were shown to me, and they lighten for blessing and for satisfying.

QUAKING OF HEAVEN: BEHEMOTH & LEVIATHAN: THE ELEMENTS

13 [60:1a] ¶ In the year five hundred, in the seventh month, on the fourteenth day of the month in the life of Enoch.
14 [60:1b] In that parable I saw how a mighty quaking made the heaven of heavens to quake, and the host of the Most High, and the angels, a thousand thousands and ten thousand times ten thousand, were disquieted with a great disquiet.
15 [60:2] And the Head of Days sat on the throne of His glory, and the angels and the
16 righteous stood around Him.
17 [60:3] And a great trembling seized me, and fear took hold of me, and my loins gave way, and dissolved were my reins, and I fell upon my face.
18 [60:4]And Michael sent another angel from among the holy ones and he raised me up, and when he had raised me up my spirit returned; for I had not been able to endure the look of this host, and the commotion and the quaking of the heaven.
19 [60:5a] And Michael said unto me: Why art thou disquieted with such a vision?
20 [60:5b] Until this day lasted the day of His mercy; and He hath been merciful and longsuffering towards those who dwell on the earth.
21 [60:6] And when the day, and the power, and the punishment, and the judgement come, which the Lord of Spirits hath prepared for those who worship not the righteous Law, and for those who deny the righteous judgement, and for those who take His name in vain—that day is prepared, for the elect a covenant, but for sinners an inquisition.
22 [60:7] And in that day were two monsters parted, a female monster named Leviathan, to dwell in the abysses of the ocean over the fountains of the waters.
23 [60:8] But the male is named Behemoth, who occupied with his breast a waste wilderness named Dûidâin, on the east of the garden where the elect and righteous dwell, where my grandfather was taken up, the seventh from Adam, the first man whom the Lord of Spirits created.
24 [60:9] And I besought the other angel that he should show me the might of those monsters, how they were parted on one day and cast, the one into the abysses of the sea, and the other unto the dry land of the wilderness.

25 [60:10 And he said to me: Thou son of man, herein thou dost seek to know what is hidden.
26 [60:11] And the other angel who went with me and showed me what was hidden told me what is first and last in the heaven in the height, and beneath the earth in the depth, and at the ends of the heaven, and on the foundation of the heaven.
27 [60:12] And the chambers of the winds, and how the winds are divided, and how they are weighed, and *how* the portals of the winds are reckoned, each according to the power of the wind, and the power of the lights of the moon, and according to the power that is fitting: and the divisions of the stars according to their names, and how all the divisions are divided.
28 [60:13] And the thunders according to the places where they fall, and all the divisions that are made among the lightnings that it may lighten, and their host that they may at once obey.
29 [60:14a] For the thunder has places of rest *which* are assigned *to it* while it is waiting for its peal;
30 [60:14b] And the thunder and lightning are inseparable, and although not one and undivided, they both go together through the spirit and separate not.
31 [60:15] For when the lightning lightens, the thunder utters its voice, and the spirit enforces a pause during the peal, and divides equally between them; for the treasury of their peals is like the sand, and each one of them as it peals is held in with a bridle, and turned back by the power of the spirit, and pushed forward according to the many quarters of the earth.
32 [60:16] And the spirit of the sea is masculine and strong, and according to the might of his strength he draws it back with a rein, and in like manner it is driven forward and disperses amid all the mountains of the earth.
33 [60:17] And the spirit of the hoarfrost is his own angel, and the spirit of the hail is a good angel.
34 [60:18] And the spirit of the snow has forsaken his chambers on account of his strength—There is a special spirit therein, and that which ascends from it is like smoke, and its name is frost.
35 [60:19] And the spirit of the mist is not united with them in their chambers, but it has a special chamber; for its course is glorious, both in light and in darkness, and in winter and in summer, and in its chamber is an angel.
36 [60:20a] And the spirit of the dew has its dwelling at the ends of the heaven, and is connected with the chambers of the rain, and its course is in winter and summer:

37 [60:20b] And its clouds and the clouds of the mist are connected, and the one gives to the other.
38 [60:21a] And when the spirit of the rain goes forth from its chamber, the angels come and open the chamber and lead it out, and when it is diffused over the whole earth it unites with the water on the earth.
39 [60:21b] And whensoever it unites with the water on the earth *shall to be united with fire in heaven.*
40 22. For the waters are for those who dwell on the earth; for they are nourishment for the earth from the Most High who is in heaven: therefore there is a measure for the rain, and the angels take it in charge.
41 [60:23] And these things I saw towards the Garden of the Righteous.
42 [60:24] And the angel of peace who was with me said to me: These two monsters, prepared conformably to the greatness of God, shall feed *upon these when the time comes.*
43 [60:25a] When the punishment of the Lord of Spirits shall rest upon them, it shall rest in order that the punishment of the Lord of Spirits may not come, in vain,
44 [60:25b] And it shall slay the children with their mothers and the children with their fathers.
45 [60:25v] Afterwards, the judgement shall take place according to His mercy and His patience.

ANGELS GO OFF TO MEASURE PARADISE: THE JUDGEMENT OF THE RIGHTEOUS BY THE ELECT ONE: THE PRAISE OF THE ELECT ONE & OF GOD

46 [61:1] ¶ And I saw in those days how long cords were given to those angels, and they took to themselves wings and flew, and they went towards the north.
47 [61:2] And I asked the angel, saying unto him: Why have those *angels* taken these cords and gone off?
48 [61:2a] And he said unto me: They have gone to measure.
49 [61:3] And the angel who went with me said unto me: These shall bring the measures of the righteous, and the ropes of the righteous to the righteous, that they may stay themselves on the name of the Lord of Spirits forever and ever.
50 [61:4] The elect shall begin to dwell with the elect, and those are the measures which shall be given to faith and which shall strengthen righteousness.

51 [61:5a] And these measures shall reveal all the secrets of the depths of the earth, and those who have been destroyed by the desert, and those who have been devoured by the beasts, and those who have been devoured by the fish of the sea, that they may return and stay themselves on the day of the Elect One;
52 [61:5b] For none shall be destroyed before the Lord of Spirits, and none can be destroyed.
53 [61:6] And all who dwell above in the heaven received a command and power and one voice and one light like unto fire.
54 [61:7] And that One *with* their first words they blessed, and extolled and lauded with wisdom, and they were wise in utterance and in the spirit of life.
55 [61:8a] And the Lord of Spirits placed the Elect one on the throne of glory.
56 [61:8b] And he shall judge all the works of the holy above in the heaven, and in the balance shall their deeds be weighed.
57 [61:9a] And when he shall lift up his countenance to judge their secret ways according to the word of the name of the Lord of Spirits, and their path according to the way of the righteous judgement of the Lord of Spirits,
58 [61:9b] Then shall they all with one voice speak and bless, and glorify and extol and sanctify the name of the Lord of Spirits.
59 [61:10] And He will summon all the host of the heavens, and all the holy ones above, and the host of God, the Cherubic, Seraphim and Ophanim, and all the angels of power, and all the angels of principalities, and the Elect One, and the other powers on the earth *and* over the water.
60 [61:11a] On that day shall raise one voice, and bless and glorify and exalt in the spirit of faith, and in the spirit of wisdom, and in the spirit of patience, and in the spirit of mercy, and in the spirit of judgement and of peace, and in the spirit of goodness,
61 [61:11b] And shall all say with one voice: Blessed is He, and may the name of the Lord of Spirits be blessed for ever and ever.
62 [61:12a] All who sleep not above in heaven shall bless Him: all the holy ones who are in heaven shall bless Him, and all the elect who dwell in the garden of life:
63 [61:12b] And every spirit of light who is able to bless, and glorify, and extol, and hallow Thy blessed name, and all flesh shall beyond measure glorify and bless Thy name forever and ever.
64 [61:13] For great is the mercy of the Lord of Spirits, and He is longsuffering, and all His works and all that He has created He has

revealed to the righteous and elect in the name of the Lord of Spirits.

Chapter 11

Enoch's third parable continued: judgement of the kings and the mighty; the unavailing; vision of the fallen angels. (Enoch 62-64)

JUDGEMENT OF THE KINGS & THE MIGHTY: BLESSEDNESS OF THE RIGHTEOUS

1 [62:1] And thus the Lord commanded the kings and the mighty and the exalted, and those who dwell on the earth, and said: Open your eyes and lift up your horns if ye are able to recognize the Elect One.
2 [62:2] And the Lord of Spirits seated Him on the throne of His glory, and the spirit of righteousness was poured out upon him, and the word of His mouth slays all the sinners, and all the unrighteous are destroyed from before His face.
3 [62:3a] And there shall stand up in that day all the kings and the mighty, and the exalted and those who hold the earth, and they shall see and recognize how he sits on the throne of His glory, and righteousness is judged before him,
4 [62:3b] And no lying word is spoken before Him.
5 [62:4] Then shall pain come upon them as on a woman in travail, and she has pain in bringing forth when her child enters the mouth of the womb, and she has pain in bringing forth.
6 [62:5] And one portion of them shall look on the other, and they shall be terrified, and they shall be downcast of countenance, and pain shall seize them when they see that Son of Man sitting on the throne of His glory.
7 [62:6] And the kings and the mighty and all who possess the earth shall bless and glorify and extol Him who rules over all, who was hidden.
8 [62:7] For from the beginning the Son of Man was concealed and the Most High preserved Him in the presence of His might, and revealed Him to the elect.
9 [62:8] And the congregation of the elect and holy shall be sown, and all the elect shall stand before Him on that day.

10 [62:9] And all the kings and the mighty and the exalted and those who rule the earth shall fall down before Him on their faces, and worship and set their hope upon that Son of Man and petition him and supplicate for mercy at his hands.
11 [62:10] Nevertheless, that Lord of Spirits will so press them that they shall hastily go forth from His presence, and their faces shall be filled with shame, and the darkness grow deeper on their faces.
12 [62:11] And He will deliver them to the angels for punishment, to execute vengeance on them because they have oppressed His children and His elect;
13 [62:12] And they shall be a spectacle for the righteous and for His elect: They shall rejoice over them because the wrath of the Lord of Spirits resteth upon them, and His sword is drunk with their blood.
14 [62:13] And the righteous and elect shall be saved on that day, and they shall never thenceforward see the face of the sinners and unrighteous. 14. [62:13b] And the Lord of Spirits will abide over them, and with that Son of Man shall they eat and lie down and rise up forever and ever.
15 [62:15a] And the righteous and elect shall have risen from the earth and ceased to be of downcast countenance; and they shall have been clothed with garments of glory.
16 [62:16] And these shall be the garments of life from the Lord of Spirits: And your garments shall not grow old, nor your glory pass away before the Lord of Spirits.

THE UNAVAILING REPENTANCE OF THE KINGS & THE MIGHTY

17 [63:1] ¶ In those days shall the mighty and the kings who possess the earth implore *Him* to grant them a little respite from His angels of punishment to whom they were delivered, that they might fall down and worship before the Lord of Spirits, and confess their sins before Him.
18 [63:2] And they shall bless and glorify the Lord of Spirits, and say: Blessed is the Lord of Spirits and the Lord of kings, and the Lord of the mighty and the Lord of the rich, and the Lord of glory and the Lord of wisdom;
19 [63:3a] And splendid in every secret thing is Thy power from generation to generation, and Thy glory forever and ever:
20 [63:3b] Deep are all Thy secrets and innumerable, and Thy righteousness is beyond reckoning.

21 [63:4] We have now learnt that we should glorify and bless the Lord of kings and Him who is king over all kings.
22 [63:5] And they shall say:
23 'Would that we had rest to glorify and give thanks and confess our faith before His glory!
24 [63:6a] And now we long for a little rest but find it not; we follow hard upon and obtain *it* not:
25 [63:6b] And light has vanished from before us, and darkness is our dwelling place forever and ever:
26 [63:7] For we have not believed before Him nor glorified the name of the Lord of Spirits, nor glorified our Lord; but our hope was in the scepter of our kingdom, and in our glory.
27 [63:8] And in the day of our suffering and tribulation He saves us not, and we find no respite for confession that our Lord is true in all His works, and in His judgements and His
28 justice, and His judgements have no respect of persons.
29 [63:9] And we pass away from before His face on account of our works, and all our sins are reckoned up in righteousness.
30 [63:10] Now they shall say unto themselves: Our souls are full of unrighteous gain, but it does not prevent us from descending from the midst thereof into the burden of Sheol.
31 [63:11] And after that their faces shall be filled with darkness and shame before that Son of Man, and they shall be driven from his presence, and the sword shall abide before his face in their midst.
32 [63:12] Thus spake the Lord of Spirits: This is the ordinance and judgement with respect to the mighty and the kings and the exalted and those who possess the earth before the Lord of Spirits.

VISION OF THE FALLEN ANGELS IN THE PLACE OF PUNISHMENT

33 [64:1] ¶ And other forms I saw hidden in that place.
34 [64:2] I heard the voice of the angel saying: These are the angels who descended to the earth, and revealed what was hidden to the children of men and seduced the children of men into committing sin.

Chapter 12

Enoch's third parable continued: Enoch foretells to Noah the deluge; the angels of the waters; God's promise to Noah; Michael and Raphael astonished; the secret Oath; The final translation of Enoch; two earlier visions of Enoch.
(Enoch 65-69)

ENOCH FORETELLS TO NOAH THE DELUGE & HIS OWN PRESERVATION

1 [65:1] ¶ And in those days Noah saw the earth that it had sunk down and its destruction was nigh.
2 [65:2a] And he arose from thence and went to the ends of the earth, and cried aloud to *me*
3 [65:2b] And Noah said three times with an embittered voice: Hear me, hear me, hear me.
4 [65:3] And *Noah* said unto *me*: Tell me what it is that is falling out on the earth that the earth is in such evil plight and shaken, lest perchance I shall perish with it?
5 [65:4] And thereupon there was a great commotion, on the earth, and a voice was heard from heaven, and *Noah* fell on *his* face
6 [65:5] And *I*, Enoch, *Noah's* grandfather came and stood by *Noah*, and said unto *him*: Why hast thou cried unto me with a bitter cry and weeping?
7 [65:6] And a command has gone forth from the presence of the Lord concerning those who dwell on the earth that their ruin is accomplished because they have learnt all the secrets of the angels, and all the violence of the Satans, and all their powers—the most secret ones—and all the power of those who practice sorcery, and the power of witchcraft, and the power of those who make molten images for the whole earth:
8 [65:7] And how silver is produced from the dust of the earth, and how soft metal originates in the earth.
9 [65:8] For lead and tin are not produced from the earth like the first: it is a fountain that produces them, and an angel stands therein, and that angel is preeminent.
10 [65:9a] And after that, *I* took hold of *Noah* by *the* hand and raised *him* up, and said unto *him*: Go, for I have asked the Lord of Spirits as touching this commotion on the earth.

11 [65:10a] And He, *the Lord of Spirits* said unto me: Because of their unrighteousness their judgement has been determined upon and shall not be withheld by Me forever.
12 [65:10b] Because of the sorceries which they have searched out and learnt, the earth and those who dwell upon it shall be destroyed.
13 [65:11a] And these—they have no place of repentance forever, because they have shown them what was hidden, and they are the damned:
14 [65:11b] But as for thee, my son, the Lord of Spirits knows that thou art pure, and guiltless of this reproach concerning the secrets.
15 [65:12] And He has destined thy name, *Noah*, to be among the holy, and will preserve thee amongst those who dwell on the earth, and has destined thy righteous seed both for kingship and for great honors, and from thy seed shall proceed a fountain of the righteous and holy without number forever.

THE ANGELS OF THE WATERS BIDDEN TO HOLD THEM IN CHECK

16 [66:1] ¶ And after that He showed me the angels of punishment who are prepared to come and let loose all the powers of the waters which are beneath in the earth in order to bring judgement and destruction on all who abide and dwell on the earth.
17 [66:2] And the Lord of Spirits gave commandment to the angels who were going forth, that they should not cause the waters to rise but should hold them in check; for those angels were over the powers of the waters.
18 [66:3] And *Noah* went away from *my* presence *(the presence* of Enoch*)*.

GOD'S PROMISE TO NOAH: PLACES OF PUNISHMENT OF THE ANGELS & OF THE KINGS

19 [67:1] ¶ And in those days the word of God came unto *Noah*, and He said unto him: Noah, thy lot has come up before Me, a lot without blame, a lot of love and uprightness.
20 [67:2a] And now the angels are making a wooden *vessel*, and when they have completed that task I will place My hand upon it and preserve it,
21 A{672b] And there shall come forth from it the seed of life, and a change shall set in so that the earth will not remain without inhabitant.

22 [67:3] And I will make fast thy seed before me forever and ever, and I will spread abroad those who dwell with thee: it shall not be unfruitful on the face of the earth, but it shall be blessed and multiply on the earth in the name of the Lord.
23 [67:4] And *I* will imprison those angels, who have shown unrighteousness, in that burning valley which *thy* grandfather, Enoch, had formerly shown to *thee* in the west among the mountains of gold and silver and iron and soft metal and tin.
24 [67:5] And I saw that valley in which there was a great convulsion and a convulsion of the waters.
25 [67:6] And when all this took place, from that fiery molten metal and from the convulsion thereof in that place, there was produced a smell of sulfur, and it was connected with those waters, and that valley of the angels who had led astray *mankind* burned beneath that land.
26 [67:7] And through its valleys proceed streams of fire, where these angels are punished who had led astray those who dwell upon the earth.
27 [67:8a] But those waters shall in those days *shall* serve for the kings and the mighty and the exalted and those who dwell on the earth, *not* for the healing of the body, but for the punishment of the spirit;
28 [67:8b] Now their spirit is full of lust, that they may be punished in their body, for they have denied the Lord of Spirits and see their punishment daily, and yet believe not in His name.
29 [67:9] And in proportion as the burning of their bodies becomes severe, a corresponding change shall take place in their spirit forever and ever; for before the Lord of Spirits none shall utter an idle word.
30 [67:10] For judgement shall come upon them, because they believe in the lust of their body and deny the Spirit of the Lord.
31 [67:11] And those same waters will undergo a change in those days; for when those angels are punished in these waters, these water-springs shall change their temperature, and when the angels ascend, this water of the springs shall change and become cold.
32 [67:12] And I heard Michael answering and saying: This judgement wherewith the angels are judged is a testimony for the kings and the mighty who possess the earth!
33 [67:13a] Because these waters of judgement minister to the healing of the body of the kings and the lust of their body;

34 {67:13b] Therefore they will not see and will not believe that those waters will change and become *as* a fire which burns forever.

MICHAEL & RAPHAEL ASTONISHED AT THE SEVERITY OF THE JUDGEMENT

35 [68:1] ¶ And after that *I*, Enoch gave *unto Noah* the teaching of all the secrets in the book in the Parables which had been given to him, and he put them together for *him* in the words of the book of the Parables.

36 [68:2a] And on that day Michael answered Raphael and said: The power of the spirit transports and makes me to tremble because of the severity of the judgement of the secrets, the judgement of the angels:

37 [68:2b] Who can endure the severe judgement which has been executed, and before which they melt away?

38 [68:3] And Michael answered again, and said to Raphael: Who is he whose heart is not softened concerning it, and whose reins are not troubled by this word of judgement *that* has gone forth upon them because of those who have thus led them out?

39 [68:4a] And it came to pass *that* when he stood before the Lord of Spirits, Michael said thus to Raphael: I will not take their part under the eye of the Lord; for the Lord of Spirits has been angry with them because they do as if they were the Lord.

40 [68:4b] Therefore, all that is hidden shall come upon them forever and ever; for neither angel nor man shall have his portion, but alone they have received their judgement forever and ever.

THE NAMES & FUNCTIONS OF THE SATANS: THE SECRET OATH

41 [69:1] ¶ And after this judgement they shall terrify and make them to tremble because they have shown this to those who dwell on the earth.

42 [69:2] And behold, the names of those angels, and these are their names:

the first of them is Samjâzâ
the second Artâqîfâ,
and the third Armên,
the fourth Kôkabêl,
the fifth Tûrâêl,
the sixth Rûmjâl,

the seventh Dânjâl,
the eighth Nêqâêl,
the ninth Barâqêl,
the tenth Azâzêl,
the eleventh Armârôs,
the twelfth Batarjâl,
the thirteenth Busasêjal,
the fourteenth Hanânêl,
the fifteenth Tûrêl,
and the sixteenth Sîmâpêsîêl,
the seventeenth Jetrêl,
the eighteenth Tûmâêl,
the nineteenth Tûrêl,
the twentieth Rumâêl,
the twenty-first Azâzêl.

43 [69:3] And these are the chiefs of their angels and their names, and their chief ones over hundreds and over fifties and over tens.
44 [69:4] ¶ The name of the first Jeqôn: that is, the one who led astray all the sons of God, and brought them down to the earth, and led them astray through the daughters of men.
45 [69:5] And the second was named Asbeêl: he imparted to the holy sons of God evil counsel and led them astray so that they defiled their bodies with the daughters of men.
46 [69:6] And the third was named Gâdreêl: he it is who showed the children of men all the blows of death, and he led astray Eve, and showed the weapons of death to the sons of men the shield and the coat of mail, and the sword for battle, and all the weapons of death to the children of men.
47 [69:7] And from his hand they have proceeded against those who dwell on the earth from that day and forevermore.
48 [69:8] And the fourth was named Pênêmûe: he taught the children of men the bitter and the sweet, and he taught them all the secrets of their wisdom.
49 [69:9] And he instructed mankind in writing with ink and paper, and thereby many sinned from eternity to eternity and until this day.
50 [69:10] For men were not created for such a purpose, to give confirmation to their good faith with pen and ink.
51 [69:11] For men were created exactly like the angels, to the intent that they should continue pure and righteous, and death, which destroys everything, could not have taken hold of them,

but through this their knowledge they are perishing, and through this power it is consuming me.

52 [69:12] And the fifth was named Kâsdejâ: this is he who showed the children of men all the wicked smitings of spirits and demons, and the smitings of the embryo in the womb, that it may pass away, and the smitings of the soul the bites of the serpent, and the smitings which befall through the noontide heat, the son of the serpent named Tabââʿêt.

53 [69:13] And this is the task of Kâsbeêl, the chief of the oath which he showed to the holy ones when he dwelt high above in glory, and its name is Bîqâ.

54 [69:14] This *one* requested Michael to show him the hidden name, that he might enunciate it in the oath, so that those might quake before that name and oath who revealed all that was in secret to the children of men.

55 [69:15] And this is the power of this oath, for it is powerful and strong, and he placed this oath Akâe in the hand of Michael.

56 [69:16a] And these are the secrets of this oath… and they are strong through his oath:

57 [69:16b] And the heaven was suspended before the world was created, and forever.

58 [69:17] And through it the earth was founded upon the water, and from the secret recesses of the mountains come beautiful waters, from the creation of the world and unto eternity.

59 [69:18] And through that oath the sea was created, and as its foundation He set for it the sand against the time of *its* anger, and it dare not pass beyond it from the creation of the world unto eternity.

60 [69:19] And through that oath are the depths made fast and abide and stir not from their place from eternity to eternity.

61 [69:20] And through that oath the sun and moon complete their course, and deviate not from their ordinance from eternity to eternity.

62 [69:21] And through that oath the stars complete their course, and He calls them by their names, and they answer Him from eternity to eternity.

63 [69:22] And in like manner the spirits of the water, and of the winds, and of all zephyrs, and *their* paths from all the quarters of the winds.

64 [69:23] And there are preserved the voices of the thunder and the light of the lightnings: and there are preserved the chambers

of the hail and the chambers of the hoarfrost, and the chambers of the mist, and the chambers of the rain and the dew.
65 [69:24] And all these believe and give thanks before the Lord of Spirits, and glorify *Him* with all their power, and their food is in every act of thanksgiving: they thank and glorify and extol the name of the Lord of Spirits forever and ever.
66 [69:25] And this oath is mighty over them and through it they are preserved, and their paths are preserved, and their course is not destroyed.

CLOSE OF THE THIRD PARABLE

67 [69:26] ¶ And there was great joy amongst them, and they blessed and glorified and extolled because the name of that Son of Man had been revealed unto them.
68 [69:27a] And he sat on the throne of his glory, and the sum of judgement was given unto the Son of Man,
69 [69:17b] And he caused the sinners to pass away and be destroyed from off the face of the earth, and those who have led the world astray.
70 [69:28] With chains shall they be bound, and in their assemblage place of destruction shall they be imprisoned, and all their works vanish from the face of the earth.
71 [69:29a] And from henceforth there shall be nothing corruptible;
72 [69:29b] For that Son of Man has appeared and has seated himself on the throne of his glory, and all evil shall pass away before his face, and the word of that Son of Man shall go forth and be strong before the Lord of Spirits.

Chapter 13

Two earlier visions of Enoch; the Final Translation of Enoch. (Enoch 70 and 71)

TWO EARLIER VISIONS OF ENOCH

1 [71:1a] And it came to pass after this that my spirit was translated, and it ascended into the heavens; and I saw the holy sons of God.

2 [71:1b] They were stepping on flames of fire: their garments were white and their raiment, and their faces shone like snow.
3 [71:2] And I saw two streams of fire, and the light of that fire shone like hyacinth, and I fell on my face before the Lord of Spirits.
4 [71:3] And the angel Michael, one of the archangels, seized me by my right hand, and lifted me up and led me forth into all the secrets, and he showed me all the secrets of righteousness.
5 [71:4] And he showed me all the secrets of the ends of the heaven, and all the chambers of all the stars, and all the luminaries whence they proceed before the face of the holy ones.
6 [71:5] And he translated my spirit into the heaven of heavens, and I saw there as it were a structure built of crystals, and between those crystals, tongues of living fire.
7 [71:6a] And my spirit saw the girdle which girt that house of fire, and on its four sides were streams full of living fire, and they girt that house.
8 [71:6b] And *all* roundabout were Seraphim, Cherubic, and Ophanim: And these are they who sleep not And guard the throne of His glory.
9 [71:8a] And I saw angels who could not be counted, a thousand thousands, and ten thousand times ten thousand, encircling that house.
10 [708b] And Michael, and Raphael, and Gabriel, and Phanuel, and the holy angels who are above the heavens go in and out of that house.
11 [70:9] And they came forth from that house, and Michael and Gabriel, Raphael and Phanuel, and many holy angels without number.
12 [70:10] And with them the Ancient of Days, His head white and pure as wool, and His raiment indescribable.
13 [70:11a] And I fell on my face, and my whole body became relaxed, and my spirit was transfigured;
14 [70:11b] And I cried with a loud voice, …with the spirit of power, and blessed and glorified and extolled.
15 [70:12] And these blessings which went forth out of my mouth were well pleasing before that Ancient of Days.
16 [70:13] And that Ancient of Days came with Michael and Gabriel, Raphael and Phanuel, thousands and ten thousands of angels without number.

17 [70:14a] And he, *the angel*, came to me and greeted me with His voice, and said unto me: This is the Son of Man who is born unto righteousness;
18 [71:14b] ¶ And righteousness abides over Him, and the righteousness of the Ancient of Days forsakes him not.
19 [71:15a] And he said unto me: He proclaims unto thee peace in the name of the world to come;
20 [710:15b] For from hence has proceeded peace since the creation of the world, and so shall it be unto thee forever and forever and ever.
21 [71:16a] And all shall walk in his ways since righteousness never forsake him:
22 [71:16b] With him will be their dwelling-places, and with him their heritage, and they shall not be separated from him forever and ever and ever.
23 [71:17] And so there shall be length of days with that Son of Man, and the righteous shall have peace and an upright way in the name of the Lord of Spirits forever and ever.

THE FINAL TRANSLATION OF ENOCH

24 [71:18] And it came to pass after this that his name during his lifetime was raised aloft to that Son of Man and to the Lord of Spirits from amongst those who dwell on the earth.
25 [71:19] And he was raised aloft on the chariots of the spirit and his name vanished among them.
26 [71:20] And from that day I was no longer numbered amongst them: and he set me between the two winds, between the North and the West, where the angels took the cords to measure for me the place for the elect and righteous.
27 [71:21] And there I saw the first fathers and the righteous who from the beginning dwell in that place.

The Book of Celestial Luminaries

The movement of heavenly bodies and of the firmament, as revealed to Enoch during his trips to Heaven, guided by Uriel. Believed to have been composed between 165 and 161 BC.

Chapter 14

The Sun.
(Enoch 72)

1 [72:1a] The book of the courses of the luminaries of the heaven, the relations of each, according to their classes, their dominion and their seasons, according to their names and places of origin, and according to their months, which Uriel, the holy angel, who was with me, who is their guide, showed me;
2 [72:1b] And he showed *unto* me all their laws exactly as they are, and how it is with regard to all the years of the world and unto eternity, till the new creation is accomplished which endureth throughout *all* eternity.
3 [72:2] And this is the first law of the luminaries: the luminary the Sun has its rising in the eastern portals of the heaven, and its setting in the western portals of the heaven.
4 [72:3a] And I saw six portals in which the sun rises, and six portals in which the sun sets and the moon rises and sets in these portals, and the leaders of the stars and those whom they lead: six in the east and six in the west,
5 [72:3b] And all following each other in accurately corresponding order: also many windows to the right and left of these portals.
6 [72:4] And first there goes forth the great luminary, named the Sun, and his circumference is like the circumference of the heaven, and he is quite filled with illuminating and heating fire.
7 [72:5a] The chariot on which he ascends, the wind drives, and the sun goes down from the heaven and returns through the north in order to reach the east,
8 [72:5b] And is so guided that he comes to that portal and shines in the face of the heaven.
9 [72:6] In this way he rises in the first month in the great portal, which is the fourth [those six portals in the cast].

10 [72:7] And in that fourth portal from which the sun rises in the first month are twelve window openings, from which proceed a flame when they are opened in their season.
11 [72:8] When the sun rises in the heaven, he comes forth through that fourth portal thirty mornings in succession and sets accurately in the fourth portal in the west of the heaven.
12 [72:9] And during this period, the day becomes daily longer and the night nightly shorter to the thirtieth morning.
13 [72:10] On that day the day is longer than the night by a ninth part, and the day amounts exactly to ten parts and the night to eight parts.
14 [72:11] And the sun rises from that fourth portal and sets in the fourth and returns to the fifth portal of the east thirty mornings and rises from it and sets in the fifth portal.
15 [72:12] And then the day becomes longer by two parts and amounts to eleven parts, and the night becomes shorter and amounts to seven parts.
16 [72:13] And it returns to the east and enters into the sixth portal and rises and sets in the sixth portal one-and-thirty mornings on account of its sign.
17 [72:14] On that day the day becomes longer than the night, and the day becomes double the night, and the day becomes twelve parts, and the night is shortened and becomes six parts.
18 [72:15] And the sun mounts up to make the day shorter and the night longer, and the sun returns to the east and enters into the sixth portal and rises from it and sets thirty mornings.
19 [72:16] And when thirty mornings are accomplished, the day decreases by exactly one part, and becomes eleven parts, and the night seven.
20 [72:17] And the sun goes forth from that sixth portal in the west, and goes to the east and rises in the fifth portal for thirty mornings, and sets in the west again in the fifth western portal.
21 [72:18] On that day the day decreases by two parts, and
22 amounts to ten parts and the night to eight parts.
23 [72:19] And the sun goes forth from that fifth portal and sets in the fifth portal of the west and rises in the fourth portal for one-and-thirty mornings on account of its sign, and sets in the west.
24 [72:20] On that day the day is equalized with the night, and becomes of equal length, and the night amounts to nine parts and the day to nine parts.

25 [72:21] And the sun rises from that portal and sets in the west, and returns to the east and rises thirty mornings in the third portal and sets in the west in the third portal.
26 [72:22] And on that day the night becomes longer than the day, and night becomes longer than night, and day shorter than day till the thirtieth morning, and the night amounts exactly to ten parts and the day to eight parts
27 [72:23] And the sun rises from that third portal and sets in the third portal in the west and returns to the east, and for thirty mornings rises in the second portal in the east, and in like manner sets in the second portal in the west of the heaven.
28 [72:24] And on that day the night amounts to eleven parts and the day to seven parts.
29 [72:25] And the sun rises on that day from that second portal and sets in the west in the second portal, and returns to the east into the first portal for one-and-thirty mornings, and sets in the first portal in the west of the heaven.
30 [72:26] And on that day the night becomes longer and amounts to the double of the day: and the night amounts exactly to twelve parts and the day to six.
31 [72:27] And the sun has *therewith* traversed the divisions of his orbit and turns again on those divisions of his orbit and enters that portal thirty mornings and sets also in the west opposite to it.
32 [72:28] And on that night has the night decreased in length by a ninth part, and the night has become eleven parts and the day seven parts.
33 [72:29] And the sun has returned and entered into the second portal in the east, and returns on those his divisions of his orbit for thirty mornings, rising and setting.
34 [72:30] And on that day the night decreases in length, and the night amounts to ten parts and the day to eight.
35 [72:31] And on that day the sun rises from that portal, and sets in the west, and returns to the east, and rises in the third portal for one-and-thirty mornings and sets in the west of the heaven.
36 [72:32] On that day the night decreases and amounts to nine parts, and the day to nine parts, and the night is equal to the day and the year is exactly as to its days three hundred and sixty-four.
37 [72:33] And the length of the day and of the night, and the shortness of the day and of the night arise—through the course of the sun these distinctions they are separated.
38 [72:34] So it comes that its course becomes daily longer, and its course nightly shorter.

39 [72:35] And this is the law and the course of the sun, and his return as often as he returns sixty times and rises, i.e. the great luminary which is named the sun, for ever and ever.
40 [72:36] And thus rises is the great luminary, and is so named according to its appearance, according as the Lord commanded.
41 [72:37] As he rises, so he sets and decreases not, and rests not, but runs day and night, and his light is sevenfold brighter than that of the moon; but as regards size they are both equal.

Chapter 15

The Moon.
(Enoch 73)

1 [73:1] And after this law I saw another law dealing with the smaller luminary, which is named the Moon.
2 [73:2] And her circumference is like the circumference of the heaven, and her chariot in which she rides is driven by the wind, and light is given to her in measure.
3 [73:3a] And her rising and setting change every month:
4 [73:3b] And her days are like the days of the sun;
5 [73:3c] And when her light is full it amounts to the seventh part of the light of the sun;
6 [73:4a] And thus she rises.
7 [73:4b} And her first phase in the east comes forth on the thirtieth morning:
8 [73:4c] And on that day she becomes visible and constitutes for you the first phase of the moon on the thirtieth day together with the sun in the portal where the sun rises.
9 [73:5] And the one half of her goes forth by a seventh part, and her whole circumference is empty, without light, with the exception of one-seventh part of it, *and* the fourteenth part of her light.
10 [73:6] And when she receives one-seventh part of the half of her light, her light amounts to one-seventh part and the half thereof.
11 [73:7a] And she sets with the sun, and when the sun rises the moon rises with him and receives the half of one part of light;
12 [73:7b} And in that night in the beginning of her morning in the commencement of the lunar day the moon sets with the sun

and is invisible that night with the fourteen parts and the half of one of them.
13 [73:8] And she rises on that day with exactly a seventh part and comes forth and recedes from the rising of the sun, and in her remaining she becomes bright in the *remaining* thirteen parts.

Chapter 16

The Year.
(Enoch 74-75)

1 [74:1] And I saw another course, a law for her, *and* how according to that law she performs her monthly revolution.
2 [74:2a] And all these Uriel, the holy angel who is the leader of them all, showed to me, and their positions;
3 [74:2b] And I wrote down their positions as he showed them to me, and I wrote down their months as they were, and the appearance of their lights till fifteen days were accomplished.
4 [74:3] In single seventh parts she accomplishes all her light in the east, and in single seventh parts accomplishes all her darkness in the west.
5 [74:4] And in certain months she alters her settings, and in certain months she pursues her own peculiar course.
6 [74:5] In two months the moon sets with the sun: in those two middle portals the third and the fourth.
7 [74:6a] She goes forth for seven days, and turns about and returns again through the portal where the sun rises, and accomplishes all her light:
8 [74:6b] And she recedes from the sun, and in eight days enters the sixth portal from which the sun goes forth.
9 [74:7a] And when the sun goes forth from the fourth portal she goes forth seven days, until she goes forth from the fifth and turns back again in seven days into the fourth portal and accomplishes all her light:
10 [74:7b] And she recedes and enters into the first portal in eight days.
11 [74:8] And she returns again in seven days into the fourth portal from which the sun goes forth.
12 [74:9] Thus I saw their position—how the moons rose and the sun set in those days.

13 [74:10] And if five years are added together the sun has an overplus of thirty days, and all the days which accrue to it for one of those five years, when they are full, amount to three hundred sixty-four days.
14 [74:11a] And the overplus of the sun and of the stars amounts to six days: in five years six days every year come to thirty days:
15 [74:11b] And the moon falls behind the sun and stars to the number of thirty days.
16 [74:12a] And the sun and the stars bring in all the years exactly, so that they do not advance or delay their position by a single day unto eternity; but complete the years with perfect justice in three hundred sixty-four days.
17 [74:13] In 3 years there are one thousand ninety-two days, and in five years one thousand eight hundred twenty days, so that in 8 years there are two thousand nine hundred twelve days.
18 [74:14a] For the moon alone the days amount in three years to one thousand sixty-two days, and in five years she falls fifty days behind to the sum of one thousand seven hundred seventy:
19 [74:14b] There is to be added one thousand sixty-two days.
20 [74:15] And in 5 years there are one thousand seven hundred seventy days, so that for the moon the days in eight years amount to two thousand eight hundred thirty-two days.
21 [74:16] For in eight years she falls behind to the amount of eighty days, all the days she falls behind in eight years are eighty.
22 [74:17] And the year is accurately completed in conformity with their world-stations and the stations of the sun, which rise from the portals through which it *(the sun)* rises and sets thirty days.
23 [75:1a] ¶ And the leaders of the heads of the thousands, who are placed over the whole creation and over all the stars, have also to do with the four intercalary days,
24 [75:1b] Being inseparable from their office, according to the reckoning of the year, and these render service on the four days which are not reckoned in the reckoning of the year.
25 [75:2] And owing to them men go wrong therein, for those luminaries truly render service on the world stations, one in the first portal, one in the third portal of the heaven, one in the fourth portal, and one in the sixth portal, and the exactness of the year is accomplished through its separate three hundred and sixty-four stations.

26 [75:3a] For the signs and the times and the years and the days the angel Uriel showed to me, whom the Lord of glory hath set forever over all the luminaries of the heaven,
27 [75:3b] In the heaven and in the world, that they should rule on the face of the heaven and be seen on the earth, and be leaders for the day and the night:
28 [75:3c] The Sun, the Moon, and the Stars, and all the ministering creatures which make their revolution in all the chariots of the heaven.
29 [75:4a] In like manner twelve doors Uriel showed me, open in the circumference of the sun's chariot in the heaven, through which the rays of the sun break forth:
30 [75:4b] And from them is warmth diffused over the earth, when they are opened at their appointed seasons.
31 [75:5] And for the winds and the spirit of the dew when they are opened, standing open in the heavens at the ends.
32 [75:6] As for the twelve portals in the heaven, at the ends of the earth, out of which go forth the Sun, the Moon, and the Stars, and all the works of heaven in the east and in the west.
33 [75:7] There are many windows open to the left and right of them, and one window at its season produces warmth, corresponding to those doors from which the stars come forth according as He has commanded them, and wherein they set corresponding to their number.
34 [75:8] And I saw chariots in the heaven, running in the world, above those portals in which revolve the stars that never set.
35 [75:9] And one is larger than all the rest, and it is that that makes its course through the entire world.

Chapter 17

The twelve winds and their portals; the four quarters of the world: the seven mountains, the seven rivers, and more.
(Enoch 76-77)

1 [76:1] And at the ends of the earth I saw twelve portals open to all the quarters *of the heavens*, from which the winds go forth and blow over the earth.

2 [76:2] Three of them are open on the face *the east* of the heavens, and three in the west, and three on the right *(the south)* of the heaven, and three on the left *(the north)*.
3 [76:3] And the three first are those of the east, and three are of the north, and three after those on the left of the south, and three of the west.
4 [76:4a] Through four of these come winds of blessing and prosperity, and from those eight come hurtful winds:
5 [76:4b] When they are sent, they bring destruction on all the earth and on the water upon it, and on all who dwell thereon, and on everything which is in the water and on the land.
6 [76:5] And the first wind from those portals, called the east wind, comes forth through the first portal which is in the east, inclining towards the south: from it come forth desolation, drought, heat, and destruction.
7 [76:6a] And through the second portal in the middle comes what is fitting,
8 [76:6b] And from it there come rain and fruitfulness and prosperity and dew;
9 [76:6c] And through the third portal which lies toward the north come cold and drought.
10 [76:7a] And after these come forth the south winds through three portals:
11 [76:7b] Through the first portal of them inclining to the east comes forth a hot wind.
12 [76:8] And through the middle portal next to it there come forth fragrant smells, and dew and rain, and prosperity and health.
13 [76:9] And through the third portal lying to the west come forth dew and rain, locusts and desolation.
14 [76:10] And after these the north winds: from the seventh portal in the east come dew and rain, locusts and desolation.
15 [76:11] And from the middle portal come in a direct direction health and rain and dew and prosperity; and through the third portal in the west come cloud and hoarfrost, and snow and rain, and dew and locusts.
16 [76:12a] And after these four are the west winds: through the first portal adjoining the north come forth dew and hoarfrost, and cold and snow and frost. And from the middle portal come forth dew and rain, and prosperity and blessing;
17 [76:12b] And through the last portal which adjoins the south come forth drought and desolation, and burning, and destruction.

18 [76:14] And the twelve portals of the four quarters of the heaven are therewith completed, and all their laws and all their plagues and all their benefactions have I shown to thee, my son Methuselah.
19 [77:1a] ¶ And the first quarter is called the east, because it is the first: and the second, the south, because the Most High will descend there;
20 [77:1b] Yea, there in quite a special sense will He who is blessed forever descend.
21 [77:2] And the west quarter is named the diminished, because there all the luminaries of the heaven wane and go down.
22 [77:3] And the fourth quarter, named the north, is divided into three parts: the first of them is for the dwelling of men: and the second contains seas of water, and the abysses and forests and rivers, and darkness and clouds; and the third part contains the garden of righteousness.
23 [77:4] And I saw seven high mountains, higher than all the mountains which are on the earth: and thence comes forth hoarfrost, and days, seasons, and years pass away.
24 [77:5] I saw seven rivers on the earth larger than all the rivers: one of them coming from the west pours its waters into the Great Sea.
25 [77:6] And these two come from the north to the sea and pour their waters into the Erythraean Sea in the east.
26 [77:7] And the remaining four come forth on the side of the north to their own sea, *two of them* to the Erythraean Sea, and two into the Great Sea and discharge themselves there into the desert.
27 [77:8] Seven great islands I saw in the sea and in the mainland: two in the mainland and five in the Great Sea.

Chapter 18

The Sun and Moon: the waxing and waning of the Moon.
(Enoch 78)

1 [78:1] And the names of the sun are the following: the first Orjârês, and the second Tômâs.
2 [78:2] And the moon has four names: the first name is Asônjâ, the second Eblâ, the third Benâsê, and the fourth Erâe.

3 [78:3] These are the two great luminaries: their circumference is like the circumference of the heaven, and the size of the circumference of both is alike.
4 [78:4] In the circumference of the sun there are seven portions of light which are added to it more than to the moon, and in definite measures it is transferred till the seventh portion of the sun is exhausted.
5 [78:5] And they set and enter the portals of the west, and make their revolution by the north, and come forth through the eastern portals on the face of the heaven.
6 [78:6] And when the moon rises one-fourteenth part appears in the heaven: [the light becomes full in her]: on the fourteenth day she accomplishes her light.
7 [78:7] And fifteen parts of light are transferred to her till the fifteenth day *when* her light is accomplished, according to the sign of the year, and she becomes fifteen parts, and the moon grows by *the addition of* fourteenth parts.
8 [78:8] And in her waning *the moon* decreases on the first day to fourteen parts of her light, on the second to thirteen parts of light, on the third to twelve, on the fourth to eleven, on the fifth to ten, on the sixth to nine, on the seventh to eight, on the eighth to seven, on the ninth to six, on the tenth to five, on the eleventh to four, on the twelfth to three, on the thirteenth to two, on the fourteenth to the half of a seventh, and all her remaining light disappears wholly on the fifteenth.
9 [78:9] And in certain months the month has twenty-nine days and once twenty-eight.
10 [78:10] And Uriel showed me another law: when light is transferred to the moon, and on which side it is transferred to her by the sun.
11 [78:11] During all the period during which the moon is growing in her light, she is transferring it to herself when opposite to the sun during fourteen days her light is accomplished in the heaven, and when she is illumined throughout, her light is accomplished full in the heaven.
12 [78:12 And on the first day she is called the new moon, for on that day the light rises upon her.
13 [78:13] She, *the* moon, becomes full exactly on the day when the sun sets in the west, and from the east she rises at night, and the moon shines the whole night through till the sun rises over against her and the moon is seen over against the sun.

14 [78:14] On the side whence the light of the moon comes forth, there again she wanes till all the light vanishes and all the days of the month are at an end, and her circumference is empty, void of light.
15 [78:15] And three months she makes of thirty days, and at her time she makes three months of twenty-nine days each, in which she accomplishes her waning in the first period of time, and in the first portal for one hundred and seventy-seven days.
16 [78:16] And in the time of her going out she appears for three months *of* thirty days each, and for three months she appears *of* twenty-nine each.
17 [78:17] At night she appears like a man for twenty days each time, and by day she appears like the heaven, and there is nothing else in her save her light.

Chapter 19

Recapitulation of several of the Laws; the perversion of nature and the heavenly Bodies owning to the Sin of mankind. (Enoch 79-81)

1 [79:1] And now, my son, I have shown thee everything, and the law of all the stars of the heaven is completed.
2 [79:2] And he showed me all the laws of these for every day, and for every season of bearing rule, and for every year, and for its going forth, and for the order prescribed to it every month and every week:
3 [79:3a] And the waning of the moon which takes place in the sixth portal: for in this sixth portal her light is accomplished, and after that there is the beginning of the waning: 4. [79:3b] And the waning which takes place in the first portal in its season, till one hundred and seventy-seven days are accomplished: reckoned according to weeks, twenty-five *weeks* and two days.
4 [79:5] She falls behind the sun and the order of the stars exactly five days in the course of one period, and when this place which thou seest has been traversed.
5 [79:6] Such is the picture and sketch of every luminary which Uriel the archangel, who is their leader, showed unto me.

6 [80:1a] ¶ And in those days the angel Uriel answered and said to me: Behold, I have shown thee everything, Enoch, and I have revealed everything to thee that thou shouldst see:
7 [80:1b] This sun and this moon, and the leaders of the stars of the heaven and all those who turn them, their tasks and times and departures.
8 [80:2a] And in the days of the sinners the years shall be shortened, and their seed shall be tardy on their lands and fields, and all things on the earth shall alter, and shall not appear in their time:
9 [80:2b] And the rain shall be kept back and the heaven shall withhold *it*.
10 [80:3] And in those times the fruits of the earth shall be backward, and shall not grow in their time, and the fruits of the trees shall be withheld in their time.
11 [80:4] And the moon shall alter her order, and not appear at her time.
12 [80:5] And in those days the sun shall be seen and he shall journey in the evening on the extremity of the great chariot in the west and shall shine more brightly than accords with the order of light.
13 [80:6a] And many chiefs of the stars shall transgress the order *prescribed*.
14 [80:6b] And these shall alter their orbits and tasks, and not appear at the seasons prescribed to them.
15 [80:7a] And the whole order of the stars shall be concealed from the sinners;
16 [80:7b] And the thoughts of those on the earth shall err concerning them, and they shall be altered from all their ways, yea, they shall err and take them to be gods.
17 [80:8] And evil shall be multiplied upon them, and punishment shall come upon them So as to destroy all.

Chapter 20

The heavenly tablets and the mission of Enoch.
(Enoch 81)

1 [81:1] And *Uriel* said unto me: Observe, Enoch, these heavenly tablets, and read what is written thereon, and mark every individual fact.
2 [81:2] And I observed the heavenly tablets and read everything which was written *thereon* and understood everything and read the book of all the deeds of mankind, and of all the children of flesh that shall be upon the earth to the remotest generations.
3 [81:3] And forthwith I blessed the great Lord the King of glory forever, in that He has made all the works of the world, and I extolled the Lord because of His patience, and blessed Him because of the children of men.
4 [81:4] And after that I said: Blessed is the man who dies in righteousness and goodness, concerning whom there is no book of unrighteousness written, and against whom no day of judgement shall be found.'
5 [81:5] And those seven holy ones brought me and placed me on the earth before the door of my house, and said to me: Declare everything to thy son Methuselah, and show to all thy children that no flesh is righteous in the sight of the Lord, for He is their Creator.
6 [81:6a] One year we will leave thee with thy son, till thou givest thy *last* commands, that thou mayest teach thy children and record *it* for them, and testify to all thy children;
7 [81:6b] And in the second year they shall take thee from their midst.
8 [81:7a] Let thy heart be strong, for the good shall announce righteousness to the good;
9 [81:7b] The righteous with the righteous shall rejoice and shall offer congratulation to one another.
10 [81:8] But the sinners shall die with the sinners, and the apostate go down with the apostate.
11 [81:9] And those who practice righteousness shall die on account of the deeds of men and be taken away on account of the doings of the godless.

12 [81:10] And in those days they ceased to speak to me, and I came to my people, blessing the Lord of the world.

Chapter 21

The charge given to Enoch: the four intercalary days: the stars which lead the seasons and the months. (Enoch 82)

1 [82:1] And now, my son Methuselah, all these things I am recounting to thee and writing down for thee, and I have revealed to thee everything, and given thee books concerning all these: so preserve, my son Methuselah, the books from thy father's hand, and *see* that thou deliver them to the generations of the world.
2 [82:2] I have given Wisdom to thee and to thy children, and thy children that shall be to thee, that they may give it to their children for generations, this wisdom that passeth their thought.
3 [82:3] And those who understand it shall not sleep but shall listen with the ear that they may learn this wisdom, and it shall please those that eat thereof better than good food.
4 [82:4] Blessed are all the righteous, blessed are all those who walk in the way of righteousness and sin not as the sinners, in the reckoning of all their days in which the sun traverses the heaven, entering into and departing from the portals for thirty days with the heads of thousands of the order of the stars, together with the four which are intercalated which divide the four portions of the year, which lead them and enter with them four days.
5 [82:5] Owing to them men shall be at fault and not reckon them in the whole reckoning of the year: yea, men shall be at fault, and not recognize them accurately.
6 [82:6a] For they belong to the reckoning of the year and are truly recorded *thereon* forever;
7 [82:6b] One in the first portal and one in the third, and one in the fourth and one in the sixth, and the year is completed in three hundred and sixty-four days.
8 [82:7] And the account thereof is accurate and the recorded reckoning thereof exact; for the luminaries, and months and festivals, and years and days, has Uriel shown and revealed to me, to whom the Lord of the whole creation of the world hath subjected the host of heaven.

9 [82:8] And he has power over night and day in the heaven to cause the light to give light to men—sun, moon, and stars, and all the powers of the heaven which revolve in their circular chariots.
10 [82:9] And these are the orders of the stars, which set in their places, and in their seasons and festivals and months.
11 [82:10] And these are the names of those who lead them, who watch that they enter at their times, in their orders, in their seasons, in their months, in their periods of dominion, and in their positions.
12 [82:11] Their four leaders who divide the four parts of the year enter first; and after them the twelve leaders of the orders who divide the months; and for the three hundred and sixty *days* there are heads over thousands who divide the days;
13 [82:11b] And for the four intercalary days there are the leaders which sunder the four parts of the year.
14 [82:12a] And these heads over thousands are intercalated between leader and leader, each behind a station, but their leaders make the division.
15 [82:12b] And these are the names of the leaders who divide the four parts of the year which are ordained: Mîlkî'êl, Hel'emmêlêk, and Mêl'êjal, and Nârêl.
16 [82:13a] And the names of those who lead them: Adnâr'êl, and Îjâsûsa'êl, and 'Elômê'êl—
17 [82:13b] These three follow the leaders of the orders, and there is one that follows the three leaders of the orders which follow those leaders of stations that divide the four parts of the year.
18 [82:15] In the beginning of the year Melkejâl rises first and rules, who is named Tam'âinî and sun, and all the days of his dominion whilst he bears rule are ninety-one days.
19 [82:16a] And these are the signs of the days which are to be seen on earth in the days of his dominion: sweat, and heat, and calms;
20 [82:16b] And all the trees bear fruit, and leaves are produced on all the trees, and the harvest of wheat, and the rose flowers, and all the flowers which come forth in the field, but the trees of the winter season become withered.
21 [82:17] And these are the names of the leaders which are under them: Berka'êl, Zêlebs'êl, and another who is added a head of a thousand, called Hîlûjâsĕph: and the days of the dominion of this *leader* are at an end.

22 [82:18] The next leader after him is Hêl'emmêlêk, whom one names the shining sun, and all the days of his light are ninetyone days.
23 [82:19] And these are the signs of *his* days on the earth: glowing heat and dryness, and the trees ripen their fruits and produce all their fruits ripe and ready, and the sheep pair and become pregnant, and all the fruits of the earth are gathered in, and everything that is in the fields, and the winepress: these things take place in the days of his dominion.
24 [82:20] These are the names and the orders, and the leaders of those heads of thousands: Gîdâ'îjal, Kê'êl, and Hê'êl, and the name of the head of a thousand which is added to them, Asfâ'êl': and the days of his dominion are at an end.

The Book of Dream Visions

A vision of a history of Israel to the Maccabean Revolt. Believed to have been composed around 163–142 BC.

Chapter 22

The first dream or vision of the great flood.
(Enoch 83-84)

1 [83:1] And now, my son Methuselah, I will show thee all my visions which I have seen, recounting them before thee.
2 [83:2a] Two visions I saw before I took a wife, and the one was quite unlike the other: the first when I was learning to write: the second before I took thy mother, *when* I saw a terrible vision.
3 [83:2b] And regarding them I prayed to the Lord.
4 [83:3] I had laid me down in the house of my grandfather Mahalalel, *when* I saw in a vision how the heaven collapsed and was borne off and fell to the earth.
5 [83:4] And when it fell to the earth I saw how the earth was swallowed up in a great abyss, and mountains were suspended on mountains, and hills sank down on hills, and high trees were rent from their stems, and hurled down and sunk in the abyss.
6 [83:5] And thereupon a word fell into my mouth, and I lifted up *my voice* to cry aloud, and said: The earth is destroyed.
7 [83:6] And my grandfather Mahalalel waked me as I lay near him, and said unto me: Why dost thou cry so, my son, and why dost thou make such lamentation?
8 [83:7a] And I recounted to him the whole vision which I had seen.
9 [83:7b] And he said unto me: A terrible thing hast thou seen, my son, and of grave moment is thy dream-vision as to the secrets of all the sin of the earth: it must sink into the abyss and be destroyed with a great destruction.
10 [83:8] And now, my son, arise and make petition to the Lord of glory, since thou art a believer, that a remnant may remain on the earth, and that He may not destroy the whole earth.
11 [83:9] My son, from heaven all this will come upon the earth, and upon the earth there will be great destruction.
12 [83:10] After that I arose and prayed and implored and besought, and wrote down my prayer for the generations of the world, and I will show everything to thee, my son Methuselah.

13 [83:11a] And when I had gone forth below and seen the heaven, and the sun rising in the east, and the moon setting in the west, and a few stars, and the whole earth, and everything as He had known it in the beginning,
14 [83:11b] Then I blessed the Lord of judgement and extolled Him because He had made the sun to go forth from the windows of the east, and he ascended and rose on the face of the heaven, aand set out and kept traversing the path shown unto him.
15 [84:1] ¶ And I lifted up my hands in righteousness and blessed the Holy and Great One, and spake with the breath of my mouth, and with the tongue of flesh, which God has made for the children of the flesh of men, that they should speak therewith, and He gave them breath and a tongue and a mouth that they should speak therewith:
16 [84:2a] Blessed be Thou, O Lord, King, Great and mighty in Thy greatness, Lord of the whole creation of the heaven, King of kings and God of the whole world.
17 [84:2b] And Thy power and kingship and greatness abide forever and ever, and throughout all generations Thy dominion;
18 [84:2c] And all the heavens are Thy throne forever, and the whole earth Thy footstool forever and ever.
19 [84:3a] For Thou hast made and Thou rulest all things, and nothing is too hard for Thee, wisdom departs not from the place of Thy throne, nor turns away from Thy presence.
20 [84:3b] And Thou knowest and seest and hearest everything, and there is nothing hidden from Thee for Thou seest everything.
21 [84:4] And now the angels of Thy heavens are guilty of trespass, and upon the flesh of men abideth Thy wrath until the great day of judgement.
22 [84:5] And now, O God and Lord and Great King, I implore and beseech Thee to fulfil my prayer, to leave me a posterity on earth, and not destroy all the flesh of man, and make the earth without inhabitant, so that there should be an eternal destruction.
23 [84:6] And now, my Lord, destroy from the earth the flesh which has aroused Thy wrath, but the flesh of righteousness and uprightness establish as a plant of the eternal seed, and hide not Thy face from the prayer of Thy servant, O Lord.

Chapter 23

The second dream or vision of Enoch: the history of the world to the founding of the Messianic Kingdom; the fall of the angels and the Demoralization of mankind; the advent of the seven Archangels; the punishment of the fallen angels by the Archangels. (Enoch 85-88)

1 [85:1] And after this I saw another dream, and I will show the whole dream to thee, my son.
2 [85:2] And Enoch lifted up *his voice* and spake unto his son Methuselah: To thee, my son, will I speak: hear my words—incline thine ear to the dream-vision of thy father.
3 [85:3] Before I took thy mother Edna, I saw in a vision on my bed; and behold a bull came forth from the earth, and that bull was white; and after it came forth a heifer, and along with this *latter* came forth two bulls, one of them black and the other red.
4 [85:4] And that black bull gored the red one and pursued him over the earth, and thereupon I could no longer see that red bull.
5 [85:5] But that black bull grew and that heifer went with him, and I saw that many oxen proceeded from him which resembled and followed him.
6 [85:6] And that cow, that first one, went from the presence of that first bull in order to seek that red one, but found him not, and lamented with a great lamentation over him and sought him.
7 [85:7] And I looked till that first bull came to her and quieted her, and from that time onward she cried no more.
8 [85:8] And after that she bore another white bull, and after him she bore many bulls and black cows.
9 [85:9a] And I saw in my sleep that white bull likewise grow and become a great white bull, and from Him proceeded many white bulls, and they resembled him.
10 [85:9b] And they began to beget many white bulls, which resembled them, one following the other, *even* many.
11 [86:1] ¶ And again I saw with mine eyes as I slept, and I saw the heaven above, and behold a star fell from heaven, and it arose and eat and pastured amongst those oxen.
12 [86:2] And after that I saw the large and the black oxen, and behold they all changed their stalls and pastures and their cattle, and began to live with each other.

13 [86:3] And again I saw in the vision, and looked towards the heaven, and behold I saw many stars descend and cast themselves down from heaven to that first star, and they became bulls amongst those cattle and pastured with them amongst them.
14 [86:4] And I looked at them and saw, and behold they all let out their privy members, like horses, and began to cover the cows of the oxen, and they all became pregnant and bare elephants, camels, and asses.
15 [86:5] And all the oxen feared them and were affrighted at them and began to bite with their teeth and to devour, and to gore with their horns.
16 [86:6] And moreover they began to devour those oxen; and behold all the children of the earth began to tremble and quake before them and to flee from them.
17 [87:1] ¶ And again I saw how they began to gore each other and to devour each other, and the earth began to cry aloud.
18 [87:2a] And I raised mine eyes again to heaven, and I saw in the vision; and behold there came forth from heaven beings who were like white men:
19 [87:2b] And four went forth from that place and three with them.
20 [87:3] And those three that had last come forth grasped me by my hand and took me up, away from the generations of the earth, and raised me up to a lofty place, and showed me a tower raised high above the earth, and all the hills were lower.
21 [87:4] And one said unto me: Remain here till thou seest everything that befalls those elephants, camels, and asses, and the stars and the oxen, and all of them.
22 [88:1a] And I saw one of those four who had come forth first, and he seized that first star which had fallen from the heaven, and bound it hand and foot and cast it into an abyss:
23 [88:1b] ¶ Now that abyss was narrow and deep, and horrible and dark.
24 [88:2] And one of them drew a sword and gave it to those elephants and camels and asses: then they began to smite each other, and the whole earth quaked because of them.
25 [88:3] And as I was beholding in the vision, lo, one of those four who had come forth stoned *them* from heaven, and gathered and took all the great stars whose privy members were like those of horses, and bound them all hand and foot, and cast them in an abyss of the earth.

Chapter 24

The second dream or vision of Enoch continued: The flood or deluge and the deliverance of Noah, and from the death of Noah to the Exodus; Israel in the Desert and are given the Law; the entrance into Palestine.
(Enoch 89:1-40)

1 [89:1] And one of those four went to that white bull and instructed him in a secret, without his being terrified: he was born a bull and became a man, and built for himself a great vessel and dwelt thereon; and three bulls dwelt with him in that vessel and they were covered in.
2 [89:2] And again I raised mine eyes towards heaven and saw a lofty roof, with seven water torrents thereon, and those torrents flowed with much water into an enclosure.
3 [89:3] And I saw again, and behold fountains were opened on the surface of that great enclosure, and that water began to swell and rise upon the surface, and I saw that enclosure till all its surface was covered with water.
4 [89:4] And the water, the darkness, and mist increased upon it; and as I looked at the height of that water, that water had risen above the height of that enclosure, and was streaming over that enclosure, and it stood upon the earth.
5 [89:5] And all the cattle of that enclosure were gathered together until I saw how they sank and were swallowed up and perished in that water.
6 [89:6] But that vessel floated on the water, while all the oxen and elephants and camels and asses sank to the bottom with all the animals, so that I could no longer see them, and they were not able to escape, *but* perished and sank into the depths.
7 [89:7] And again I saw in the
8 vision till those water torrents were removed from that high roof, and the chasms of the earth were levelled up and other abysses were opened.
9 [89:8a] Then the water began to run down into these, till the earth became visible;
10 [89:8b] But that vessel settled on the earth, and the darkness retired, and light appeared.
11 [89:9a] But that white bull which had become a man came out of that vessel, and the three bulls with him, and one of those three was white like that bull, and one of them was red as blood, and one black:
12 [89:9b] And that white bull departed from them.
13 [88:10] ¶ And they began to bring forth beasts of the field and birds, so that there arose different genera: lions, tigers, wolves, dogs,

hyenas, wild boars, foxes, squirrels, swine, falcons, vultures, kites, eagles, and ravens; and among them was born a white bull.
14 [89:11] And they began to bite one another; but that white bull which was born amongst them begat a wild ass and a white bull with it, and the wild asses multiplied.
15 [89:12a] But that bull which was born from him begat a black wild boar and a white sheep;
16 [89:12b] And the former begat many boars, but that sheep begat twelve sheep.
17 [89:13] And when those twelve sheep had grown, they gave up one of them to the asses, and those asses again gave up that sheep to the wolves, and that sheep grew up among the wolves.
18 [89:14] And the Lord brought the eleven sheep to live with it and to pasture with it among the wolves: and they multiplied and became many flocks of sheep.
19 [89:15a] And the wolves began to fear them, and they oppressed them until they destroyed their little ones, and they cast their young into a river of much water:
20 [89:15b] But those sheep began to cry aloud on account of their little ones, and to complain unto their Lord.
21 [89:16a] And a sheep which had been saved from the wolves fled and escaped to the wild asses;
22 [89:16b] And I saw the sheep how they lamented and cried, and besought their Lord with all their might, till that Lord of the sheep descended at the voice of the sheep from a lofty abode and came to them and pastured them.
23 [89:17] And He called that sheep which had escaped the wolves, and spake with it concerning the wolves that it should admonish them not to touch the sheep.
24 [89:18] And the sheep went to the wolves according to the word of the Lord, and another sheep met it and went with it, and the two went and entered together into the assembly of those wolves, and spake with them and admonished them not to touch the sheep from henceforth.
25 [89:19] And thereupon I saw the wolves, and how they oppressed the sheep exceedingly with all their power; and the sheep cried aloud.
26 [89:20] And the Lord came to the sheep and they began to smite those wolves: and the wolves began to make lamentation; but the sheep became quiet and forthwith ceased to cry out.
27 [89:21] And I saw the sheep till they departed from amongst the wolves; but the eyes of the wolves were blinded, and those wolves departed in pursuit of the sheep with all their power.

28 [89:22] And the Lord of the sheep went with them, as their leader, and all His sheep followed Him: and his face was dazzling and glorious and terrible to behold.
29 [89:23] But the wolves began to pursue those sheep till they reached a sea of water.
30 [89:24] And that sea was divided, and the water stood on this side and on that before their face, and their Lord led them and placed Himself between them and the wolves.
31 [88:25] And as those wolves did not yet see the sheep, they proceeded into the midst of that sea, and the wolves followed the sheep, and those wolves ran after them into that sea.
32 [89:26] And when they saw the Lord of the sheep, they turned to flee before His face, but that sea gathered itself together, and became as it had been created, and the water swelled and rose till it covered those wolves.
33 [89:27] And I saw till all the wolves who pursued those sheep perished and were drowned.
34 [89:28a] ¶ But the sheep escaped from that water and went forth into *the* wilderness, where there was no water and no grass;
35 [89:28b] And they began to open their eyes and to see;
36 [88:28c] And I saw the Lord of the sheep pasturing them and giving them water and grass, and that sheep going and leading them.
37 [89:29] And that sheep ascended to the summit of that lofty rock, and the Lord of the sheep sent it to them.
38 [89:30] And after that I saw the Lord of the sheep who stood before them, and His appearance was great and terrible and majestic, and all those sheep saw Him and were afraid before His face.
39 [89:31] And they all feared and trembled because of Him, and they cried to that sheep with them which was amongst them]: We are not able to stand before our Lord or to behold Him.
40 [89:32] And that sheep which led them again ascended to the summit of that rock, but the sheep began to be blinded and to wander from the way which he had showed them, but that sheep wot not thereof.
41 [88:33] And the Lord of the sheep was wrathful exceedingly against them, and that sheep discovered it, and went down from the summit of the rock, and came to the sheep, and found the greatest part of them blinded and fallen away.
42 [89:34] And when they saw it they feared and trembled at its presence, and desired to return to their folds.
43 [89:35a] And that sheep took other sheep with it, and came to those sheep which had fallen away, and began to slay them;

44 [89:35b] And the sheep feared its presence, and thus that sheep brought back those sheep that had fallen away, and they returned to their folds.
45 [89:36] And I saw in this vision till that sheep became a man and built a house for the Lord of the sheep and placed all the sheep in that house.
46 [89:37a] And I saw till this sheep which had met that sheep which led them fell asleep:
47 [89:37b] And I saw till all the great sheep perished and little ones arose in their place, and they came to a pasture, and approached a stream of water.
48 [89:38] Then that sheep, their leader which had become a man, withdrew from them and fell asleep, and all the sheep sought it and cried over it with a great crying.
49 [89:39] And I saw till they left off crying for that sheep and crossed that stream of water, and there arose the two sheep as leaders in the place of those which had fallen asleep and *after he had* led them.
50 [89:40] And I saw till the sheep came to a goodly place, and a pleasant and glorious land, and I saw till those sheep were satisfied; and that house stood amongst them in the pleasant land.

Chapter 25

The second dream or vision of Enoch continued: From the time of the Judges till the Building of the Temple; the Two Kingdoms of Israel and Judah, to the destruction of Jerusalem; First Period of the angelic rulers: from the destruction of Jerusalem to the return from captivity; the Second Period: from the time of Cyrus to that of Alexander the Great. (Enoch 89:41-76)

1 [89:41] And sometimes their eyes were opened, and sometimes blinded, till another sheep arose and led them and brought them all back, and their eyes were opened.
2 [89:42] And the dogs and the foxes and the wild boars began to devour those sheep till the Lord of the sheep raised up another sheep, a ram from their midst, which led them.
3 [89:43] And that ram began to butt on either side those dogs, foxes, and wild boars till he had destroyed them all.
4 [89:44] And that sheep whose eyes were opened saw that ram, which was amongst the sheep, until it forsook its glory and began to butt those sheep, and trampled upon them, and behaved itself unseemly.

5 [89:45] And the Lord of the sheep sent the lamb to another lamb and raised it to being a ram and leader of the sheep instead of that ram which had forsaken its glory.
6 [89:46a] And it went to it and spake to it alone, and raised it to being a ram, and made it the prince and leader of the sheep;
7 [89:46b] But during all these things those dogs oppressed the sheep.
8 [89:47] And the first ram pursued that second ram, and that second ram arose and fled before it; and I saw till those dogs pulled down the first ram.
9 [89:48a] And that second ram arose and led the little sheep.
10 [89:48b] And that ram begat many sheep and fell asleep; and a little sheep became ram in its stead and became prince and leader of those sheep.
11 [89:49a] And those sheep grew and multiplied; but all the dogs, and foxes, and wild boars feared and fled before it, and that ram butted and killed the wild beasts,
12 [89:49b] And those wild beasts had no longer any power among the sheep and robbed them no more of ought.
13 [89:50a] ¶ And that house became great and broad, and it was built for those sheep:
14 [89:50b] *And* a tower lofty and great was built on the house for the Lord of the sheep, and that house was low,
15 [89:50c] But the tower was elevated and lofty, and the Lord of the sheep stood on that tower and they offered a full table before Him.
16 [89:51a] ¶ And again I saw those sheep that they again erred and went many ways, and forsook that their house,
17 [89:51b] And the Lord of the sheep called some from amongst the sheep and sent them to the sheep, but the sheep began to slay them.
18 [89:52a] And one of them was saved and was not slain, and it sped away and cried aloud over the sheep;
19 [89:52b] And they sought to slay it, but the Lord of the sheep saved it from the sheep, and brought it up to me, and caused it to dwell there.
20 [89:53] And many other sheep He sent to those sheep to testify unto them and lament over them.
21 [89:54a] And after that I saw that when they forsook the house of the Lord and His tower they fell away entirely, and their eyes were blinded;
22 [89:54b] And I saw the Lord of the sheep how He wrought much slaughter amongst them in their herds until those sheep invited that slaughter and betrayed His place.
23 [89:55] And He gave them over into the hands of the lions and tigers, and wolves and hyenas, and into the hand of the foxes, and to

all the wild beasts, and those wild beasts began to tear in pieces those sheep.
24 [89:56] And I saw that He forsook that their house and their tower and gave them all into the hand of the lions, to tear and devour them, into the hand of all the wild beasts.
25 [89:57] And I began to cry aloud with all my power, and to appeal to the Lord of the sheep, and to represent to Him in regard to the sheep that they were devoured by all the wild beasts.
26 [89:58] But He remained unmoved, though He saw it, and rejoiced that they were devoured and swallowed and robbed, and left them to be devoured in the hand of all the beasts.
27 [89:59a] And He called seventy shepherds, and cast those sheep to them that they might pasture them, and He spake to the shepherds and their companions:
28 [89:59b] Let each individual of you pasture the sheep henceforward, and everything that I shall command you that do ye.
29 [89:60a] And I will deliver them over unto you duly numbered, and tell you which of them are to be destroyed—and them destroy ye.
30 [89:60b] And He gave over unto them those sheep.
31 [89:61a] And He called another and spake unto him: Observe and mark everything that the shepherds will do to those sheep;
32 [89:61b] For they will destroy more of them than I have commanded them.
33 [89:62a] And every excess and the destruction which will be wrought through the shepherds, record *namely* how many they destroy according to my command,
34 [89:62b] And how many according to their own caprice: record against every individual shepherd all the destruction he effects.
35 [89:63a] And read out before me by number how many they destroy, and how many they deliver over for destruction, that I may have this as a testimony against them, and know every deed of the shepherds,
36 [89:63b] That I may comprehend and see what they do, whether or not they abide by my command which I have commanded them.
37 [89:64a] But they shall not know it, and thou shalt not declare it to them, nor admonish them,
38 [89:64b] But only record against each individual all the destruction which the shepherds' effect each in his time and lay it all before me.
39 [89:65. And I saw till those shepherds pastured in their season, and they began to slay and to destroy more than they were bidden, and they delivered those sheep into the hand of the lions.
40 [89:66a] And the lions and tigers eat and devoured the greater part of those sheep, and the wild boars eat along with them;

41 [89:66b] And they burnt that tower and demolished that house.
42 [89:67] And I became exceedingly sorrowful over that tower because that house of the sheep was demolished, and afterwards I was unable to see if those sheep entered that house.
43 [89:68a] ¶ And the shepherds and their associates delivered over those sheep to all the wild beasts, to devour them, and each one of them received in his time a definite number:
44 [89:68b] *And* it was written by the other in a book how many each one of them destroyed of them.
45 [89:69a] And each one slew and destroyed many more than was prescribed;
46 [88:69b] And I began to weep and lament on account of those sheep.
47 [89:70a] And thus in the vision I saw that one who wrote, how he wrote down every one that was destroyed by those shepherds, day by day, and carried up and laid down and showed actually the whole book to the Lord of the sheep—
48 [89:70b] *Even* everything that they had done, and all that each one of them had made away with, and all that they had given over to destruction.
49 [89:71] And the book was read before the Lord of the sheep, and He took the book from his hand and read it and sealed it and laid it down.
50 [89:72a] ¶ And forthwith I saw how the shepherds pastured for twelve hours, and behold three of those sheep turned back and came and entered and began to build up all that had fallen down of that house;
51 [89:72b] But the wild boars tried to hinder them, but they were not able.
52 [89:73a] And they began again to build as before, and they reared up that tower, and it was named the high tower;
53 [89:73b] And they began again to place a table before the tower, but all the bread on it was polluted and not pure.
54 [89:74a] And as touching all this the eyes of those sheep were blinded so that they saw not, and *the eyes of* their shepherds likewise;
55 [89:74b] And they delivered them in large numbers to their shepherds for destruction, and they trampled the sheep with their feet and devoured them.
56 [89:75a] And the Lord of the sheep remained unmoved till all the sheep were dispersed over the field and mingled with them *(the beasts)*,
57 [89:75b] And they *(the shepherds)* did not save them out of the hand of the beasts.

58 [89:76a] And this one who wrote the book carried it up, and showed it and read it before the Lord of the sheep, and implored Him on their account, and besought Him on their account;
59 [89:76b] *And* as he showed Him all the doings of the shepherds and gave testimony before Him against all the shepherds.
60 [89:76c] And he took the actual book and laid it down beside Him and departed.

Chapter 26

The second dream or vision of Enoch continued: Third Period: from Alexander the Great to the Graeco-Syrian Domination; Fourth Period: from the Graeco-Syrian Domination to the Maccabæan Revolt; the last assault of the Gentiles on the Jews; the judgement of the fallen angels, the Shepherds, and the Apostates; The New Jerusalem, the conversion of the surviving Gentiles, the resurrection of the righteous, and the Messiah. (Enoch 90)

1 [90:1a] And I saw till that in this manner thirty-five shepherds undertook *the pasturing of the sheep*, and they severally completed their periods as did the first;
2 [90:1b] And others received them into their hands, to pasture them for their period, each shepherd in his own period.
3 [90:2a] And after that I saw in my vision all the birds of heaven coming, the eagles, the vultures, the kites, the ravens;
4 [90:2b] But the eagles led all the birds; and they began to devour those sheep, and to pick out their eyes and to devour their flesh.
5 [90:3a] And the sheep cried out because their flesh was being devoured by the birds,
6 [90:3b] And as for me I looked and lamented in my sleep over that shepherd who pastured the sheep.
7 [90:4a] And I saw until those sheep were devoured by the dogs and eagles and kites, and they left neither flesh nor skin nor sinew remaining on them till only their bones stood there:
8 [90:4b] And their bones too fell to the earth and the sheep became few.
9 [90:5] And I saw until that twenty-three had undertaken the pasturing and completed in their several periods fifty-eight times.
10 [90:6] ¶ But behold lambs were borne by those white sheep, and they began to open their eyes and to see, and to cry to the sheep.
11 [90:7] Yea, they cried to them, but they did not hearken to what they said to them, but were exceedingly deaf, and their eyes were very exceedingly blinded.

12 [90:8] And I saw in the vision how the ravens flew upon those lambs and took one of those lambs, and dashed the sheep in pieces and devoured them.
13 [90:9] And I saw till horns grew upon those lambs, and the ravens cast down their horns; and I saw till there sprouted a great horn of one of those sheep, and their eyes were opened.
14 [90:10] And it looked at them and their eyes opened, and it cried to the sheep, and the rams saw it and all ran to it.
15 [90:11a] And notwithstanding all this those eagles and vultures and ravens and kites still kept tearing the sheep and swooping down upon them and devouring them:
16 [90:11b] Still the sheep remained silent, but the rams lamented and cried out.
17 [90:12] And those ravens fought and battled with it and sought to lay low its horn, but they had no power over it.
18 [90:13] ¶ And I saw till the shepherds and eagles, and those vultures and kites came, and they cried to the ravens that they should break the horn of that ram, and they battled and fought with it, and it battled with them and cried that its help might come.
19 [90:14] And I saw till that man, who wrote down the names of the shepherds and carried up into the presence of the Lord of the sheep came and helped it and showed it everything: he had come down for the help of that ram.
20 [90:15] And I saw till the Lord of the sheep came unto them in wrath, and all who saw Him fled, and they all fell into His shadow from before His face.
21 [90:16a] All the eagles and vultures and ravens and kites were gathered together, and there came with them all the sheep of the field;
22 [90:16b] Yea, they all came together, and helped each other to break that horn of the ram.
23 [90:17] And I saw that man, who wrote the book according to the command of the Lord, till he opened that book concerning the destruction which those twelve last shepherds had wrought, and showed that they had destroyed much more than their predecessors, before the Lord of the sheep.
24 [90:18a] And I saw till the Lord of the sheep came unto them and took in His hand the staff of His wrath, and smote the earth;
25 [90:18b] And the earth clave asunder, and all the beasts and all the birds of the heaven fell from among those sheep and were swallowed up in the earth and it covered them.
26 [90:19] And I saw till a great sword was given to the sheep, and the sheep proceeded against all the beasts of the field to slay them, and all the beasts and the birds of the heaven fled before their face.

27 [90:20] ¶ And I saw till a throne was erected in the pleasant land, and the Lord of the sheep sat Himself thereon, and the other took the sealed books and opened those books before the Lord of the sheep.
28 [90:21a] And the Lord called those men the seven first white ones, and commanded that they should bring before Him,
29 [90:21b] Beginning with the first star which led the way, all the stars whose privy members were like those of horses, and they brought them all before Him.
30 [90:22a] And He said to that man who wrote before Him, being one of those seven white ones, and said unto him:
31 [90:22b] Take those seventy shepherds to whom I delivered the sheep, and who taking them on their own authority slew more than I commanded them.
32 [90:23] And behold they were all bound, I saw, and they all stood before Him.
33 [90:24] And the judgement was held first over the stars, and they were judged and found guilty, and went to the place of condemnation, and they were cast into an abyss, full of fire and flaming, and full of pillars of fire.
34 [90:25] And those seventy shepherds were judged and found guilty, and they were cast into that fiery abyss.
35 [90:26a] And I saw at that time how a like abyss was opened in the midst of the earth, full of fire, and they brought those blinded sheep,
36 [90:26b] And they were all judged and found guilty and cast into this fiery abyss, and they burned; now this abyss was to the right of that house.
37 [90:27] And I saw those sheep burning and their bones burning.
38 [90:28a] ¶ And I stood up to see till they folded up that old house; and carried off all the pillars, and all the beams and ornaments of the house were at the same time folded up with it,
39 [90:28b] And they carried it off and laid it in a place in the south of the land.
40 [90:29a] And I saw till the Lord of the sheep brought a new house greater and loftier than that first, and set it up in the place of the first which had beer folded up:
41 [90:29b] All its pillars were new, and its ornaments were new and larger than those of the first, the old one which He had taken away, and all the sheep were within it.
42 [90:30] And I saw all the sheep which had been left, and all the beasts on the earth, and all the birds of the heaven, falling down and doing homage to those sheep and making petition to and obeying them in everything.

43 [90:31a] And thereafter those three who were clothed in white and had seized me by my hand who had taken me up before, and the hand of that ram also seizing hold of me,
44 [90:31b] They took me up and set me down in the midst of those sheep before the judgement took place.
45 [90:32] And those sheep were all white, and their wool was abundant and clean.
46 [90:33a] And all that had been destroyed and dispersed, and all the beasts of the field, and all the birds of the heaven, assembled in that house,
47 [90:33b] And the Lord of the sheep rejoiced with great joy because they were all good and had returned to His house.
48 [90:34a] And I saw till they laid down that sword, which had been given to the sheep,
49 [90:34b] And they brought it back into the house, and it was sealed before the presence of the Lord, and all the sheep were invited into that house, but it held them not.
50 [90:35] And the eyes of them all were opened, and they saw the good, and there was not one among them that did not see.
51 [90:36] And I saw that that house was large and broad and very full.
52 [90:37] And I saw that a white bull was born, with large horns and all the beasts of the field and all the birds of the air feared him and made petition to him all the time.
53 [90:38a] And I saw till all their generations were transformed, and they all became white bulls;
54 [90:38b] And the first among them became a lamb, and that lamb became a great animal and had great black horns on its head;
55 [90:38c] And the Lord of the sheep rejoiced over it and over all the oxen.
56 [90:39] And I slept in their midst: and I awoke and saw everything.
57 [90:40] This is the vision which I saw while I slept, and I awoke and blessed the Lord of righteousness and gave Him glory.
58 [90:41a] Then I wept with a great weeping and my tears stayed not till I could no longer endure it:
59 {90:41b] Then I saw, they flowed on account of what I had seen; for everything shall come and be fulfilled, and all the deeds of men in their order were shown to me.
60 [90:42] On that night I remembered the first dream, and because of it I wept and was troubled—because I had seen that vision.

The Epistle of Enoch

The message from Enoch to his children. Believed to have been composed around 170 BC–1 AD.

Chapter 27

Enoch's admonition to his children; the remaining "weeks" upon the Earth. (Enoch 91)

1 [91:1a] And now, my son Methuselah, call to me all thy brothers and gather together to me all the sons of thy mother;
2 [91:1b] For the word calls me, and the spirit is poured out upon me, that I may show you everything that shall befall you forever.
3 [91:2] And there upon Methuselah went and summoned to him all his brothers and assembled his relatives.
4 [91:3a] And he spake unto all the children of righteousness and said:
5 [91:3b] Hear, ye sons of Enoch, all the words of your father, and hearken aright to the voice of my mouth;
6 [91:3c-4a] For I exhort you and say unto you, beloved: Love uprightness and walk therein and draw not nigh to uprightness with a double heart;
7 [91:4b] Associate not with those of a double heart, but walk in righteousness, my sons., and it shall guide you on good paths, and righteousness shall be your companion.
8 [91:5a] For I know that violence must increase on the earth, and a great chastisement be executed on the earth, and all unrighteousness come to an end:
9 [91:5b] Yea, it shall be cut off from its roots, and its whole structure be destroyed.
10 [91:6] And unrighteousness shall again be consummated on the earth, and all the deeds of unrighteousness and of violence and transgression shall prevail in a twofold degree.
11 [91:7a] And when sin and unrighteousness and blasphemy and violence in all kinds of deeds increase, and apostasy and transgression and uncleanness increase;
12 [91:7b] *And* a great chastisement shall come from heaven upon all these, and the holy Lord will come forth with wrath and chastisement to execute judgement on earth.

13 [91:8] In those days violence shall be cut off from its roots, and the roots of unrighteousness together with deceit, and they shall be destroyed from under heaven.
14 [91:9a] And all the idols of the heathen shall be abandoned, and the temples burned with fire, and they shall remove them from the whole earth,
15 [91:9b] And they (i.e. the heathen) shall be cast into the judgement of fire and shall perish in wrath and in grievous judgement forever.
16 [91:10] And the righteous shall arise from their sleep, and wisdom shall arise and be given unto them.
17 [91:11a] And after that the roots of unrighteousness shall be cut off, and the sinners shall be destroyed by the sword *and the righteous* shall be cut off from the blasphemers in every place,
18 [91:11b] And those who plan violence and those who commit blasphemy shall perish by the sword.
19 [91:12a] ¶ And after that there shall be another, the eighth week, that of righteousness; and a sword shall be given to it that a righteous judgement may be executed on the oppressors;
20 [91:12b] And sinners shall be delivered into the hands of the righteous.
21 [91:13] And at its close they shall acquire houses through their righteousness, and a house shall be built for the Great King in glory forevermore.;
22 [91:14a-b] And after that, in the ninth week, the righteous judgement shall be revealed to the whole world, and all the works of the godless shall vanish from all the earth,
23 [91:14c] And the world shall be written down for destruction.
24 [91:14d] And all mankind shall look to the path of uprightness.
25 [91:15] And after this, in the tenth week in the seventh part, there shall be the great eternal judgement in which He will execute vengeance amongst the angels.
26 [91:16] And the first heaven shall depart and pass away, and a new heaven shall appear, and all the powers of the heavens shall give sevenfold light.
27 [91:17] And after that there will be many weeks without number forever, and all shall be in goodness and righteousness, and sin shall no more be mentioned forever
28 [91:18a] ¶ And now I tell you, my sons, and show you the paths of righteousness and the paths of violence.
29 [91:18b] Yea, I will show them to you again that ye may know what will come to pass.
30 [91:19a] And now, hearken unto me, my sons, and walk in the paths of righteousness, and walk not in the paths of violence;

31 [91:19b] For all who walk in the paths of unrighteousness shall perish forever.

Chapter 28

Enoch's book of admonition to his children; his admonitions to the righteous. (Enoch 92-94)

1 [92:1a] The book written by Enoch—Enoch indeed wrote this complete doctrine of wisdom, *which is* praised of all men and a judge of all the earth for all my children who shall dwell on the earth.
2 [92:1b] And for the future generations who shall observe uprightness and peace.
3 [92:2] Let not your spirit be troubled on account of the times; for the Holy and Great One has appointed days for all things.
4 [92:3] And the righteous one shall arise from sleep; shall arise and walk in the paths of righteousness, and all his path and conversation shall be in eternal goodness and grace.
5 [92:4a] He will be gracious to the righteous and give him eternal uprightness, and He will give him power so that he shall be *endowed* with goodness and righteousness.
6 [92:4b] And he shall walk in eternal light.
7 [92:5] And sin shall perish in darkness forever and shall no more be seen from that day forevermore.
8 [93:1a] ¶ And after that Enoch both gave and began to recount from the books.
9 [93:1b] And Enoch said: Concerning the children of righteousness and concerning the elect of the world, and concerning the plant of uprightness, I will speak these things;
10 [93:1c] Yea, I Enoch will declare *them* unto you, my sons according to that which appeared to me in the heavenly vision,
11 [93:1d] And *that* which I have known through the word of the holy angels and have learnt from the heavenly tablets.'
12 [93:3a] And Enoch began to recount from the books and said: I was born the seventh in the first week, while judgement and righteousness still endured.
13 [93:3b] And after me there shall arise in the second week great wickedness, and deceit shall have sprung up;
14 [93:3c] And in it there shall be the first end. and in it a man shall be saved;

15 [93:3d] And after it is ended unrighteousness shall grow up, and a Law shall be made for the sinners.
16 [93:5] And after that in the third week at its close a man shall be elected as the plant of righteous judgement, and his posterity shall become the plant of righteousness forevermore.
17 [93:6] And after that in the fourth week, at its close, visions of the holy and righteous shall be seen, and a Law for all generations and an enclosure shall be made for them.
18 [93:7] And after that in the fifth week, at its close, the house of glory and dominion shall be built forever.
19 [93:8a] And after that in the sixth week all who live in it shall be blinded, and the hearts of all of them shall godlessly forsake wisdom.
20 [93:8b] And in it a man shall ascend; and at its close the house of dominion shall be burnt with fire, and the whole race of the chosen root shall be dispersed.
21 [93:9] And after that in the seventh week shall an apostate generation arise, and many shall be its deeds, and all its deeds shall be apostate.
22 [93:10] And at its close shall be elected the elect righteous of the eternal plant of righteousness, to receive sevenfold instruction concerning all His creation.
23 [93:11a] For who is there of all the children of men that is able to hear the voice of the Holy One without being troubled?
24 [93:11b] And who can think His thoughts? and who is there that can behold all the works of heaven?
25 [93:12] And how should there be one who could behold the heaven, and who is there that could understand the things of heaven and see a soul or a spirit and could tell thereof, or ascend and see all their ends and think them or do like them?
26 [93:13] And who is there of all men that could know what is the breadth and the length of the earth, and to whom has been shown the measure of all of them?
27 [93:14] Or is there anyone who could discern the length of the heaven and how great is its height, and upon what it is founded, and how great is the number of the stars, and where all the luminaries rest?]
28 [94:1a] ¶ And now I say unto you, my sons, love righteousness and walk therein; for the paths of righteousness are worthy of acceptation;
29 [94:1b] But the paths of unrighteousness shall suddenly be destroyed and vanish.
30 [94:2a] And to certain men of a generation shall the paths of violence and of death be revealed,

31 [94:2b] And they shall hold themselves afar from them and shall not follow them.
32 [94:3] And now I say unto you the righteous: Walk not in the paths of wickedness, nor in the paths of death, and draw not nigh to them, lest ye be destroyed.
33 [94:4] But seek and choose for yourselves righteousness and an elect life and walk in the paths of peace *that* ye shall live and prosper.
34 [94:5a] And hold fast my words in the thoughts of your hearts, and suffer them not to be effaced from your hearts;
35 [94:5b] For I know that sinners will tempt men to evilly-entreat wisdom, so that no place may be found for her, and no manner of temptation may minish.
36 ¶ [94:6] Woe to those who build unrighteousness and oppression and lay deceit as a foundation, for they shall be suddenly overthrown, and they shall have no peace.
37 [94:7a] Woe to those who build their houses with sin, for from all their foundations shall they be overthrown, and by the sword shall they fall.
38 [94:7b] And those who acquire gold and silver in judgement suddenly shall perish.
39 [94:8] Woe to you, ye rich, for ye have trusted in your riches, and from your riches shall ye depart, because ye have not remembered the Most High in the days of your riches.
40 [94:9] Ye have committed blasphemy and unrighteousness, and have become ready for the day of slaughter, and the day of darkness and the day of the great judgement.
41 [94:10] Thus I speak and declare unto you: He who hath created you will overthrow you, and for your fall there shall be no compassion, and your Creator will rejoice at your destruction.
42 [94:11] And your righteous ones in those days shall be a reproach to the sinners and the godless.

Chapter 29

Enoch's grief: fresh woes against the sinners; grounds of hopefulness for the righteous: woes for the wicked; the evils in store for sinners and the possessors of unrighteous wealth. (Enoch 95-97)

1 [95:1] O that mine eyes were a cloud of waters that I might weep over you and pour down my tears as a cloud of waters that so I might rest from my trouble of heart!
2 [95:2a] Who has permitted you to practice reproaches and wickedness?
3 [95:2b] And so judgement shall overtake you, sinners.
4 [95:3] Fear not the sinners, ye righteous; for again will the Lord deliver them into your hands that ye may execute judgement upon them according to your desires.
5 [95:4] Woe to you who fulminate anathemas which cannot be reversed, *for* healing shall therefore be far from you because of your sins.
6 [95:5] Woe to you who requite your neighbor with evil, for ye shall be requited according to your works.
7 [95:6] Woe to you, lying witnesses, and to those who weigh out injustice; for suddenly shall ye perish.
8 [95:7] Woe to you, sinners, for ye persecute the righteous; for ye shall be delivered up and persecuted because of injustice, and heavy shall its yoke be upon you.
9 [96:1] ¶ Be hopeful, ye righteous; for suddenly shall the sinners perish before you, and ye shall have lordship over them according to your desires.
10 [96:2a] And in the day of the tribulation of the sinners, your children shall mount and rise as eagles, and higher than the vultures will be your nest,
11 [96:2b] And ye shall ascend and enter the crevices of the earth, and the clefts of the rock forever as conveys before the unrighteous, and the sirens shall sigh because of you and weep.
12 [96:3] Wherefore fear not, ye that have suffered; for healing shall be your portion, and a bright light shall enlighten you, and the voice of rest ye shall hear from heaven.
13 [96:4a] Woe unto you, ye sinners, for your riches make you appear like the righteous, but your hearts convict you of being sinners,
14 [96:4b] And this fact shall be a testimony against you for a memorial of *your* evil deeds.

15 [96:5] Woe to you who devour the finest of the wheat, and drink wine in large bowls, and tread underfoot the lowly with your might.
16 [96:6] Woe to you who drink water from every fountain, for suddenly shall ye be consumed and wither away because ye have forsaken the fountain of life.
17 [96:7] Woe to you who work unrighteousness and deceit and blasphemy: it shall be a memorial against you for evil.
18 [96:8a] Woe to you, ye mighty who with might oppress the righteous; for the day of your destruction is coming.
19 [96:8b] In those days many and good days shall come to the righteous, in the day of your judgement.
20 [97:1] ¶ Believe, ye righteous, that the sinners will become a shame and perish in the day of unrighteousness.
21 [97:2] Be it known unto you *ye sinners* that the Most High is mindful of your destruction, and the angels of heaven rejoice over your destruction.
22 [97:3] What will ye do, ye sinners, and whither will ye flee on that day of judgement, when ye hear the voice of the prayer of the righteous?
23 [97:4] Yea, ye shall fare like unto them, against whom this word shall be a testimony: Ye have been companions of sinners.
24 [97:5] And in those days the prayer of the righteous shall reach unto the Lord, and for you the days of your judgement shall come.
25 [97:6a] And all the words of your unrighteousness shall be read out before the Great Holy One,
26 [97:6b] And your faces shall be covered with shame, and He will reject every work which is grounded on unrighteousness.
27 [97:7] Woe to you, ye sinners, who live on the mid ocean and on the dry land, whose remembrance is evil against you.
28 [97:8] Woe to you who acquire silver and gold in unrighteousness and say: We have become rich with riches and have possessions and have acquired everything we have desired;
29 [97:9] And now let us do what we purposed, for we have gathered silver, and many are the husbandmen in our houses, and our granaries are *brim* full as with water.
30 [97:10a] Yea and like water your lies shall flow away;
31 [97:10b] For your riches shall not abide but speedily ascend from you; for ye have acquired it all in unrighteousness, and ye shall be given over to a great curse.

Chapter 30

Self-indulgence of sinners: sin originated by man: all sin recorded in Heaven: woes for the Sinners; woes pronounced on the godless, the lawbreakers: evil plight of sinners in the last days: further woes. (Enoch 98-99)

1 [98:1] And now I swear unto you, to the wise and to the foolish, for ye shall have manifold experiences on the earth.
2 [98:2a] For ye men shall put on more adornments than a woman, and colored garments more than a virgin:
3 [98:2b] In royalty and in grandeur and in power, and in silver and in gold and in purple, and in splendor and in food they shall be poured out as water.
4 [98:3a] Therefore they shall be wanting in doctrine and wisdom, and they shall perish thereby together with their possessions;
5 [98:3b] And with all their glory and their splendor, and in shame and in slaughter and in great destitution, their spirits shall be cast into the furnace of fire.
6 [98:4a] I have sworn unto you, ye sinners, as a mountain has not become a slave, and a hill does not become the handmaid of a woman; even so sin has not been sent upon the earth,
7 [98:4b] But man of himself has created it, and under a great curse shall they fall who commit it.
8 [98:5] And barrenness has not been given to the woman, but on account of the deeds of her own hands she dies without children.
9 [98:6] I have sworn unto you, ye sinners, by the Holy Great One, that all your evil deeds are revealed in the heavens, and that none of your deeds of oppression are covered and hidden.
10 [98:7] And do not think in your spirit nor say in your heart that ye do not know and that ye do not see that every sin is every day recorded in heaven in the presence of the Most High.
11 [98:8] From henceforth ye know that all your oppression wherewith ye oppress is written down every day till the day of your judgement.
12 [98:9] Woe to you, ye fools, for through your folly shall ye perish and ye transgress against the wise, and so good hap shall not be your portion.
13 [98:10a] And now, know ye that ye are prepared for the day of destruction:
14 [98:10b] Wherefore do not hope to live, ye sinners, but ye shall depart and die; for ye know no ransom;

15 [98:10c] For ye are prepared for the day of the great judgement, for the day of tribulation and great shame for your spirits.
16 [98:11a] Woe to you, ye obstinate of heart, who work wickedness and eat blood:
17 [98:11b] Whence have ye good things to eat and to drink and to be filled?
18 [98:11c] From all the good things which the Lord the Most High has placed in abundance on the earth;
19 [98:11d] Therefore ye shall have no peace.
20 [98:12a] Woe to you who love the deeds of unrighteousness: wherefore do ye hope for good hap unto yourselves?
21 [98:12b] Know that ye shall be delivered into the hands of the righteous, and they shall cut off your necks and slay you and have no mercy upon you.
22 [98:13] Woe to you who rejoice in the tribulation of the righteous; for no grave shall be dug for you.
23 [98:14] Woe to you who set at naught the words of the righteous; for ye shall have no hope of life.
24 [98:15] Woe to you who write down lying and godless words; for they write down their lies that men may hear them and act godlessly towards *their* neighbor.
25 [98:16] Therefore they shall have no peace but die a sudden death.
26 [99:1] ¶ Woe to you who work godlessness, and glory in lying and extol them: Ye shall perish, and no happy life shall be yours.
27 [99:2] Woe to them who pervert the words of uprightness, and transgress the eternal law, and transform themselves into what they were not into sinners: They shall be trodden under foot upon the earth.
28 [99:3] In those days make ready, ye righteous, to raise your prayers as a memorial, and place them as a testimony before the angels, that they may place the sin of the sinners for a memorial before the Most High.
29 [99:4] In those days the nations shall be stirred up, and the families of the nations shall arise on the day of destruction.
30 [99:5a] And in those days the destitute shall go forth and carry off their children, and they shall abandon them, so that their children shall perish through them:
31 [99:5b] Yea, they shall abandon their children *that are still* sucklings, and not return to them, and shall have no pity on their beloved ones.
32 [99:6] And again I swear to you, ye sinners, that sin is prepared for a day of unceasing bloodshed.
33 [99:7a] And they who worship stones, and grave images of gold and silver and wood and stone and clay,

34 [99:7b] And those who worship impure spirits and demons, and all kinds of idols not according to knowledge, shall get no manner of help from them.
35 [99:8] And they shall become godless by reason of the folly of their hearts, and their eyes shall be blinded through the fear of their hearts and through visions in their dreams.
36 [99:9] Through these they shall become godless and fearful; for they shall have wrought all their work in a lie, and shall have worshiped a stone: therefore, in an instant shall they perish.
37 [99:10] But in those days blessed are all they who accept the words of wisdom, and understand them, and observe the paths of the Most High, and walk in the path of His righteousness, and become not godless with the godless; for they shall be saved.
38 [99:11] Woe to you who spread evil to your neighbors; for you shall be slain in Sheol.
39 [99:12] Woe to you who make deceitful and false measures, and *to them* who cause bitterness on the earth; for they shall thereby be utterly consumed.
40 [99:13] Woe to you who build your houses through the grievous toil of others, and all their building materials are the bricks and stones of sin; I tell you ye shall have no peace.
41 [99:14] Woe to them who reject the measure and eternal heritage of their fathers and whose souls follow after idols; for they shall have no rest.
42 [99:15] Woe to them who work unrighteousness and help oppression, and slay their neighbors until the day of the great judgement.
43 [99:16a] For He shall cast down your glory, and bring affliction on your hearts, and shall arouse His fierce indignation, and destroy you all with the sword;
44 [99:16b] And all the holy and righteous shall remember your sins.

Chapter 31

The sinners destroy each other: judgement of the fallen angels: the safety of the righteous: further woes for the sinners.
(Enoch 100)

1 [100:1] And in those days in one place the fathers together with their sons shall be smitten, and brothers one with another shall fall in death till the streams flow with their blood.

2 [100:2a].For a man shall not withhold his hand from slaying his sons and his sons' sons, and the sinner shall not withhold his hand from his honored brother:
3 [100:2b] From dawn till sunset they shall slay one another.
4 [100:3] And the horse shall walk up to the breast in the blood of sinners, and the chariot shall be submerged to its height.
5 [100:4a] In those days the angels shall descend into the secret places and gather together into one place all those who brought down sin;
6 [100:4b] And the Most High will arise on that day of judgement to execute great judgement amongst sinners.
7 [100:5a] And over all the righteous and holy He will appoint guardians from amongst the holy angels to guard them as the apple of an eye, until He makes an end of all wickedness and all sin:
8 [100:5b] And though the righteous sleep a long sleep, they have naught to fear.
9 [100:6] And *then* the children of the earth shall see the wise in security, and shall understand all the words of this book, and recognize that their riches shall not be able to save them in the overthrow of their sins.
10 [100:7] Woe to you, Sinners, on the day of strong anguish, ye who afflict the righteous and burn them with fire: ye shall be requited according to your works.
11 [100:8] Woe to you, ye obstinate of heart, who watch in order to devise wickedness: therefore, shall fear come upon you and there shall be none to help you.
12 [100:9] Woe to you, ye sinners, on account of the words of your mouth, and on account of the deeds of your hands which your godlessness as wrought, in blazing flames burning worse than fire shall ye burn.
13 [100:10a] And now, know ye that from the angels He will inquire as to your deeds in heaven?
14 [100:10b] From the sun and from the moon and from the stars in reference to your sins; *and this* because upon the earth ye execute judgement on the righteous.
15 [100:11] And He will summon to testify against you every cloud and mist and dew and rain; for they shall all be withheld because of you from descending upon you, and they shall be mindful of your sins.
16 [100:12] And now give presents to the rain that it be not withheld from descending upon you, nor yet the dew, when it has received gold and silver from you that it may descend.
17 [100:13] When the hoarfrost and snow with their chilliness, and all the snowstorms with all their plagues fall upon you, in those days ye shall not be able to stand before them.

Chapter 32

Exhortation to the fear of God: all nature fears Him, but not the sinners; terrors of the day of judgement: the adverse fortunes of the righteous on the Earth. (Enoch 101-102)

1 [101:1] Observe the heaven, ye children of heaven, and every work of the Most High, and fear ye Him and work no evil in His presence.
2 [101:2] If He closes the windows of heaven, and withholds the rain and the dew from descending on the earth on your account, what will ye do then?
3 [101:3a] And if He sends His anger upon you because of your deeds, ye cannot petition Him;
4 [101:3b] For ye spake proud and insolent words against His righteousness, therefore ye shall have no peace.
5 [101:4] And see ye not the sailors of the ships, how their ships are tossed to and fro by the waves, and are shaken by the winds, and are in sore trouble?
6 [101:5] ¶ And therefore do they fear because all their goodly possessions go upon the sea with them, and they have evil forebodings of heart that the sea will swallow them and they will perish therein.
7 [101:6] Are not the entire sea and all its waters, and all its movements, the work of the Most High, and has He not set limits to its doings, and confined it throughout by the sand?
8 [101:7] And at His reproof it is afraid and dries up, and all its fish die and all that is in it; but ye sinners that are on the earth fear Him not.
9 [101:8a] Has He not made the heaven and the earth, and all that is therein?
10 [101:8b] Who has given understanding and wisdom to everything that moves on the earth and in the sea?
11 [101:9a] Do not the sailors of the ships fear the sea?
12 [101:9b] Yet sinners fear not the Most High.
13 [102:1a] ¶ In those days when He hath brought a grievous fire upon you, whither will ye flee, and where will ye find deliverance?
14 [102:1b] When He launches forth His Word against you will you not be affrighted and fear?
15 [102:2] And all the luminaries shall be affrighted with great fear, and all the earth shall be affrighted and tremble and be alarmed.
16 [102:3] And all the angels shall execute their commands and shall seek to hide themselves from the presence of the Great Glory, and the

children of earth shall tremble and quake; and ye sinners shall be cursed forever, and ye shall have no peace.
17 [102:4] Fear ye not, ye souls of the righteous, and be hopeful ye that have died in righteousness.
18 [102:5a] And grieve not if your soul into Sheol has descended in grief, and that in your life your body fared not according to your goodness,
19 [102:5b] But wait for the day of the judgement of sinners and for the day of cursing and chastisement.
20 [102:6] And yet when ye die the sinners speak over you: As we die, so die the righteous, and what benefit do they reap for their deeds?
21 [102:7a] Behold, even as we, so do they die in grief and darkness, and what have they more than we?
22 [102:7b] From henceforth we are equal.
23 [102:8a] And what will they receive and what will they see forever?
24 [102:8b] Behold, they too have died, and henceforth forever shall they see no light.
25 [102:9] I tell you, ye sinners, ye are content to eat and drink, and rob and sin, and strip men naked, and acquire wealth and see good days.
26 [102:10] Have ye seen the righteous how their end falls out, that no manner of violence is found in them till their death?
27 [102:11] Nevertheless, they perished and became as though they had not been, and their spirits descended into Sheol in tribulation.

Chapter 33

Different destinies of the righteous and the sinners: fresh objections of the sinners; assurances given to the righteous: admonitions to sinners and the falsifiers of the words of uprightness; God and the Messiah to dwell with Man. (Enoch 103-105)

1 [103:1] Now, therefore, I swear to you, the righteous, by the glory of the Great and Honoured and Mighty One in dominion, and by His greatness I swear to you:
2 [103:2] I know a mystery and have read the heavenly tablets, and have seen the holy books, and have found written therein and inscribed regarding them:
3 [103:3a] That all goodness and joy and glory are prepared for them, and written down for the spirits of those who have died in righteousness,

4 [103:3b] And that manifold good shall be given to you in recompense for your labours, and that your lot is abundantly beyond the lot of the living.
5 [103:4a] And the spirits of you who have died in righteousness shall live and rejoice,
6 [103:4b] And their spirits shall not perish, nor their memorial from before the face of the Great One unto all the generations of the world: wherefore no longer fear their contumely.
7 [103:5a] Woe to you, ye sinners, when ye have died, if ye die in the wealth of your sins, and those who are like you say regarding you:
8 [103:5b] Blessed are the sinners: they have seen all their days.
9 [103:6a] And how they have died in prosperity and in wealth, and have not seen tribulation or murder in their life;
10 [103:6b] And they have died in honour, and judgement has not been executed on them during their life.
11 [103:7] Know ye, that their souls will be made to descend into Sheol, and they shall be wretched in their great tribulation.
12 [103:8a] And into darkness and chains and a burning flame where there is grievous judgement shall your spirits enter;
13 [103:8b] And the great judgement shall be for all the generations of the world: woe to you, for ye shall have no peace.
14 [103:9] Say not in regard to the righteous and good who are in life: In our troubled days we have toiled laboriously and experienced every trouble, and met with much evil and been consumed, and have become few and our spirit small.
15 [103:10a] And we have been destroyed and have not found any to help us even with a word:
16 [103:10b] We have been tortured and destroyed, and not hoped to see life from day to day.
17 [103:11a] We hoped to be the head and have become the tail: We have toiled laboriously and had no satisfaction in our toil;
18 [103:11b] And we have become the food of the sinners and the unrighteous, and they have laid their yoke heavily upon us.
19 [103:12a] They have had dominion over us that hated us and smote us;
20 [103:12b] And to those that hated us we have bowed our necks, but they pitied us not.
21 [103:13] We desired to get away from them that we might escape and be at rest, but found no place whereunto we should flee and be safe from them.
22 [103:14] And are complained to the rulers in our tribulation, and cried out against those who devoured us, but they did not attend to our cries and would not hearken to our voice.

23 [103:15a] And they helped those who robbed us and devoured us and those who made us few;
24 [103:15b] And they concealed their oppression, and they did not remove from us the yoke of those that devoured us and dispersed us and murdered us,
25 [103:15c] And they concealed their murder and remembered not that they had lifted up their hands against us.
26 [104:1] ¶ I swear unto you, that in heaven the angels remember you for good before the glory of the Great One: and your names are written before the glory of the Great One.
27 [104:2] Be hopeful; for aforetime ye were put to shame through ill and affliction; but now ye shall shine as the lights of heaven, ye shall shine and ye shall be seen, and the portals of heaven shall be opened to you.
28 [104:3a] And in your cry, cry for judgement, and it shall appear to you;
29 [104:3b] For all your tribulation shall be visited on the rulers, and on all who helped those who plundered you.
30 [104:4] Be hopeful and cast not away your hopes for ye shall have great joy as the angels of heaven.
31 [104:5a] What shall ye be obliged to do?
32 [104:5b] Ye shall not have to hide on the day of the great judgement and ye shall not be found as sinners, and the eternal judgement shall be far from you for all the generations of the world.
33 [104:6a] And now fear not, ye righteous, when ye see the sinners growing strong and prospering in their ways:
34 [104:6b] Be not companions with them but keep afar from their violence for ye shall become companions of the hosts of heaven.
35 [104:7a] And, although ye sinners say: All our sins shall not be searched out and be written down;
36 [104:7b] Nevertheless they shall write down all your sins every day.
37 [104:8] And now I show unto you that light and darkness, day and night, see all your sins.
38 [104:9a] Be not godless in your hearts; lie not and alter not the words of uprightness nor charge with lying the words of the Holy Great One, nor take account of your idols;
39 [104:9b] For all your lying and all your godlessness issue not in righteousness but in great sin.
40 [104:10] And now I know this mystery, that sinners will alter and pervert the words of righteousness in many ways, and will speak wicked words, and lie, and practice great deceits, and write books concerning their words.

41 [104:11a] But when they write down truthfully all my words in their languages, and do not change or minish ought from my words but write them all down truthfully—all that I first testified concerning them. 1

42 [104:11b] Then, I know another mystery, that books will be given to the righteous and the wise to become a cause of joy and uprightness and much wisdom.

43 [104:13] And to them shall the books be given, and they shall believe in them and rejoice over them, and then shall all the righteous who have learnt therefrom all the paths of uprightness be recompensed.

44 [105:1] ¶ In those days the Lord bade (them) to summon and testify to the children of earth concerning their wisdom: Show *it* unto them; for ye are their guides, and a recompense over the whole earth.

45 [105:2] For I and My son will be united with them forever in the paths of uprightness in their lives; and ye shall have peace: Rejoice, ye children of uprightness! Amen.

Extract from the Prophecy of Enoch

Text taken from Old Testament Revision 1, pages 12-19. In December 1830- Fayette, New York. Joseph Smith had begun an inspired correction of the Holy Scriptures. In June 1830, he began to be assisted by Sidney Rigdon. During that time, Joseph received this revelation.

Chapter 34

Revelation to Enoch—he is called of God and sent forth.
(Genesis 7 in the IV/JST, Moses 6 in the Pearl of Great Price)

1 And Jared taught Enoch in all the ways of God; and this is the genealogy of the Sons of God which was the sons of Adam with whom God himself conversed;
2 And they were preachers of righteousness and spake and prophesied and called upon all men everywhere to repent, and faith was taught unto the children of men.
3 And it came to pass that all the days of Jared were nine hundred sixty and two years and he died and Enoch lived sixty and five years and begat Methuselah.
4 And it came to pass that Enoch journeyed in the land among the people;
5 And as he journeyed the Spirit of God descended out of heaven and abode upon him;
6 And he heard a voice from heaven saying: Enoch, my son, prophecy unto this people and say unto them: Repent!
7 For thus saith the Lord: I am angry with this people, and my fierce anger is kindled against them;
8 For their hearts have waxed hard, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes cannot see a far off;
9 And for these many generations even since the day I that I created them have they gone astray, and have denied me, and have sought their own councils in the dark;
10 And in their own abominations have they devised murder, and have not kept the commandment which I gave unto their father, Adam;
11 Wherefore they have foresworn themselves, and by their oaths they have eaten unto themselves death and an hell I have prepared for them if they repent not.
12 And this is a decree which I have sent forth in the beginning of the world, from mine own mouth from the foundation thereof;

13 And by the mouths of my servants, thy fathers, have I decreed it; even as it shall be sent forth in the world unto the end thereof.
14 And when Enoch had heard these words he bowed himself to the earth before the Lord and spake before the Lord saying: Why is it that I have found favour in thy sight?
15 And *I* am but a lad, and all the people hate me, for I am slow of speech; wherefore am I thy servant?
16 And the Lord said unto Enoch: Go forth and do as I have commanded thee and no man shall pierce thee,
17 Open thy mouth and it shall be filled, I will give thee utterance, for all flesh is in my hands, and I will do as seemeth me good.
18 Aay unto this people: Choose ye this day a God who made you!
19 Behold, my spirit is upon you, wherefore all thy words will I justify.
20 And the mountains shall flee before you, and the rivers shall turn from their course; and thou shalt abide in me, and I in you; therefore, walk with me.
21 And the Lord spake unto Enoch and said unto him: Anoint thine eyes with clay and wash them and thou shalt see.
22 And he did so, and he beheld the spirits that God had created, and he beheld also things which were not visible;
23 And from thenceforth came the saying abroad in the land a seer hath the Lord raised up unto his people.
24 And it came to pass that Enoch went forth in the land among the people standing upon the hills and the high places and cried with a loud voice testifying against their works.
25 And all men were offended because of him, and they came forth to hear him upon the high places saying unto the tent keepers:
26 Tarry thou here and keep the tents while we go yonder to behold the seer, for he prophesieth; and there is a strange thing in the land, a wild man hath come among us.

Chapter 35

Enoch preaches, teaches repentance retelling the story of Adam.
(Genesis 6 in the IV/JST, Moses 6-7 in the Pearl of Great Price, RLDS DaC 36)

1 And it came to pass when they heard him no man laid their hands on him, for fear came on all them that heard him, for he walked with God.

2 And there came a man unto him, whose name was Mahijah, and said unto him: tells us plainly who thou art, and from whence thou came.
3 And he saith unto them: I came out from the land of Cainan, the land of my fathers, a land of righteousness unto this day, and my father taught me in all the ways of God.
4 And it came to pass as I journeyed from the land of Cainan by the sea east I beheld a vision,
5 And lo, the heavens I saw, and the Lord spake with me, and gave me commandment;
6 Wherefore, for this cause to keep the commandment I speak forth these words.
7 And Enoch continued his speech saying: The Lord which spake with me, the same is the God of heaven;
8 And he is my God, and your God, and ye are my brethren; and why council ye yourselves and deny the God of heaven?
9 The heavens hath he made *and* the earth is his footstool, and the foundation thereof is his;
10 Behold, he laid it, and host of men hath he brought in upon the face thereof, and death hath come upon our fathers;
11 Nevertheless, we know them and cannot deny; and even the first of all we know, even Adam;
12 For a book of remembrance we have written among us, according to the pattern given by the finger of God; and it is given in our own language.
13 And as Enoch spake forth the words of God, the people trembled and could not stand before his presence;
14 And he saith unto them: because that Adam fell we are, and by his fall came death, and we are made partakers of misery;
15 And wo! Behold, Satan hath come among the children of men and tempteth them to worship him;
16 And men have become carnal, sensual, and devilish, and are shut out from the presence of God.
17 But God hath made known unto my fathers that all men must repent.
18 And he called upon our father, Adam, by his own voice, saying: I am God, I made the world, and men before they were.
19 And he also said unto him: If thou wilt turn unto me and hearken unto my voice and believe and repent of all their transgressions and be baptized —
20 Even by water in the name of mine only begotten Son, which is full of grace and truth, which is Jesus Christ, the only name which

shall be given under Heaven whereby salvation shall come unto the Children of men—
21 And *if* ye shall ask all things in his name, whatsoever ye shall ask it shall be given.
22 And our father Adam spake unto the Lord and said: Why is it that men must repent and be baptzed by water?
23 And the Lord said unto Adam: Behold, I have forgiven thee thy transgressions in the garden of Eden.
24 Hence came the saying abroad among the people that Christ hath atoned for original guilt, wherein the sins of the parents cannot be answered upon the heads of the Children, for they are whole from the foundation of the world.
25 And the Lord spake unto Adam saying: In as much as thy children are conceived in sin, even so when they begin to grow up, sin conceiveth in their hearts,
26 And they taste the bitter that they may know to prize the good;
27 And it is given unto them to know good from evil, wherefore they are agents unto themselves.
28 And I have given unto you another Law and commandment; wherefore teach it unto your children:
29 That all men everywhere must repent or they can in no wise inherit the kingdom of God; for no unclean thing can dwell there, or dwell in his presence;
30 For in the language of Adam, Man of Holiness is his name;
31 And the name of his only begotten is the Son of Man— even Jesus Christ—a righteous Judge which shall come.
32 I give unto you a commandment to teach these things freely unto your Children saying:
33 In as much as they were born into the world by the fall, which bringeth death by water and blood, and the spirit which I have made, and so became of dust—a living soul;
34 Even so ye must be born again of water and the spirit, and cleansed by blood—
35 Even the blood of mine only begotten, into the mysteries of the kingdom of Heaven, that ye may be Sanctified from all sin and enjoy the words of eternal life in this world and eternal life in the world to come, even immortal glory;
36 For by the water ye keep the commandment, by the spirit ye are justified, and by the blood ye are sanctified;
37 That in you is given the record of Heaven, the Comforter, the Peaceable things of immortal glory; the truth of all things, that which quickeneth all things, which maketh alive all things; that which

knoweth all things and hath all power according to wisdom mercy truth , justice, and judgement.
38 And now behold, I say unto you: This is the plan of salvation unto all men—the blood of mine only begotten which shall come in the meridian of time.
39 And behold, all things have its likeness, and all things are created and made to bear record of me; both things which are temporal and things which are spiritual things: which are in the Heavens above and things which are on the Earth;
40 And things which are in the Earth and things which are under the Earth—both above and beneath;
41 All things bear record of me.
42 And it came to pass when the Lord had spoken with Adam, our father, that Adam cried unto the Lord, and he was caught away by the Spirit of the Lord and was carried down into the water and was laid under the water and was brought forth out of the water; and thus he was baptized.
43 *And* the Spirit of God descended upon him, and thus he was born of the spirit and became quickened in the inner man.
44 And he heard a voice out of Heaven saying: Thou art baptized with fire & with the Holy Ghost, this is the record of the Father & the Son from henceforth and forever;
45 And thou art after the order of him who was without beginning of days or end of years, from all eternity to all eternity;
46 Behold, thou art one in me, a son of God, and thus may all become my sons. Amen.

Chapter 36

Enoch continues to preach, teaches repentance and baptism; Zion established.
(Genesis 7 in the Inspired Version/Joseph Smith Translation,
Moses 7 in the Pearl of Great Price, RLDS DaC 36)

1 And it came to pass that Enoch continued his speech saying: Behold our father Adam taught these things, and many have believed and become the sons of God;
2 And many have believed not and have perished in their sins and are looking forth with fear in torment, for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God to be poured out upon them.
3 And from that time forth, Enoch began to prophecy saying unto the people, that: As I was journeying and stood in the place Mahujah and I

cried unto the Lord there came a voice out of heaven saying: Turn ye and get ye upon the Mount Simeon.
4 And it came to pass that I turned and went upon the mount.
5 And as I stood upon the Mount I beheld the heavens open, and I was clothed upon with glory, and I saw the Lord;
6 He stood before my face, and he talked with me even as a man talketh one with another face to face,
7 And he saith unto me: Look and I will shew unto thee the world for the space of many genarations.
8 And it came to pass that I beheld in the vally of Shum, and lo! a great people which dwelt in tents which were the people of Shum.
9 And again, the Lord said unto me: Look!
10 And I looked towards the North, and I beheld the people of Canaan which dwelt in tents.
11 And the Lord said into me: Prophecy!
12 And I prophesied saying: Behold the people of Canaan, which are numerous, shall go forth in battle array against the people of Shum and shall slay them that they shall utterly be destroyed;
13 And the people of Canaan shall divide themselves in the land, and the land shall be barren and unfruitful, and none other people shall dwell there but the people of Canaan;
14 For behold, the Lord shall curse the land with much heat, and the barrenness thereof shall go forth forever.
15 And there was a blacknessness, *which is to say a wickedness*, come upon all the children of Canaan that they were despised among all people.
16 And it came to pass the Lord said unto me: Look!
17 And I looked and I beheld the land of Sharon and the land of Enoch and the land of Omner and the land of Heni and the land of Shem and the land of Haner and the land of Hanannihah and all the inhabitants thereof.
18 And the Lord said unto me: Go forth to this people and say unto them: Repent! Lest I shall come out and smite them with a curse, and they die!
19 And he gave unto me a commandment that I should baptize in the name of the Father and of the Son, which is full of grace and truth, and the Holy Ghost, which beareth record of the Father and the Son.
20 And it came to pass that Enoch continued to call upon all the people save it were the people of Canaan to repent;
21 And so great was the faith of Enoch that he led the people of God.
22 And their enemies came to battle against them and he spake the Word of the Lord and the earth trembled, and the Mountains fled, even according to his command;

23 And the rivers of water were turned out of their course, and the roar of the Lions was heard out of the wilderness;
24 And all nations feared greatly, so powerful was the word of Enoch, and so great was the power of the language which God had given him.
25 There also came up a land out of the depths of the sea.
26 And so great was the fear of the enemies of the people of God that they fled and stood afar off and went upon the land which came up out of the depths of the sea.
27 And the Nephilim of the land also stood afar off, and there went forth a curse upon all the people which fought against Go.
28 And from that time forth there was wars and bloodsheds among them, but the Lord came and dwelt with his people
29 And they dwelt in righteousness, the fear of the Lord was upon all nations, so great was the glory of the Lord which was upon his people
30 And the Lord blessed the land and they were blessed upon the Mountains, and upon the high places, and did flourish.
31 And the Lord called his people Zion because they were of one heart and of one mind and dwelt in righteousness, and there was no poor among them.
32 And Enoch continued his preaching in righteousness unto the people of God.
33 And it came to pass in his days that he built a City that was called the City of Holiness—even Zion.

Chapter 37

Zion is taken to heaven; the punishment of the wicked.
(Genesis 7 in the Inspired Version/Joseph Smith Translation,
Moses 7 in the Pearl of Great Price, RLDS DaC 36)

1 And it came to pass that Enoch talked with the Lord, and he said unto the Lord: Surely Zion shall dwell in safety forever!
2 But the Lord said unto Enoch: Zion *have* I blessed, but the residue of the people have I cursed.
3 And it came to pass that the Lord shewed unto Enoch all the inhabitants of the earth;
4 And he beheld and lo! Zion in process of time was taken up into heaven.
5 And the Lord said unto Enoch: Behold mine abode forever.
6 And Enoch also beheld the residue of the people, which were the sons of Adam, and they were a mixture of all the seed of Adam save it were the seed of Cain;

7 For the seed of Cain were black, *which is to say they were wicked, destitute of the light of God*, and had not place among them.
8 And after that Zion was taken up into heaven, Enoch beheld and lo all the nations of the earth were before him;
9 And there came generation upon generation and Enoch was high and lifted up even in the bosom of the Father and the Son of Man.
10 And behold, the powers of Satan was upon all the face of the earth, and he saw angles descending out of heaven;
11 And he heard a loud voice saying: Wo, wo be unto the inhabitants of the earth!
12 And he beheld Satan, and he had a great chain in his hand, and it veiled the whole face of the earth with darkness;
13 And he, *Satan*, looked up and laughed, and his Angles rejoiced.
14 And Enoch beheld Angles descending out of heaven bearing testimony of the Father and Son, and the Holy Ghost fell on many, and they were caught up by the powers of heaven into Zion.
15 And it came to pass that the God of heaven looked upon the residue of the people and he wept,
16 And Enoch bore record of it saying: How is it the heavens weep and shed fourth her tears as the rain upon the Mountains?
17 And Enoch said unto the heavens: How is it that thou canst weep seeing thou art holy, and from all eternity to all eternity?
18 And were it possible that man could number the particles of the earth, yea and millions of earths like this it, would not be a beginning to the number of thy creations;
19 And thy curtains are stretched out still, and yet thou art there, and thy bosom is there and also thou art just thou art merciful and kind forever!
20 Thou hast taken Zion to thine own bosom, from all thy creations, from all eternity to all eternity;
21 And naught but peace justice and truth is the habitation of thy throne, and mercy shall go before thy face and have no end; how is it that thou cansts weep?
22 The Lord said unto Enoch: Behold, these thy brethren, they are the workmanship of mine own hands, and I gave unto them their knowledge in the day I created them;
23 And in the garden of Eden gave I unto man his agency, and unto thy brethren have I said and also gave commandment that they should love one another, and that they should choose me, their Father;
24 But behold, they are without affection, and they hate their own blood;
25 And the fire of mine indignation is kindled against them, and in my hot displeasure!

26 *Thus* will I send in the floods upon them, for my fierce anger is kindled against them!
27 Behold, I am God, Man of Holiness is my name; Man of Council is my name; and Endless and Eternal is my name;
28 Also, wherefore I can stretch forth mine hands and hold all the creations which I have made, and mine eye can pierce them also.
29 And among all the workmanship of mine hand there has not been so great wickedness as among thy brethren;
30 But behold, their sins shall be upon the heads of their fathers, *and* Satan shall be their father, and misery shall be their doom;
31 And the whole heavens shall weep over them, even all the workmanship of mine hands.
32 Wherefore should not the heavens weep seeing these shall suffer?
33 But behold, these which thine eyes are upon shall perish in the floods.
34 And behold, I will shut them up in a prison have I prepared for them, and that which I have chosen hath plead before my face.
35 Wherefore he, the *Son of Man*, suffereth for their sins inasmuch as they will repent in the day that my chosen shall return unto me;
36 And until that day they shall be in torment, wherefore for this shall the heaven weep, yea, and all the workmanship of mine hands.

Chapter 38

Enoch is shown the punishment of the wicked; the resurrection and second coming of Christ; Zion in the last days.
(Genesis 7 in the Inspired Version/Joseph Smith Translation, Moses 7 in the Pearl of Great Price, RLDS DaC 36)

1 And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto Enoch and told Enoch all the doings of the children of men,
2 Wherefore, Enoch knew and looked upon their wickedness, and their misery, and wept, and stretched forth his arms and his heart swelled wide as eternity, and his bowels yearned, and all eternity shook.
3 And Enoch saw Noah also and his family, that the posterity of all the sons of Adam should be saved with a temporal salvation; wherefore he saw that Noah built an Ark.
4 And the Lord smiled upon it and held it in his own hands; but upon the residue of the wicked came the floods and swallowed them up.

5 And as Enoch saw thus he had bitterness of soul, and wept over his brethren, and said unto the heavens: I will refuse to be comforted!
6 But the Lord said unto Enoch: Lift up your heart and be glad and look!
7 And it came to pass that Enoch looked, and from Noah he beheld all the families of the earth.
8 And he cried unto the Lord saying: When shall the day of the Lord come?
9 When shall the blood of the righteous be shed, that all they that mourn may be sanctified and have eternal life?
10 And the Lord said: It shall be in the meridian of time, in the days of wickedness and vengeance;
11 And behold, Enoch saw the day of the coming of the Son of Man, even in the flesh,
12 And his soul rejoiced saying: The righteous is lifted up, and the Lamb is slain from the foundation of the world, and through faith I am in the bosom of the Father; and behold, Zion is with me!
13 And it came to pass that Enoch looked upon the earth and he heard a voice from the bowels thereof saying: Wo, wo is me, the mother of men!
14 I am pained, I am weary because of the wickedness of my children!
15 When shall I rest and be cleansed from the wickedness *and* filthiness which has gone forth out of me?
16 When will my creator sanctify me that I may rest?
17 And righteousness for a season abide upon my face?
18 And when Enoch heard the earth mourn he wept and cried unto the Lord saying: O Lord, wilt thou not have compassion upon the earth?
19 Wilt thou not bless the children of Noah?
20 And it came to pass that Enoch continued his cry unto the Lord saying: I ask thee, O Lord, in the name of thy only begotten, even Jesus Christ, that thou wilt have mercy upon Noah and his seed. that the earth might never more be covered by the floods.
21 And the Lord could not withhold, and he covenanted with Noah and swore unto him with an oath that he would stay the floods that he would call upon the children of Noah;
22 And he sent fourth an unalterable decree that a remnant of his seed should always be found among all nations while the earth should stand;
23 And the Lord said blessed him through whose seed Messiah should come;
24 For he saith I am Messiah, the king of Zion, the rock of heaven, which is broad as eternity;

25 And whoso cometh in at the gate and climbeth up by me shall never fall, wherefore blessed are they of which I have spoken for they shall come forth with songs of everlasting joy!
26 And it came to pass that Enoch cried unto the Lord saying: When the Son of Man cometh in the flesh shall the earth rest, I pray thee shew me these things.
27 And the Lord said unto Enoch: Look! and he looked and beheld the Son of man lifted up on the cross after the manner of men;
28 And he heard a loud voice and the heavens were veiled, and all the creation of God mourned;
29 And the earth groaned, and the rocks were rent, and the saints arose and was crowned at the right hand of the Son of Man with crowns of glory;
30 And as many of the spirits as were in prison came fourth and stood on the right hand of God,
31 And the remainder were reserved in chains of darkness until the Judgement of the great day.
32 And again, Enoch wept and cried unto the Lord again saying: When shall the earth rest?
33 And Enoch beheld the Son of Man ascend up unto the Father, and he called unto the Lord saying: Wilt thou not come again upon the earth?
34 For inasmuch as thou art God, and I know thee and thou hast sworn unto me, and commanded me that I should ask in the name of thine only begotten, thou hast made me and given unto me a right to thy throne;
35 And not of myself but through thine own grace; wherefore I ask thee if thou wilt not come again on the earth?
36 And the Lord said unto Enoch: As I live even so will I come in the last days, in the days of wickedness and vengeance, to fulfill the oath which I have made unto you concerning the children of Noah;
37 And the day shall come that the earth shall rest, but before that day the heavens shall be darkened, and a veil of darkness shall cover the earth;
38 And the heavens shall shake and also the earth, and great tribulations shall be among the children of men;
39 But my people will I preserve, and righteousness will I send down out of heaven, and truth will I send fourth out the earth to bear testimony of mine only begotten:
40 His resurrection from the dead, yea and also the resurrection of all men;

41 And righteousness and truth will I cause to sweep the earth as with the flood together out mine own elect from the four quarters of the earth unto a place which I shall prepare;
42 An holy City that my people may gird up their loins and be looking fourth for the time of my coming;
43 For there shall be my tabernacle, and it shall be called Zion—a New Jerusalem.
44 And the Lord said unto Enoch: Then shalt thou and all thy City meet them there, and we will receive them into our bosom, and they shall us see us;
45 And we will fall upon their necks and they shall fall upon our necks, and we will kiss each other and there shall be mine abode;
46 And it shall be Zion, which shall come fourth out of all the creations which I have made, and for the space of a thousand years shall the earth rest.
47 And it came to pass that Enoch saw the days of the coming of the son of man in the last days to dwell on the earth in righteousness for the space of a thousand years,
48 But before that day he saw great tribulation among the wicked, and he also saw the sea that it was troubled and men's hearts failing them looking forth with fear for the judgements of the Almighty God upon the wicked which should come upon the wicked.
49 And the Lord shewed Enoch all things, even unto the end of the world; and he saw the day of the righteous the hour of their redemption and received a fullness of joy.
50 And all the days of Zion in the days of Enoch were three Hundred and Sixty five years, and Enoch and all his people walked with God; and he, *God,* dwelt in the midst of Zion.
51 And it came to pass that Zion was, not for God received it up into his own bosom, and from thence went forth the saying Zion is fled. Amen.

The Appendix to the Book of Enoch

Fragment of the Book of Noah; another book which Enoch wrote for his son Methuselah and for those who will come after him, and keep the Law in the last days.

Chapter 39

Noah is born, his father, Lamech, is afraid; his grandfather, Methuselah, goes to Enoch, his great grandfather for answers; Enoch tells him of the flood. (Enoch 106-107)

1 [106:1] And after some days my son Methuselah took a wife for his son Lamech, and she became pregnant by him and bore a son.
2 [106:2a] And his body was white as snow and red as the blooming of a rose, and the hair of his head and his long locks were white as wool, and his eyes beautiful.
3 [106:2b] And when he opened his eyes, he lighted up the whole house like the sun, and the whole house was very bright.
4 [106:3] And thereupon he arose in the hands of the midwife, opened his mouth, and conversed with the Lord of righteousness.
5 [106:4] And his father, Lamech, was afraid of him and fled, and came to his father Methuselah.
6 [106:5a] And he said unto him: I have begotten a strange son, diverse from and unlike man, and resembling the sons of the God of heaven;
7 [106:5b] And his nature is different, and he is not like us, and his eyes are as the rays of the sun, and his countenance is glorious.
8 [106:6] And it seems to me that he is not sprung from me but from the angels, and I fear that in his days a wonder may be wrought on the earth.
9 [106:7] And now, my father, I am here to petition thee and implore thee that thou mayest go to Enoch, our father, and learn from him the truth, for his dwelling-place is amongst the angels.
10 [106:8a] And when Methuselah heard the words of his son, he came to me to the ends of the earth; for he had heard that I was there, and he cried aloud,
11 [106:8b] And I heard his voice and I came to him, and 1 said unto him: 'Behold, here am I, my son, wherefore hast thou come to me?
12 [106:9] And he answered and said: Because of a great cause of anxiety have I come to thee, and because of a disturbing vision have I approached.

13 [106:10a] And now, my father, hear me: unto Lamech my son there hath been born a son, the like of whom there is none,
14 [106:10b] And his nature is not like man's nature, and the color of his body is whiter than snow and redder than the bloom of a rose, and the hair of his head is whiter than white wool, and his eyes are like the rays of the sun, and he opened his eyes and thereupon lighted up the whole house.
15 [106:11] And he arose in the hands of the midwife, and opened his mouth and blessed the Lord of heaven.
16 [106:12a] And his father Lamech became afraid and fled to me, and did not believe that he was sprung from him, but that he was in the likeness of the angels of heaven;
17 [106:12b] And behold I have come to thee that thou mayest make known to me the truth.
18 [106:13] And I, Enoch, answered and said unto him: The Lord will do a new thing on the earth, and this I have already seen in a vision, and make known to thee that in the generation of my father Jared some of the angels of heaven transgressed the word of the Lord.
19 [106:14] And behold, they commit sin and transgress the law, and have united themselves with women and commit sin with them, and have married some of them, and have begot children by them.
20 [106:17a] And they shall produce on the earth Nephilim, not according to the spirit, but according to the flesh;
21 [106:17b] And there shall be a great punishment on the earth, and the earth shall be cleansed from all impurity.
22 [106:15] Yea, there shall come a great destruction over the whole earth, and there shall be a deluge and a great destruction for one year.
23 [106:16] And this son who has been born unto you shall be left on the earth, and his three children shall be saved with him: when all mankind that are on the earth shall die; *yea*, he and his sons shall be saved.
24 [106:18a] And now make known to thy son Lamech that he who has been born is in truth his son, and call his name Noah;
25 [106:18b] For he shall be left to you, and he and his sons shall be saved from the destruction which shall come upon the earth on account of all the sin and all the unrighteousness, which shall be consummated on the earth in his days.
26 [106:19] And after that there shall be still more unrighteousness than that which was first consummated on the earth; for I know the mysteries of the holy ones; for He, the Lord, has showed me and informed me, and I have read *them* in the heavenly tablets.
27 [107:1] ¶ And I saw written on them that generation upon generation shall transgress, till a generation of righteousness arises,

and transgression is destroyed, and sin passes away from the earth, and all manner of good comes upon it.
28 [107:2] And now, my son, go and make known to thy son Lamech that this son, which has been born, is in truth his son, and that *this* is no lie.
29 [107:3] And when Methuselah had heard the words of his father Enoch—for he had shown to him everything in secret—
30 [107:3b] He returned and showed *them* to him and called the name of that son Noah; for he will comfort the earth after all the destruction.

Chapter 40

Noah is born, his father, Lamech, is afraid; his grandfather, Methuselah, goes to Enoch, his great grandfather for answers; Enoch tells him of the flood. (Enoch 106-107)

1 [108:1] Another book which Enoch wrote for his son Methuselah and for those who will come after him and keep the law in the last days.
2 [108:2] Ye who have done good shall wait for those days till an end is made of those who work evil; and an end of the might of the transgressors.
3 [108:3a] And wait ye indeed till sin has passed away, for their names shall be blotted out of the book of life and out of the holy books,
4 [108:3b] And their seed shall be destroyed forever, and their spirits shall be slain,
5 [108:3c] And they shall cry and make lamentation in a place that is a chaotic wilderness, and in the fire shall they burn; for there is no earth there.
6 [108:4a] And I saw there something like an invisible cloud; for by reason of its depth I could not look over,
7 [108:4b] And I saw a flame of fire blazing brightly, and things like shining mountains circling and sweeping to and fro.
8 [108:5a] And I asked one of the holy angels who was with me and said unto him: What is this shining thing?
9 [108: 5b] For it is not a heaven, but only the flame of a blazing fire, and the voice of weeping and crying and lamentation and strong pain.
10 [108:6] And he said unto me: This place which thou seest—here are cast the spirits of sinners and blasphemers, and of those who work wickedness, and of those who pervert everything that the Lord hath

spoken through the mouth of the prophets—*even* the things that shall be.

11 [108:7a] For some of them are written and inscribed above in the heaven, in order that the angels may read them and know that which shall befall the sinners, and the spirits of the humble, and of those who have afflicted their bodies, and been recompensed by God;

12 [108:7b-8} And of those who have been put to shame by wicked men, *those* who love God and loved neither gold nor silver nor any of the good things which are in the world but gave over their bodies to torture.

13 [108:9a] *Those* who, since they came into being, longed not after earthly food, but regarded everything as a passing breath, and lived accordingly,

14 [108:9b] And the Lord tried them much, and their spirits were found pure so that they should bless His name.

15 [108:10a] And all the blessings destined for them I have recounted in the books.

16 [108:10b] And he hath assigned them their recompense, because they have been found to be such as loved heaven more than their life in the world,

17 [108:10c] And though they were trodden under foot of wicked men, and experienced abuse and reviling from them and were put to shame, yet they blessed Me.

18 [108:11] And now I will summon the spirits of the good who belong to the generation of light, and I will transform those who were born in darkness, who in the flesh were not recompensed with such honor as their faithfulness deserved.

19 [108:12] And I will bring forth in shining light those who have loved My holy name, and I will seat each on the throne of his honor.

20 [108:13a] And they shall be resplendent for times without number; for righteousness is the judgement of God;

21 [108:13b] For to the faithful He will give faithfulness in the habitation of upright paths.

22 [108:14] And they shall see those who were, born in darkness led into darkness, while the righteous shall be resplendent.

23 [108:15] And the sinners shall cry aloud and see them resplendent, and they indeed will go where days and seasons are prescribed for them.

Sefer Melchizedek

The secret knowledge given first from the temple of YHVH to Melchizedek—the king of peace, king of heaven upon the earth, the great High Priest after the order of the Son of God; then from Melchizedek to Abraham: Amen.

Chapter 1

An introduction and brief history of Melchizedek.

1 Melchizedek was a man of faith who wrought righteousness;
2 And when he was but a child, he feared Ha'Elohim, and stopped the mouths of lions, and quenched the violence of fire.
3 And thus, having been approved of YHVH, he was ordained *Kohen Gadol* after the order of the covenant which YHVH made with Enoch,
4 It being after the order of the Son of God, which order came not by man, nor the will of man, neither by father nor mother, neither by beginning of days nor end of years, but of YHVH Elohim.
5 And it was delivered unto men by the calling of the voice of Ruach Elohim, according to His own will, unto as many as believed on HaShem (*The Name*);
6 For YHVH, having sworn unto Enoch and unto his seed with an oath by Himself that everyone being ordained after this order and calling should have power, by faith, to break mountains,
7 To divide the seas, to dry up waters, to turn them out of their course,
8 To put at defiance the armies of nations, to divide the earth, to break every band,
9 To stand in the presence of YHVH, to do all things according to His will, according to His command, and to subdue principalities and powers;
10 And this by the will of the Son of God which was from before the foundation of the world.
11 And men *and women* having this faith, coming up unto this order of God, were translated and taken up into heaven.
12 ¶ And now, Melchizedek was a High Priest of this order; therefore, he obtained peace in Salem and was called the king of peace.

13 And his people wrought righteousness, and obtained heaven, and sought for the city of Enoch which Elohim had before taken, separating it from the earth, having reserved it unto the latter days, or the end of the world.
14 And YHVH hath said, and sworn with an oath: That the heavens and the earth should come together, and the sons of Elohim should be tried so as by fire.
15 ¶ And this Melchizedek, having thus established righteousness, was called the king of heaven by his people, or, in other words, the king of peace;
16 Him who lifted up his voice, and blessed Abram, being the High Priest and the keeper of the storehouse of El Elyon;
17 Him whom El Elyon had appointed to receive tithes for the poor.
18 Wherefore, even Abram, who was born again unto YHVH Elohim as Abraham, the father of all of covenant peoples of YHVH, paid unto him tithes of all that he had, of all the riches which he possessed, which Ha Elohim had given him more than that which he did need.
19 And because of his humility, YHVH blessed Abram and gave unto him riches, and honor, and lands for an everlasting possession, according to the covenant which he had made and according to the blessing wherewith Melchizedek had blessed him.
20 ¶ And Melchizedek, king of Salem, brought forth bread and wine; and he broke bread and blessed it; and he blessed the wine, he being the great High Priest of the most high God.
21 And he gave to Abram, after he blessed him, saying: Blessed Abram, thou art a man of the most high of Elohim, possessor of heaven and of earth;
22 And blessed is the name of the most high Elohim, which hath delivered thine enemies into thine hand.
23 ¶ And Melchizedek, the king of Salem, lifted up his voice and blessed Abram with secret wisdoms, and taught him to guard them until they come forth unto the world, by the will of God, at the last days.

Chapter 2

Melchizedek tells Abraham of his past and his love of the City of Enoch.

1 And he said unto Abram: I, Melchizedek, the king of Salem, king of peace, descendant of Shem, known by my people as the king of heaven upon the Earth, High Priest (*Kohen Gadol*) of YHVH Elohim:
2 I leave with you, Abram, the Word of YHVH unto you, to teach from generation to generation;
3 I, who desire to be taken up into the city of Enoch, along with my people, the people of Salem—here and now I set down for the guidance and teaching for those that are to come after.
4 ¶ And I speak with certainty and most truly these things that have been passed down from the time of Adam until now by my fathers.
5 We that are below who shall join with those above, and those with thee shall join together again so that they produce a single priesthood, a most wonderful blessing from Alohykm unto mankind.
6 ¶ In the great city of Enoch, taken unto Ha'Elohim, these truths were taught openly, and without fear:
7 Now, as the men of this world die and await judgment, the mighty ones of the city of Enoch, which is Zion, do live and die not;
8 But behold, they were taken up from the earth to renew their lives eternal in the kingdom Celestial where the Tree of Life grows eternally upward.
9 And as the whole universe was brought forth from One by the Word of God, who is YHVH, who is Chesed (*mercy*), so also all things are regenerated eternally from YHVH, according to the mercies of Alohykm.
10 ¶ And this city has Avinu (*our Father*) of knowledge for a Father, and the wisdom of the Tree of Life for a mother:
11 And the city was carried by the air, as if in a womb, after it was finished being nursed by the earth,
12 And this because YHVH is the cause of all perfection, of all things throughout the universe.
13 And it shall come to pass that those that dwell in this city shall attain the highest perfection of powers Celestial when, in the end times, it shall be returned back unto the earth.
14 ¶ And even I did at the first walk in the dark, not knowing the way that led into light, looking for the path to this city that dwells with Alohykm;

15 But YHVH did bless me, and I have ascended from the darkness (*or abyss*) by the power of Ruach HaKodesh into the light;
16 And thus my strength and the power of the priesthood, or in other words by the power of God, has been awakened and renewed.
17 ¶ Now for a time, I reign among men in the city of Salem and the lands around bout;
18 And is shall soon come to pass that we too shall leave, by the Grace and power of YHVH, who is our Elohim; and thou shalt know me no more.
19 But in the last days it shall come to pass that I and my people shall return again with the Messiah, full in the Priesthood of the Son of God, requiring for YHVH an account of those who were left behind.
20 ¶ And before that day shall I come to stir the healing waters and distribute here upon the earth once again the keys of the Priesthood to organize mankind in the name of YHVH once again,
21 And then shall men and women be baptized in water and fire, that Aviad shall fulfill through the Messiah[a] *Jesus Christ*[b] the destiny of Adam, of mankind—the very hope and endowment of all.
22 ¶ And I shall descend with the Son of Man in that day from the City of Enoch:
23 What went from the earth into the sky shall descend again to the earth, and recognize that the things above and of things below are one, for they do belong to YHVH;
24 Therefore, it is He that possess the glory of Alohykm Celestial who's keys we shall carry, and beyond this degree no one shall climb any further.
25 The priesthood and authority of Kedem Qadam Kadmon Himself presently comes forth stronger by reasons of this fortitude;
26 The Holy Priesthood after the Order of the Son of Man subdues all earthly and heavenly bodies surely,
27 Whether before or beyond the veil, the Son of Man shall penetrate them, and upon Elohim shall the glory be given.
28 ¶ Then beware, O men of the Earth: If ye shall betray these teachings for priestcraft, YHVH, Ha'Elohim, and the Sons of the Morning shall cast ye down from your high estate, into the darkness from whence ye came.
29 Betray not these secrets to the men and women of this world, lest my curse, which is the curse of Alohykm, even a great curse, shall fall upon thee.
30 Remember and heed my words, for surely will I return again at the last days and require of thee that which ye have been entrusted to guard.

31 ¶ And, even in the meridian of time shall I be reborn, at that time when the Son of Man shall open the graves, and from beyond death shall I return;
32 And when the Messiah shall come, and shall be given unto death by his friends and shall rise from death, for YHVH is God[c], creator of all things, and shall subdue even life and death;
33 At that time shall I too return, and again at the last day, and at other times as sent by YHVH, to bring to the earth the keys of each generation, from generation to generation;
34 So shall I do, rewarding as ye have requited, by fulfilling the commandments of God and his Priesthood,
35 Or punishing those that sell what is precious unto YHVH to unworthy men and women with their whorings and priestcrafts.
36 ¶ Separate shall I the earth from the fire, yea as it ascends from earth to the heavens;
37 And again, it descends to earth and receives the force of things for good and for evil, depending on the heart of man.
38 By this means of separation ye shall have the glory of the whole world, and thereby all obscurity shall fly from you;
39 But so too shall the Wisdom of Alohykm be kept hidden from thee, if thou give in to the darkness of mankind.

Notes:

a. Literally "anointed one" in the Hebrew or in Egyptian," one to anoint." This is saying in one language that Jesus is anointed, while in another that he will anoint. But both words mean the same: messiah.
b. This name, Jesus Christ, was not on the brass plates, added by inspiration.
c. Hebrew "El," Egyptian "Ka."

Chapter 3

The teachings of Enoch.

1 Great were the people of the YHVH Shalom in the city of Enoch, listening as they did to the teachings passed down from the ancient of days:
2 Great knowledge and great wisdom had they, beyond the corruption of the world around them;
3 Knowing the wisdom of old, seeking from within the heart of Elohim YHVH, the Eternal Alohykm, knowledge that belonged to mankind's youth coming out from the garden.

4 Wise were they with Elohim's wisdom, yea they were wise with the wisdom of Ha'Elohim[a], these Sons of the morning and Daughters of light; yea, the very angels didst dwell among them within their city;
5 Strong were they with the power of Priesthood; drawn from that eternal fire that is Ruach HaKodesh—not the fires of this world which only cast shadows among the darkness.
6 ¶ And of all these, greatest among the children of mankind was their High Priest, Enoch *and one of his wives, the High Priestess*[b]:
7 Keepers of the great temple, prophets and seers, teachers of the children of Light who dwelt within the city, driving out the priestcraft of mankind which inhabited the lands around them:
8 Mouthpiece of YHVH was Enoch; he who walked and talked with Ha'Elohim, spoke he to the kings of men with the Voice that must be obeyed.
9 ¶ From this wisdom passed down from my fathers, grew I from a child into manhood, being taught by my fathers the elder mysteries, until in time there grew within me the tree of knowledge and the fire of wisdom, until it burst into a consuming flame.
10 And I desired nothing, neither food nor sleep: naught but the attainment of wisdom.
11 ¶ One great day the command came from them that I be brought before Kohen Gadol, the High Priest of YHVH[c] in the court of my fathers.
12 Few there were at that time among the children of men who had looked upon that mighty face and lived;
13 For some that see are found wanting; and in them the fire brings madness, heresy, or death.
14 Yet was I chosen from the sons of men, taught *in* the ways of YHVH by Kohen Gadol so that the purpose of HaShem might be fulfilled by the passing of wisdom and knowledge; yea, and of knowledge and understanding:
15 For not as the teachings and wisdom of mankind are the teachings of the Sons of the Morning:
16 Yet I wast chosen from the sons of men, taught the ways of YHVH by Kohen Gadol that the purpose of *The Name* might be fulfilled by the passing of knowledge and wisdom; yea and of *wisdom* and understanding.
17 ¶ Many years did I dwell in the Temple, learning ever and yet ever more wisdom, until I too was filled with the light emitted from the great fire (*representing the Sefirot or emanations of God*).
18 And he taught me the path to Ha'Elohim, the path of the Sons of the Morning, yea even the Sons of Light, even they that cried out with joy at the creation.

19 These secrets share I with you, Abram; for the lips of wisdom are closed, except to the ears of understanding;
20 For where the teacher walks in the paths of YHVH, the ears of those ready for his teachings are open;
21 Likewise, when the ears of the student are ready to hear, then cometh a teacher to fill them with wisdom.

Notes:

a. "Wise were they with Elohim's wisdom, yea they were wise with the wisdom of the gods" these are two equally valid translations of the same texts. The translation is duplicated because the intent is lost when translating to English
b. "and his wife, the High Priestess" not on the brass plates, added by inspiration
c. "Kohen Gadol, the High Priest of YHVH" literally: "the High Priest, the High Priest of YHVH"

Chapter 4

The teachings of the temple.

1 In this manner was the world created:
2 First was everything, and everything always was; and thus all is and ever was En Sof, or everlasting:
3 And this was Alohykm[a] and Ieshurun[b], and the beasts, and the plants, and the rocks, and the wind.
4 Yea, it was all; yet it was as nothing, for it was void; and darkness was, as it were, upon the face of the deep where dwelt as it were a great pool of living water:
5 And the first stage of man, the eternal man adam kadmon[c] that was never born and shall never die, was brooding upon the face of the waters.
6 ¶ And Elohim moved upon the face of the waters, and drew them up, the intelligences, and they are gods[d], the very sons and daughters of Elohim; even the Sons of the Morning and the Daughters of Light.
7 From the void sprang everything; and there was never a time when there was truly nothing, forever and eternal are we, and ever and eternal is YHVH.
8 And these gathered and organized, and light shined upon the face of the darkness, but darkness knew not the light.
9 Thus are the five stages of man: Intelligence, Spirit, Flesh, Soul, and Resurrected Being; the final being all stages in one, a Morning Star—forever complete.

10 Thus are the incarnations of man, and the arrangements to follow this road are hidden from the eyes that cannot see.
11 ¶ For this reason, we are calling Elohim the one God: one in essence, yet many in aspect; or many in being, yet one in priesthood;
12 The highest being two: both male and female[e], thus being four, and again seen as five as their unity is one, the fifth being Keter[f].
13 In this trinity is hidden the knowledge and wisdom of the whole world,
14 And through the mercy and justice of Alohykm shall we gain understanding, and by understanding, a glimpse of the Crown of Elohim[g].
15 The children of god[d] descend to the earth to become sons of men; to die as princes, and ascend from the earth to the heavens, and become rulers over that which is above and that which is below.
16 ¶ Deep I bowed in homage before YHVH receiving as my gift, the Key of Life, which is knowledge given with wisdom, even the very Tree of Life.
17 A great sin it is to eat from the tree unbeckoned, yet beckoned was I;
18 Thus to the stars and the City of Enoch shall I too one day journey, then space and time[h] shall be as naught;
19 For after drinking deep of the cup of wisdom, I have looked into the hearts of men, and there I found greater mysteries; as for only by losing myself in the service of others[i] was my joy made full.
20 And only in the truth of YHVH can our souls be filled, and the flame within lit eternally, as mankind too is filled with Ruach HaKodesh.
21 And, through the ages has the Holy Priesthood, after the Order of the Son of God lived and been passed down by my fathers, and now from my fathers unto you, Abram.
22 And I, seeing those around me taste of the cup of death and return again unto the light of life, even the bosom of Alohykm, know that this life is but a fleeting memory.
23 And thus, gradually I learned from the wisdom of my fathers, knowledge passed down from the City of Enoch;
24 This wisdom filled me with waves of consciousness that had been one with me in a prior incarnation, only to be replaced by spawn of a lower star here upon the earth.

Notes:

a. Means “gods of us or our gods” with male singular but female plural, just like Elohim
b. Those who stand upright of the path to God, the righteous ones

c. "The eternal man" and "Adam Kadmon" these are two equally valid translations of the same text; the translation is duplicated because the intent is lost when translating to English.
d. Hebrew: "elohim"
e. "the Divine Masculine and the Divine Feminine"
f. Keter: Hebrew "the crown," Egyptian "the All"
g. Crown of Elohim: literally "Elohim Keter"
h. Literally "place and eternal" or "place and eternity"
i. Literally "servant I of men"

Chapter *5*

The secrets of the temple.

1 In obedience to the Torah, the teachings of Kohen Gadol, the High Priest and keeper of the secrets of the temple, grew in my heart like a flower.

2 And he taught me the true things of YHVH Alohykm, Turning me away from the darkness to the thoughts of the Most High, speaking the Word, calling the power (*light*) from on High.

3 And there in the temple he taught me of our father, Adam, the first man to whom our Alohykm revealed His light and knowledge.

4 ¶ Adam was born under a star (*a comet?*) as it shot across the night sky, only to vanish and reappear upon his death.

5 The man, Adam, was known at birth by a prophecy to be a usurper of the gods of men, gods from deep within Earth's heart;

6 And the sons of men heard of his birth, and upon hearing they ordered their priests to change the fire that burned in charge to their gods to sacrifice all the children born under this star.

7 ¶ Now this fire represented the fire that burns eternally (*hell*), changing and shifting, casting shadows upon the hearts of mankind;

8 And this great fire bows to and fro, changing its direction by every draft of wind;

9 But Adam was made from the dust of the Earth, given wisdom Chokhmah and the breath of life, which is the very knowledge (Da'at) of Alohykm.

10 And the man Adam was blessed by the Father of the Heavens and nourished by the Mother in the Earth, and he was raised in a cave, hidden from the faces of men.

11 ¶ And as Adam grew, he first worshiped the shadows that gave him food and warmth, but in time he saw that these were false *gods*, for they were but the shadows of man;

12 And then he worshiped the men, but as time went on, he saw them age, and knew they were like him, but flesh.

13 And when he saw the light coming from outside the cave, and he worshipped the light, and O how he longed to be in its warmth!

14 ¶ And it came to pass that one day be escaped the cave, still a boy, and saw that the light came from the sun, and so he worshiped the sun; but that night, the sun died and so he worshiped the moon:

15 And in the morning, he saw that the sun was resurrected, and so he worshiped the sun again.

16 But the sun was hidden from him later in that day, and the rain washed Adam clean, and he knew that these light bringers were not gods, neither the sun nor the moon.

17 ¶ And Adam escaped away and was gathered up by YHVH and taken to a garden in the bosom of his true mother, Eden; and here, in the garden was he given wives, and taught the ways of Alohykm.

18 And here he was given the seven keys of YHVH, the very keys of creation.

Chapter 6

The Keys of Creation.

1 And the first key of creation opens the prisons shut up by death, for when in harmony it divides the light from the darkness, for there must be opposition in all things:

2 And by this key is the soul given birth in man, being born anew from the seed planted in the heart of Adam, the spirit and the flesh birth the soul within the body, and these three: the spirit, flesh, and soul, become as one.

3 And in the first key is the hidden stone, the new name, given that shall be as a sign to men *and women*; an urim and thummim of the heart:

4 This urim and thummim burns bright for it contains the Holy Spirit, a vast sea of glass and fire, for all things of the mystery here shall be revealed.

5 And the first key brings harmony to the three sides of mankind, eyes might be open to the visions of YHVH, to prepare mankind to speak Word of YHVH, and to take action in uplifting one another; for only in the light might we see truth and seek justice that the creation of YHVH be fulfilled.

6 Take heed, therefore, and do not be deceived; for Alohykm is Truth, and YHVH is Mercy that mankind might be the hands and do the works to unite the body and the spirit:

7 And this is the first keys, and this is the first purification of the soul, that mankind shall shine in whiteness, for the work of the first key is never ending.

8 ¶ And the second key is the separation of the firmament; and this separation made by raising up filter to purify the terrestrial into the celestial through the firmament;

9 And the celestial rains upon the earth, to feed the waters terrestrial and purify the earth and all life thereupon.

10 And the rainwater is given to temper the fire of judgment, that mankind might find supplication before YHVH Alohykm.

11 None may reveal this secret of the firmament but they who are given of God to understand it, and even then, only by prayer to Alohykm shall make clear the truth;

12 For the knowledge of this great mystery is an endowment from the heavens, and this second key may only be used by those that have found the light of the first:

13 And neither force, nor reasoning, nor any of the ways of mankind shall give them access;

14 Therefore, let them read the writings of our fathers and let them meditate upon the things of YHVH Alohykm;

15 And most importantly, let them pray; for the mystery of the endowment may be made clear by the works in prayer and fasting in meditation upon El Elyon.

16 And without supplication the firmament cannot be created, and the waters cannot be divided from the waters;

17 And this conversion is the only way whereby our souls brood in the mother's womb;

18 Therefore, know the light of the first key, which dissolves the darkness with peace, is purified by the second key, in the water in the great sea of the creation.

19 And this water shall become the very wine of the vine which we do here drink as the water of life, but is to the darkness the bitterest of vinegar to the tongue:

20 Taste therefore the sweetness of the wine upon thy tongues, and by its digestion ye shall be purified, for the work of the second key is never ending.

21 ¶ And the third key is the separation of the dry ground from the water, for as the light is the creation by the fire of judgment and the waters are the mercy of YHVH, the ground is our mother the Earth, *the very Shekinah*, and the plants shall bear fruit in us of the works of Alohykm.

22 And when the dry ground appears, the soul is birthed from the womb, and grass and herbs shall mankind eat thereof that he shall not faint;

23 For there is no lacking of light and water upon the earth for nourishment if we possess this, the third key; and the heavens are no longer closed to us.

24 And a spring of living water shall come out of the stone, to nourish the fruit of the vine that we might make our wine, for nothing shall come from the earth which is not for our good;

25 For that all which is unclean is made perfect by the very fire hidden in the center of Eden, washed by the Holy Spirit.

26 It has been said that there is nothing is more contrary than fire and water, than judgment and mercy;

27 Yet Alohykm has stated that we must make peace between us and our enemies, and radically love one another vehemently:

28 Therefore, all things must be purged by fire and by water to be brothers and sisters in the earth, which had ascended with them;

29 Therefore, the body must be washed in the water, and the spirit cleansed in the fire for Eden be made whole in humidity, and this for every generation:

30 For the spirit of mankind's desire is Eve, the body of mankind's actions is Adam; and these two, joined together replenish the desires of the human race;

31 For these two are of the same nature, yet differ in their genders, and this must be to ascend as one Adam together, soul, spirit, and body;

32 And after purification, at last these are inseparably, united their most noble and perfected form through the third key.

33 And behold the water; it is a living spring which comes from out of the stone; miracle of nature!

34 To the wicked the water which cometh fourth from out of this stone is as vinegar,

35 To the uninitiated it is wine upon which they who drink become intoxicated and sleep;

36 But to the enlightened it is truth: knowledge and wisdom from the foundation rising up to the crown.

37 Wherefore, this third key is given many names: some call it wine, some oil, some vinegar; but it is the very water of life:

38 Use it therefore to cleanse thine own eyes, and thy face, and thy bodies,

39 For it is necessary to clean the body in humility, to remove the blackness, and make a perfect union of the earth and the heavens.

40 And this is the soul, inseparably uniting the spirit and the flesh, the heavens and the earth, for the work of the third key is never ending.

41 ¶ And the fourth key is the shining of the lights of the firmament to guide us in our rebirth; for in the stars is the Word of Alohykm written and the will of YHVH known.

42 Doubt not the signs of the heavens, but know that they shall neither move thy feet nor thy hearts;

43 For the writing in the heavens will guide the righteous watchers to the land of promise, the wisemen to the king, and the soul it shall cause to produce fruits that cannot be purchased at any price.

44 Write then, the messages of the heavens and watch their motions and see how they appear in motion about the earth, for the work of the fourth key is never ending.

45 ¶ And the fifth key is the creation of life in the waters, and the air; and the fish are our desire for mercy, and the fowl are our desire for knowledge and wisdom, and as the foul eat the fish, understanding is given upon the earth.

46 The perfecting of the earth is the perfecting of our desires upon it, and the greatest of these is to reach up, as the fowl of the air, and fly unto the heavens.

47 And the union of spirit and the flesh are washed clean by the desires that grow in the seas, the water taken up to the heavens to be purified and rain back down to cleans the earth.

48 As the soul submits to the will of El Elyon, the flesh and the spirit are cleansed and housed anew in the soul;

49 Therefore, watch thy desires that they do not fly so free that they forget to feed in the waters, and to nest upon the earth, for the work of the fifth key is never ending.

50 ¶ And the sixth key is the creation of animals of the land, and of mankind within Adam, who is Eve,

51 And together they walk straight without twisting and winding along vain roads on to which many stray and are found wondering.

52 And these animals of the earth are our desires at every level; but the highest desire is that of Adam and Eve;

53 For in these are our will to bestow and our desire to receive all the things of YHVH Alohykm.

54 And we have been given these keys of creation that we might gain experience;

55 For experience is both wisdom and knowledge, and truth; and in truth shall understanding be reviled, for there must be opposition in all things for the work of the sixth key is never ending.

56 ¶ And the seventh key is the sabbath for the Shabbat is life everlasting and it is never ending.

Chapter 7

The Keys of Knowledge and Wisdom.

1 And Melchizedek blessed Abraham and Sarah, saying: I, Melchizedek, king of Salem, king of peace, give thee wisdom, gained from Shekinah, the divine Mother, and I give thee knowledge, gained from Avinu, the Divine Father;

2 And I give thee power in the mercy of the Son of Man, and I give unto thee strength in Ruach HaKodesh, the light and the Breath of the Divine fire.

3 And here is wisdom: To know the name, the true name, infinite and eternal; for the Son of Man is as a star bound to a body, freed through the strife of this life;

4 And only by the struggling and toil of this world, the fallen creation, shall the star within be born, a new life.

5 Remember, therefore, that all which exists upon this earth is nothing more than that which has always existed, and that which has passed into being, and thou too, for there are no exceptions.

6 ¶ And freely do I give these endowments (*or gifts*) to the children of the Son of Man,

7 That they too might share this same understanding to shine as a divine light from the foundation of the world, to cut through the veil of darkness that lies in the hearts of mankind.

8 ¶ And in Asyma, the Mother, power is wisdom; She is Eden, the earth; all alike is one, thus perfecting the whole;

9 Therefore, be thou not proud, O man, in thy wisdom of the earth, for without humility it is ignorance to the wise.

10 ¶ And in Aviad, the Father, power is knowledge; He is the air and His words are written upon the night sky;

11 Therefore listen and take heed, that thou shall not be silent nor deceived when evil is spoken for Truth.

12 ¶ And in the Son, power is mercy;

13 He is the living water washing clean in the light shining above all, raining down upon the Earth, ending the drought and famine destroying all the living lands.

14 ¶ And in the Spirit (*or breath*), power is the strength of justice;

15 He is the fire of the Torah, He is the punishment, for only through Torah comes the freedom of mankind.

16 ¶ Fear not the Spirit of YHVH, once washed clean in mercy; for fear is the bondage that binds mankind in the darkness.

17 And in wisdom consider the Torah, for all thou seest is Torah; therefore, seek not that which is not of the Torah, for such exists only to deceive the mind and will of mankind.

18 And know too that our Mother, Wisdom, cometh to all Her children, even as they cometh unto Her in wisdom;

19 For though the light has been hidden by mankind, if we awake and are wise in Her, seeking for that which is hidden, Her mysteries shall be revealed:

20 Therefore, follow thy heart in understanding and do obey the Torah given thee, for the Torah is love eternal.

21 ¶ And when thou hast gained riches, thou shall be poor; but when thou shall give up thy good as the heart commands, thou shall be rich;

22 Know thou that thy heart is the key to the understanding of the soul.

23 And when thou hast the key, it becomes thy duty to share the secret and to guide all those seeking the path of righteousness that they go not astray,

24 For they that are lost cannot find the straight path; therefore, it is given thee to walk among mankind with love in thy heart, from the beginning and end, for this is the creation.

25 ¶ And if anyone should come unto thee for council, they should speak freely, or thou shall be deceived;

26 But if they hesitate to open their hearts in humility before thee, then thou shalt judge even according to the Torah that thou hast been given.

27 And to know what these have said in their hearts, return back their words in simplicity, but not in extravagant speech; do this and those that go before thee shall know the wisdom of El Elyon.

28 ¶ And know thou that silence is a pearl of great value, and insight gained from such cannot be purchased and any price,

29 For speech given to exalt the heart is a worthless vanity, lower than the dust:

30 Therefore, to be great among men and women, a Kohen Gadol and a Kohen Gadolah of El Elyon, be known for thy gentleness and thy meekness; seek not for servants but see the earth as thy friend.

31 ¶ Ask not for the companion of any that know not YHVH, yet give of thy time and all thou as unto any that need;

32 Debate not with they that know not Alohykm, yet by what is written upon their hearts hear their words,

33 For all that enter into the ears must come forth from the mouth filtered by the heart, and they that love thee as a friend shall share their hearts with thee:

34 Yet the fool shall regard knowledge as ignorance, and wisdom as vanity, and the things that are of great worth unto him are lost in death.

35 Wherefore let them cook their food upon the fire all the day, and when the night comes it shall be as cold as the frost, eat of it not.

36 ¶ Sarah, O Sarah! Listen to Shekinah, the voice of wisdom; for in Her is the voice of light!

37 Abraham, O Abraham! Listen to the voice of knowledge, for the mysteries are written there in the sky; unveiled them for the world has need of their light.

38 ¶ And ye who are now free from the bonds of darkness, ye are the creation of YHVH Alohykm;

39 Ye are Adam and ye are Eve, born from the fire of the earth and the breath of the sky.

40 And ye know that even as doth water falls upon the earth, so too doth fire burn, and the brightest fire shall gather more flames, therefore be ye one with fire of divine light.

41 ¶ Ye who have seen the fire that is alight from within, alight from the eternal fire to dwell eternally,

42 Quench not the inner flame, but share it that it may reform the earth and finish the creation.

43 And in this divine flame is that shall overcometh all things, and shall perfect all the things of the Earth.

44 But mankind cannot see the vision, therefore guard this wisdom, let it not be mocked,

45 For mankind is a fire burning in the night, and never is quenched is the darkness of his heart.

46 But if ye shall peek into the hearts of mankind ye shall see these are not free from the bondage and strife, and the toils;

47 For they understand not the fire, they being trapped in the shadow of night.

Chapter 8

The Keys and Wisdom of numbers.

1 One is the unity of the Creator, infinite and eternal; and one is two halves that make a whole; for something cannot come from nothing, yet everything is and always has been whole: and know ye mankind that ye are and shall never be alone.

2 ¶ Two is the marriage of the creation; the formation and the unity of the heavens and the earth; it is the duality, the one that shall give and the one that shall receive; for this is the Torah: that in love is that which is received given, and in love is that which is given received.

3 ¶ Three is the balance and harmony of all things; it is the kindness in which all shall cultivate and grow; it is that fulfillment of the Torah, and the reward and the punishment; it is the harmony and the balance of all things.

4 ¶ Four is the doorway we must pass through in humility; it is the end of ego, the very death of mankind; it is the temple of YHVH in which we study and live the Torah; in it is the firmament of the heavens, and our shelter from the storm of the wrath of Alohykm.

5 ¶ Five is the endowment of life; it is the soul born within mankind; it is the very breath of Alohykm, the Creator; it is the very earth we walk upon, and the foundation of the soul; five is the creation: all creation, all that is, was, and shall ever be.

6 ¶ Six is the unity of Alohykm; it is perfection of the earth, the sealing of the heavens and the earth, the bridge connecting these two creations; it is the root of the tree, it is the tree itself growing into the heavens, it is all: north, south, east, west, up, and down; it is all and it is one.

7 ¶ Seven is the struggle; it is the rest; it is the sustenance of YHVH given to mankind; it is the Creator's light, shining forth to correct the world; it is the struggle between our desires: that which we see as good, and the desires of El Elyon, righteousness.

8 ¶ Eight is the choice; it is the infinite of infinite; it is all that might be, yet all that truly is; it is the soul rising beyond mortal limitations; it is the resurrection; it is the free will of mankind.

9 ¶ Nine is the awakening; it is the realization of mankind; it is the womb of understanding; it is the kindness and mercy of the creation from the Creator; it is the final repentance of mankind; it is everything found that is worth finding, never to be lost again.

10 ¶ O my children! Ponder ye on that which I hath given thee, for in the knowledge of these keys are hidden the wisdom to transform mankind;

11 Reach ye ever upward, turn thy thoughts upward and as ye seek the light ye shall find life in the keys of that which I have given thee, a light on the pathway to the understanding ye seek;

12 Turn thy thoughts therefore inward, and the light shall pour from thee, for these are the numbers that are the very fruit that grows upon the tree of life.

Chapter 9

The Keys of Knowledge and Wisdom.

1 One is the oneness of the Creator, eternal and infinite; and one is two halves that make a whole; for something cannot come from nothing, yet everything is and always has been whole: and know this, that mankind is and shall never be alone.

2 ¶ Two is the marriage of the creation; the unity in the formation of the heavens and the earth; it is the duality, the one that shall give and the one that shall receive; for this is the Torah: that in love is that which is given received, and in love is that which is received given.

3 ¶ Three is the cycle of creation, it is the flow as water from the earth to the heavens, and from the heavens unto the deep (*abyss*), and from the deep unto the earth again; it is the strength of youth, and the fortitude of the established, and it is the wisdom of age.

4 ¶ Four are the dimensions of the Heavens: east to west, north to south, and there is a wind to carry the Voice all about the Earth; four

maketh fire from water, as YHVH doth send out His messengers to establish upon the Earth all of His ways.

5 ¶ Five is the sealing of the earth unto the heavens; that which is sealed upon the earth shall be sealed in the heavens, and that which is not sealed upon the earth shall be unsealed; in the end, all things that are, were, and ever will be shall be sealed unto YHVH, Valiant be His name.

6 ¶ Six is the depths of the abyss; in here lies the transgression and the transgressor, yet here too lay the mercy of YHVH, for all might return unto Him that created them; and if these shall ask, He shall place a ring upon their finger and prepare a feast in their name.

7 ¶ Seven is the crown of the Heavens; and He who sitteth upon the throne shall be blessed, and shall bless all they that desire Him, for He the sitteth upon the throne weareth the crown and shall show mercy upon all they that shall ask of him, for these are the humble.

8 ¶ And all of these are the Living Elohim; yea, all of these are truth eternal, and joy eternal, and love eternal; and blessed are all they that seek these, the seven days of creation; for these are the Torah of YHVH, these are the love of YHVH.

9 And the Torah is given that mankind might see and might know the love of YHVH, and to know YHVH, and to love YHVH;

10 Let those with ears hear the Torah of YHVH, and let those with eye see the creation of YHVH, that it is good.

11 ¶ And on the eighth day shall judgment come, and the works of mankind be counted.

12 And on the ninth day shall the work be finished and mankind shall be forever whole.

13 ¶ And when I received of these teachings, Kohen Gadol, the High Priest of YHVH, said unto me: The Torah and the rituals of this temple will be your guide,

14 Follow these both forward and backward, up and down, but not to one side nor to the other side;

15 Do this, following the path that you have been shown, and return unto Eden and taste of the fruit of the creation of YHVH.

Chapter 10

The Torah of Truth.

1 From before the time when this earth was created, all of the spirits yet to be born stood before Kedem Qadam Kadmon and Alohykm,
2 And there, if we could see them, we would see that everything did appear even as it does now upon this earth, that they are a reflection of the same.
3 And when the spirits came here to dwell in the flesh they did take upon themselves their own forms, albeit in corruption, for this world is corruption.
4 ¶ The Torah of YHVH is given unto each generation, beginning with Adam and Eve even while they were in the Garden of Eden.
5 And so it was that YHVH sent the angel of YHVH and Raphael, the angel of healing and of secrets, to recite the Torah unto Adam and Eve.
6 And when the people first heard him, they fell down in fear of the Word of YHVH;
7 And it came to pass that Raphael gave mankind the Word a little at a time, even as they were prepared to receive.
8 And it is passed down by the wise unto all generations, and when lost it is revealed anew that the people of Elohim might speak the words,
9 That they might hear the Spirit of Elohim (*Ruach HaKodesh*) and listen to the instructions of YHVH.
10 And Adam and Eve saw the Torah with their own eyes, and everything they read in the book they did read with their spiritual eyes.
11 ¶ The Torah of YHVH is written upon stones made of sapphire, it can only be read by the soul;
12 It is written by the hands of mankind in their own language and in their own understanding that they might gain understanding through the four gates: in wisdom and in knowledge, in mercy and in strength.
13 There are those that say the Torah was written in the seven days of creation, but I say unto you:

14 That it was never written but always was, thus was it given upon the seventh day that YHVH might rest.

15 The Torah of YHVH contains the seven paths of truth, the twenty-two symbols (*letters*) of knowledge, the seventy-two branches of wisdom, and the one hundred forty-four circles of understanding.

16 ¶ And the seven paths all lead to the very tree of knowledge of good and evil, that mankind might gain wisdom in her branches.

17 And the seventy-two branches of the tree of life all grow out into infinity, that mankind might know truth: YHVH, our Elohim.

18 And the one hundred forty-four circles are infinite Sefirot, the fruit that grows upon the tree of knowledge of good and evil.

19 ¶ And all this that mankind, in their finite nature, might come unto an understanding of the infinite, for YHVH is infinite and YHVH is the knowable Elohim.

20 In every generation is the Torah, and the Torah is in every generation; the Torah is the record of the beginning and the end of every generation of mankind (*Adam*).

21 Adam and Eve did not keep the Torah secret, for the Torah is a parable, it is itself a secret, a mystery understood only by the soul awakened by the very breath of Alohykm (*Ruach HaKodesh*).

22 ¶ By the Torah were Adam and Eve given the signs and tokens, and they were taught to use them by Raphael, yet the angel was not the Torah.

23 The Torah was given to dispel all the doubts of mankind, that teshuvah would be known,

24 That temples would be built once mankind should leave paradise, and an atonement should need be made.

25 But that paradise should be both reward and punishment for mankind, as once mankind rested in the garden, they would see truth:

26 That mankind had never left Eden, but Ha'Elohim did hide it from there eyes.

27 For Alohykm is with mankind always, and all those that seek to belong to the ways of Elohim are protected,

28 That the goodness of El Elyon should always be that He should rule the earth, even as He rules the Heavens.

29 ¶ And the Torah of Adam was handed down until the days of Enoch, who was given the Torah for his generation, he and his wives;

30 Seth, the son of Adam wrote down the words of the Torah, yet in every generation they become corrupted, and their understanding lost,

31 ¶ And here I will teach you the Torah of Adam this day, in this temple.
32 And Enoch was given the Torah and Adam (*mankind*) had this precious stone until Enoch was taken from off the earth.
33 And when the waters of the flood subsided, the Torah was given unto Noah that mankind would be one, but mankind was divided.

Chapter 11

The Torah of Adam - the Torah of Atzluth.

1 And this is the Torah of Adam, *YHVH did come unto Adam and Eve, saying*: I make between the Heavens and the Earth, and this covenant shall be a token of the eternal covenant (*everlasting covenant*) between The Creator and His Creation:

ONE
2 ¶ Because of your love for the Creator, thou will be fruitful and multiply, and replenish the earth:
3 Have joy in your prosperity, every man love his wife, and every wife love her husband; every father love his son, and every mother love her daughter; favor love and affection;
4 And thou shall do this that you should have peace.

TWO
5 ¶ Because of thy love for the Creator, thou will care for the Earth, for it is the creation of YHVH, in it is life and happiness:
6 All of this is given unto you that mankind might find joy therein.

THREE
7 ¶ Because of thy love for the Creator, thou will watch over and care for the fish of the sea, and the fowl of the air, and every living thing that moveth upon the earth:
8 Do this that you shall be just and that you shall have justice.

FOUR

9 ¶ See now that mankind has been given every herb bearing seed upon the face of all the earth,

10 And every tree in the which shall be the fruit of a tree yielding seed; to you these shall be for meat:

11 Care for and cultivate their seed that they may flourish, and in them ye shall not go hungry.

FIVE

12 ¶ See now that mankind has been given every beast of the earth, and every fowl of the air, and every fish in the sea; to you these shall be given for meat:

13 But know that their blood is precious uto me and I am YHVH, your creator; therefore only shed blood to keep your life.

SIX

14 ¶ See now that every tree of the garden thou have been given, and from them you may freely eat, but of the tree of knowledge of good and evil ye shalt not eat:

15 And here is the agency of mankind: Thou mayest choose for thyself, for it is given unto thee;

16 Yet remember that it is forbidden, for in the day any eatest thereof they shalt surely die.

SEVEN

17 ¶ And here is the Torah, upon which all the mitzvoth rest; yea, do this and all the Torah is fulfilled and ye shall be perfect: Love.

18 Even as all of the creation is given unto mankind, Alohykm shall send the rains and the droughts,

19 And Alohykm shall cause the sun to rise and to set, and Alohykm shall send the heat and the cold, being no respecter of persons;

20 Therefore, love even as YHVH and be perfected in Torah by this thy mitzvot, giving generously unto all.

21 ¶ And the Torah of Adam is the tree of life to those who take hold of her; those who hold her fast will be blessed, for it is even as a fire to cleanse thee.

22 ¶ And in that day that it was given, there came an angel with a sword and a scroll wrapped together, and that angel did say unto them:

23 If thou will keep what is written upon this scroll then shall you be saved from the sword;

24 But if thou are to burn it up, and eat it not, then at the ending shall the sword kill thee, for in it is the Torah of Atzluth.

Chapter 12

The Torah of Enoch - the Torah of Beri'ah

1 And this is the Torah of Enoch, the covenant made between the Heavens and the Earth; and this covenant is as a token of the eternal covenant between The Creator and His Creation:

ONE

2 ¶ The Creator of All Things, El Elyon; know that YHVH is ONE, YHVH is UNITY, YHVH is ETERNAL,

3 YHVH is not some elohim of man, made by their hands; therefore, YHVH is NEVER UNCHANGING (*not stagnant*), YHVH is NEVER ENDING:

4 All things bear witness that YHVH is omnipotent and omnipresent, who maketh the Torah, and bindeth all things in their bounds, who filleth Eternity, who was and is and will be from all Eternity to Eternity.

TWO

5 ¶ YHVH is all knowing, it was by Wisdom that the World was made, and the eyes, knowledge and wisdom,

6 Observe all things, know all things, understand all things, and should YHVH turn away, all the creation would be destroyed.

7 And here, in the creation, shall stand no unfruitful tree, and every place shall be blessed, for such is the will of YHVH.

THREE

8 ¶ Those that have been warned, all these shall warn another:

9 For the curse of mankind is ignorance, forgetting that which they have previously been blessed; for YHVH doth not curse mankind, nor the earth, nor her creatures;

10 But it is the evil of mankind that has planted the curse that has born weeds and thistles upon the ground,
11 For the evil fruits of mankind, yea the wickedness of mankind, these too shall bare seed;
12 Therefore, all those that have been warned, let them warn their neighbors.

FOUR

13 ¶ Even as YHVH hath blessed the Sabbath day, let mankind keep the Sabbaths, let mankind find rest in YHVH, that they should be blessed:
14 For YHVH hath blessed all that is visible unto mankind, and all that is invisible unto mankind;
15 Therefore, shall the Sabbath be kept that mankind should remember YHVH and the paradise that was created for mankind,
16 And let mankind remember El Elyon on the Sabbaths, open thy mouth and praise YHVH.

FIVE

17 ¶ Do not have any malice in thy heart against another, be it mankind or beast of the earth, or foul of the air, or fish of the sea: for all are the creation of YHVH:
18 In the last day, when thou shall seek charity before the face of YHVH, Alohykm shall look upon thee and thy charity, and what shall be seen of thee?
19 Wherefore, have charity for all the creation, for it is YHVH, and thou doth belong to Him.
20 Yea, bear thee the yoke of thy neighbors, and love they that hate thee, look down and lift up any that are fallen;
21 Be thou one to impart love that YHVH shall be seen and be known.

SIX

22 ¶ Remember the creation, keep all from before the foundation in thy heart, make firm all that hath been given from the beginning unto mankind:
23 Speak thou with a humble tongue and a broken and contrite heart unto all, enter thy house clean;
24 In patience bring thy gifts before YHVH Alohykm,

SEVEN

25 ¶ Be fruitful and multiply, and replenish the earth; for thou art her creation.

26 ¶ Obey this Torah and thou shall escape judgment, shining forth as a light in the darkness, loving one another in all ages, and all times, and Zion shall be thine.

27 And this shall be an eternal covenant that the creation, that all they that seek the light shall find it, that the beloved of YHVH, Eden, be saved.

28 ¶ And YHVH shall set the iyrin in the cloud, that when YHVH shall bring the iyrin over the earth, they will appear in the skies, in the clouds;

29 And these will stand ready as a witness and as a reminder of the covenant which YHVH has made between the Heavens and the Earth, for every living creature of all flesh.

30 And the iyrin will be in the cloud to bear the signs and the tokens that YHVH shall never again flood the earth with the waters to destroy all flesh.

31 And YHVH will look upon it and remember the Everlasting Covenant that He made with the fathers,

32 And the children will look upon it and know that when mankind walks in teshuvah, Zion will come again upon the earth.

33 ¶ And this is the Everlasting Covenant: That when our children's children embrace the Torah and look upward, Zion will look downward knowing,

34 And all the heavens will shake with gladness, and the earth shall tremble with joy;

35 And the General Assembly of the Church of the Firstborn shall come down out of heaven, and possess the earth, and shall have peace until the end does come.

36 ¶And this is the Everlasting Covenant between the Earth and the Heavens,

37 And YHVH made with all those that came before us, and shall make with all of our seed, for time and all eternity.

38 And in that day that it was given, there came an angel with a sword in one hand and a scroll in the other, and that angel did say:

39 If thou will keep what is written upon this scroll in my left hand then shall you be saved from the sword of mercy in my right hand;

40 But if thou are to burn it up, and eat it not, then at the ending shall the sword kill thee, for in it is the Torah of Beri'ah.

41 And the iyrin sit in the clouds even to this day, to watch over every living creature that moves upon the earth.

Chapter 13

The Torah of Noah - the Torah of Yetzirah

1 And YHVH sent Noah and Na'amah to free mankind from the floods, and they were given the Torah, and the Torah of Noah was taught unto mankind:

ONE

2 ¶ YHVH hath established His covenant with mankind, therefore thou shalt worship El Elyon as one people:

3 Worship not the elohim made by the hands of men, for YHVH is not a god of man's creation.

4 YHVH is unity, the Creator; be ye one as the creation.

TWO

5 ¶ Be ye fruitful and multiply, breed abundantly upon the earth, and multiply therein.

THREE

6 ¶ Into thy hands hath been given every green herb, every fruit of the tree, every beast of the earth, every fowl of the air, and everything that moves upon the earth, and all the fish that swim in the waters:

7 YHVH hath given all these unto mankind as food, but the blood of all flesh ye have been given for meat, this ye shall not eat; for the blood is to be sealed upon the ground.

8 The blood is the life; therefore, the blood shall not be shed, except for meat, or to save your lives; the blood of every beast will I require at your hands.

FOUR

9 ¶ Whosoever kills another human in murder, to shed their blood, YHVH shall seek their blood;

10 For mankind shall not shed the blood of their fellow man; mankind is made in the image of Elohim.

FIVE

11 ¶ All mankind are brothers and sisters, thou shalt preserve the life of one another in teshuvah, for ye are all one race and one people,

12 For in the image of YHVH was mankind made; therefore, love one another, succor those that stand in need of succoring;

13 Yea, give of your substance unto all they that stand in need; suffer not that the beggar putteth up his petition unto thee in vain.

SIX

14 ¶ Be ye fruitful and multiply; bring forth thy children throughout the land and multiply the children of Elohim therein (*missionary work*).

SEVEN

15 ¶ Remember this Torah, and the Torah of thy fathers in mercy even as YHVH is merciful and saved mankind from the flood, for this is thy mitzvoth;

16 Teach this to thy children that all shall be well unto thee unto the last generation.

17 ¶ And the Torah of Noah is the unity of mankind in mercy for all those who take hold of her; those who hold fast unto her will be blessed.

18 And in that day that it was given, there came an angel with a sword in his left hand and a scroll in his right, and that angel did say into them:

19 If thou will keep what is written upon this scroll then shall you be saved from the justice of this sword;

20 But if thou are to burn it up, and eat it not, then at the ending shall the sword kill thee, for in it is the Torah of Yetzirah.

Chapter 14

The Torah of Melchizedek - the Torah of Assiah

1 And now, I shall give unto thee the Torah of this generation; and this shall be thy Torah and the covenant between YHVH and mankind unto all generations,

2 And it shall be unto you an eternal covenant, for this is the Torah of Melchizedek;

3 Yea, this is the Torah as it was given unto me, and I give it unto thee, Abraham, that thou should give it unto all thy generations, even unto as many as are worthy of it.

4 Yea, this is the Torah unto all those that would seek to enter into this path and grow in Torah unto the Torah of Adam, even the Torah of Atzilah;

5 And this shall be thy mitzvah, and the mitzvah of all they that desireth to drink of that cup of the Torah of Yetzirah, unto the Torah of Beri'ah, even unto the Torah of Atzilah;

6 For until one can drink from the first cup, taking this Torah into themselves, they cannot partake of the cup of the pure Torah of YHVH:

7 And here is a secret, the Torah of YHVH is Love; and this is the mystery of YHVH.

ONE

8 ¶ The Torah is this: thou shall circumcise thy heart; do this that thou might live the Torah and know YHVH.

9 ¶ And this Torah is given in that the moment that the heart is pierced, and a soul is born unto YHVH, and Adam and Eve awaken inside of them, and they shall begin their journey back into Eden.

10 If thou should obey the Torah, then thou art as the dog that doth follow his master home, and this is good.

11 ¶ Yea, YHVH seeks those that seek to see His face; for the children of man may know their Fathers and obey them or obey them not,

12 But to know Aviad (the Eternal Father), mankind must do more than obey, mankind must seek His face if they are to know Him;

13 Therefore, circumcise thy heart and know El Elyon, that Alohykm be with you.

14 ¶ Seek thou Wisdom, turning thy thought inward, opening up thy mind unto the light!

15 Seek thou Knowledge, that thou shalt see all that leadeth mankind unto that light!

16 The path to understanding is clear, the door is open unto all that shall circumcise their hearts,

17 And the light of YHVH shall shine forth even as the sun breaks through the darkness each morning, growing in the sky to light up the creation.

18 And this is the light and life of the world, it is the wisdom and knowledge from the heavens unto the earth.

19 And this is the beginning of the creation of mankind, for it is that light that we shall follow to find our way home.

20 ¶ And in that day that I was given the Torah, there came an angel with a sword in his hands and a scroll in his mouth, and that angel did pierce my heart, and he fed the scroll unto me, saying:

21 If thou will keep what is written upon this scroll then shall you be saved from the justice and given mercy in the strength of YHVH;

22 But if thou are to burn it up, and eat it not, then at the ending shall the sword kill thee, for in it is the Torah of Assiah.

Chapter 15

The Teachings of the Torah of Olamot

1 Listen now, O Abraham: You are a choice seer and a prophet of YHVH, and thy wife, Sarah, an emissary of Alohykm;

2 And I am now Kohen Gadol, the High Priest of YHVH, and I pass this Torah to you, and you shall be the Kohen Gadol (*High Priest*) and the Kohanot Gadolah (*High Priestess*) of El Elyon as I am to leave this plane.

3 What then of this Torah of light? What doth their teachings mean? Behold, I say unto you that they are the way forward and backward;

4 Yea, they are the straight path that is the eternal circle that is the eternal round of the growth of mankind as we enter Eden, then leave it again, only to return back when we are ready, YHVH be willing.

5 ¶ Know, Abraham and Sarah, that light and truth are your eternal heritage, that the darkness of this world is but a veil.

6 Listen then to the voice of that wisdom that is freely given unto thee this day, that you shall know the mysteries, being the teachers of these things unto the world.

7 All things are given in their order, and all things are given as they are due; therefore, I share with you this Torah, and in it are the four worlds:

8 Olam Assiah is the first Torah, it is when YHVH hears our prayers;

9 We are thrust out of the garden of Eden and El Elyon and Alohykm do see us, yet it is when our hearts are pierced that we finally feel the Breath of Alohykm.

10 It is through the broken heart and the contrite spirit that we learn the first Torah, the Torah of the Earth, entering the first world, growing in and from the earth and her wisdom.

11 And so it is the ministry of the first endowment to shepherd those that are born anew into Olam Assiah, for as mankind struggles upward, all must start breaking through the darkness and into the light.

12 And thus is the soul born, sealed in the heart into a light eternal, and the veil begins to tear, and the blackness of night is broken by the stars of the morning as they move in their order, showing mankind the way.

13 ¶ Olam Yetsirah is the second Torah, where the first creation takes form as we are first born in truth, then in the second we must grow in truth.

14 We have tasted of the fruit that cast us out of Eden, and we now must learn what we know: good from evil, and be washed clean by the waters of mercy.

15 To aid us in our battle, the warriors of light are given the Torah of Covenant: YHVH teaches us the good that we do know to avoid the evil.

16 And what is it that is good? It is the Torah of the Waters, we are washed clean in service to the creation;

17 Yea, we speak unto Aviad, and we listen; yet though we are in the mercy of YHVH, we are not yet in the Presence.

18 In this we learn who we are, for we are the servants of El Elyon, and we teach by our actions.

19 ¶ Olam Beriah is the third Torah, after we grow in truth we are able to keep ourselves the light, the very truth our souls are born from.

20 Even as the light moves through the air, the knowledge of the creation unfolds within us, transforming our being and the knowledge from the very source and the darkness is extinguished.

21 This is the Torah that has lifted mankind from the earth, for it is the Torah of Air,

22 And rising into the air ye shall see all things new and old, and even the sun, the moon, and the stars shall be within thy reach.

23 ¶ Olam Atsiluth is the fourth Torah, where mankind is one again in the Presence of YHVH and the Alohykm.

24 And here is the foundation of all things, and the harmony of all things, and the understanding of all things, and the crown of YHVH.

25 Here the children of Alohykm are home, not to be lost in the light of El Elyon, but to be free in the love of YHVH.

26 Here rests all wisdom, and all mercy, and all justice, and all knowledge; here thou shall find the victory and the splendor.

27 Here shall those purified by the flame of the fire of Alohykm be welcomed home, knowing the truth of their heritage, the divine lineage of mankind, for it is the Torah of Fire.

28 ¶ And all that are born in the light, here upon the earth and learn of and become the living embodiments of this Torah and these four worlds learn the sacred truth:

29 We become not but that which we always and eternally be.

30 And this is truth divine, that when the heavens and the earth are one, a mirror of divine where the will of Alohykm is known and obeyed, then they keys will be held:

31 The Priest and the Priestess that do prepare the earth for the coming of the heavens shall, through the will of YHVH, be in tune;

32 And then shall the High Priest and the High Priestess, they themselves holding the keys, and with authority given them by YHVH Elohim, bring the heavens to the earth.

33 ¶ In this things are all things one, the working of the miracles being one with the knowing of the will of YHVH;

34 And then shall the Father, the Sun, and the mother, the Moon, give birth to that earth that the Mother did carry in her belly, and that the Breath of Elohim did nourish.

35 And then shall the earth be consumed in the fire of the justice of YHVH Alohykm, and the earth shall burn with fire even and as was once washed clean in the waters of the mercy of YHVH;

36 And then shall YHVH claim this, the creation, as His own, for He is the very Creator of the heavens and the earth.

37 ¶ And how shall you, Abraham, and you, Sarah, obtain these keys? You shall walk, even as our fathers, Adam and Eve, did walk and were malau (*filled or endowed*) with power from on high:

38 First through the doors of the four malau (the four endowments or the four worlds), then through each of the four doors of the four malau.

39 The first of these would be the four malau of Tzedeq (Hebrew, peace; modern, *Melchizedek*) and Migdalah (Hebrew, tower; modern, *Magdalene*), as were given unto Adam and Eve;

40 And this malau is of Tzedeq and Migdalah for it is the very peace brought to the earth from the heavens given to grow YHVH in the earth, for the earth is His footstool.

41 ¶ And before YHVH was nothing, for YHVH always ever was, and ever shall be;

42 And YHVH is the Lord of Hosts, the Creator of the Heavens and the Earth, and all that is above and all that is below;

43 And all that is seen, and all that is unseen; and all that is ever heard, and all that which cannot be heard;

44 And in YHVH all things are, ever were, and always will be; for YHVH is Truth, and YHVH is Light; and YHVH is Unity, and YHVH is All.

Chapter 16

The Threads of the Garments of Creation
(Compare to Chapter 13 of the Book of Remembrance)

1 And as I have told thee, YHVH did gather him up, that children of the light, even the Morning Stars, and they looked down upon the void;

2 And so it was that the darkness was separated from darkness, and the earth was established that the children of Elohim might know of themselves truth.

3 ¶ And when our first parents were in their freedom, they at the first did submit to their temptations and were thrust out of the Presence of YHVH to be born, from the womb of Eden into the world of mankind.

4 And before these were cast out, they were given the first malau—Adam of atzluth tzedeq and Eve of atzluth migdalah, which is one priesthood—that they should know and that they should be prepared.

5 And these were washed and anointed, even as I have washed thee this day.

6 ¶ And when they were made clean and given them the robes of their priesthood, and with these their new names, YHVH did send unto them Raphael, that he should teach them;

7 And these are the words of Raphael into Adam and Eve, and thus they are the words of YHVH unto you this day:

8 ¶ The root of the commandments of YHVH is love; and the love of YHVH is the thread of the Garments of the Priesthood.

9 ¶ Behold, thy ears have been anointed, that thou might hear the Word of YHVH:

10 And the first thread of the Garments of the Priesthood is in harmony with the ears; thus, do not be deceived by hearing lies, nor hear the ending of the Word of YHVH.

11 Straight is the path to YHVH Elohim, and all those who are upon the path shall hear the decrees.

12 ¶ Behold, thine eyes have been anointed, that thou might behold the glory of YHVH:

13 And the second thread of the Garments of the Priesthood is in harmony with the eyes; thus, thou shall see by raising up the eyes.

14 Do not let your eyes brim with tears, that after weeping they do not close;

15 The eyes are as windows into the soul; speak one to another by the power of the eyes, lest ye forget the words seen;

16 Yea, cast your eyes toward the salvation of YHVH and see that the eye of revelation is that of understanding,

17 And in that understanding the Crown of Ahyeh Asher Ahyeh (*Keter*) shall be given thee; and it doth rest between the eyes.

18 ¶ Behold your noses have been anointed, that ye might smell the sweet offerings of YHVH:

19 The third thread of the Garments of the Priesthood harmonizes with the nose.

20 Do not let thy nose be irritated or excited by the sweet scent of idolatry,

21 Neither should thou desire to keep the offerings given unto thee by YHVH to thyself;

22 But rather, smell the sweet scents of the Sabbath, and other beautiful things of YHVH.

23 ¶ Behold thy mouth hath been anointed, that thou might speak forth praises unto YHVH:
24 The fourth thread of the Garments of the Priesthood harmonizes with the mouth.
25 Seek for patience; do not let your tongues speak words out of anger;
26 Yea, do not labor to make an oath without the intent to keep it, for all oaths are written in the hearts of mankind;
27 Therefore, keep thy oath that thy promises be sure.
28 Do not deceive by words or speaking the name of YHVH in vain; do not make an oath speaking in falsehoods; and this that thy words be pure.
29 Yea, perfection is of YHVH Elohim alone, all else are made perfect in YHVH; therefore, let Ruach HaKodesh be thy bridle.
30 ¶ Behold thy neck hath been anointed, that it should bear up thy head:
31 Thus, the fifth thread of the Garments of the Priesthood harmonizes with the throat.
32 Do not swallow any abominations, but do eat unleavened bread, which is to say, only in righteousness and moderation.
33 ¶ Behold, thy hands have been anointed, that they might be strong and wield the sword of justice in defense of truth and virtue:
34 Thus, the sixth thread of the Garments of the Priesthood harmonizes with the hands.
35 Do not lay thy hands in sin, do not steal, but do take hold of the Word of God;
36 Yea, open the door of the house of YHVH Elohim with the hand and bind the signs and tokens by the means of it.
37 ¶ Behold, thy loins have been anointed, that thou might be fruitful and multiply and replenish the earth, that thou may have joy in your posterity:
38 Thus, the seventh thread of the Garments of the Priesthood harmonizes with the loins.
39 Do not commit adultery, but to thy own house be true, and this that thou might have health in the navel, marrow in the bones, strength in the loins and in the sinews;
40 And that the power in the Priesthood after the order of the Son of God should be upon you, and upon your posterity through all generations of time, and throughout all eternity.
41 Therefore, be fruitful and multiply; have joy in thy posterity;
42 Yea, do this and YHVH, thy Elohim, shall circumcise thy heart and the hearts of thy descendants.

43 ¶ Behold, thy feet hath been anointed, that they might be swift in the paths of righteousness and truth:
44 And the eighth thread of the Garments of the Priesthood harmonizes with the feet.
45 Thus, do not walk about after strange gods and thou shalt not stumble and fall;
46 Yea, walk after YHVH Alohykm; journey by all paths, as commanded by YHVH Elohim, as spoken unto thee by Ruach HaKodesh;
47 And watch thy feet as you walk to the house of YHVH Elohim, that thou shall do so in supplication before YHVH.
48 ¶ Mankind is to remember these eight threads for all time; let them be written in thy heart:
49 Ears first, eyes second, nose third, mouth fourth, neck fifth, hands sixth, loins seventh, and feet eighth.
50 Yea, do not sin by these, for the heart is with each.
51 Behold, do consider therefore the thoughts of all that you shalt meet:
52 Love thy neighbor as thyself, for to love one another is to love YHVH Elohim.
53 Yea, do these and ye shall be blessed; So mote it be, Amen.
54 ¶ And these were the words unto Adam and Eve on the garments of the priesthood, and so too are they my words unto you, O Abraham and Sarah.

Chapter 17

The Torah and the Mitzvah of the Rabbi
(Compare to Chapter 15 of the Book of Remembrance)

1 And now I, Melchizedek shall impart unto you wisdom that thou will understand the first malau—
2 Abraham of atzluth tzedeq and Sarah of atzluth migdalah, which is one priesthood after the order of the Son of Man—
3 To give thee knowledge in these things that thou might have power in YHVH, in His Priesthood after the order of the Son of God.
4 And once I have taught thee this, which I do give unto thee freely, so too shall thou impart of these things freely to the children of men;

5 And this that they might have wisdom, that the light of YHVH should flow out, breaking free through that veil of light to destroy the darkness.

6 But be thou humble in this wisdom, Abraham and Sarah, teach these things as a parable, that the ignorant might learn, and that the wise shall know;

7 ¶ And when they that are wise shall come before thee, listen unto them, and take heed, for this wisdom is in all;

8 Hold not thy tongue when evil is spoken as truth yet keep thy peace and let that light shine above all,

9 For truth shall come softly and carry with it the peace of YHVH or it is not truth.

10 Wars and contention are the ways of our adversary, that bringer of confusion; yea, he doth wait in the darkness to devour.

11 Fear not, they that overstep the Torah shall seek justice, and the justice of YHVH they shall find, it shall not be as well for them as they do imagine in the vanity of their hearts.

12 ¶ O Abraham! O Sarah! Will you learn from the wisdom of Raphael, who is Raziel, who is the healer of YHVH, and the keeper of the mysteries of Alohykm?

13 For after Adam and Eve were given the first malau—Adam of assiah tzedeq and Eve of assiah migdalah, which is one priesthood—Raphael did teach them further, saying unto them:

14 ¶ The wise, they are blessed, they who by YHVH Elohim are given the mysteries of this, the tree of knowledge of good and evil.

15 And the light of YHVH was given unto you that ye should teach all peoples the truth of YHVH;

16 Yea, and this is the key and power of the Priesthood after the order of the Son of God; and behold, this is also the very cornerstone of His glory:

17 And here is the secret word: YHVH.

18 But the world has not yet learned the secret; yet the word is like milk and honey on the tongues of the righteous.

19 Everything given of this creation is now yours to behold and to care for, YHVH hath given you dominion over them; do so in the name of YHVH.

20 As you leave this garden, the Torah shall not be foreign unto you.

21 ¶ A commandment I give ye, grasp it freely yet not from myself, for as the mitsvah of YHVH:

22 Get ye up when the sun is high up in the heat of the day and pray to that Elohim that did create you;

23 And this ye shall do neither by commandment nor to give pleasure unto yourselves, but that you should learn the character of Ha'Elohim.

24 ¶ And as you, Adam, and you, Eve, were expelled from this paradise and from the presence of YHVH, but only for a short time,

25 Ye are to turn away from all evil and walk in the path of righteousness, that by the grace of YHVH thou might see the face of Elohim again while upon this earth.

26 Thus now I do tell thee: The greatest mystery is the sanctification of YHVH;

27 And whoever is worthy shall go directly to this secret, and none shall be able to stop them, for they shall know.

28 And therefore, do I say unto thee: Reveal the secrets of Alohykm only to those who serve YHVH;

29 But there shall come a time when all shall know these mysteries;

30 Yea, and every knee shall bow, and every tongue confess on the last day that the Son of Man doth reign over all things in the heavens and upon this earth.

31 ¶ Here is truth: There are three secrets that hide within the Torah, and all the mysteries do correspond to these three things.

32 The first mitzvah is the first wisdom: Glory be unto YHVH; The glory of YHVH is the first secret to be unlocked.

33 Yea, the beginning of wisdom is the glory of YHVH, which corresponds to three wisdoms: The outer wisdom, the inner wisdom, and the depth of wisdom.

34 When thou leave this garden, thou shall build a house of wisdom, and the foundation of that house shall be the Glory of YHVH.

35 The wise shall open their hearts to this secret.

36 And know too that there are only three types of secrets: The secret of the path, the secret of beginnings, and the secret of the Torah of YHVH.

37 And I say into you, and you shall say unto all those that will hear you, that these secrets may only be known by the grace of Elohim Shaddai.

38 ¶ To return unto Eden, and to bring the heavens unto the earth, thou must hear the three types of reverence:

39 The first reverence doth glorify YHVH, and the second doth glorify the Ruach HaKodesh, and the third doth glorify the face of Aviad.

40 Know too that to fear YHVH is to love Alohykm and to serve YHVH and His creation in love.

41 Know ye not that mankind shall only find happiness in their creation by giving honor unto YHVH, who is the Creator?

42 Therefore, the fear of Alohykm is fear of YHVH, the honor of Alohykm is the honor of YHVH, and the love of Alohykm is the love of YHVH.

43 And all this must be done in love; seek love in thy hearts, write love in thy hearts, and you will keep this Torah;

44 For this is the whole Torah, yea, this is the fullness of truth: Thou shalt love YHVH, thy Elohim and honor Him.

45 Yea, glorify Aviad that thou not fall into the temptation as did Lilith, for it is not permissible for mankind to serve Alohykm in temptation.

46 Stand ye in the name of Yachad Yachid Echad! See that He descends from above!

47 And it is written upon the pillars in heaven: Mankind is beloved; so it is that to love YHVH is to love thy neighbors.

48 Ruach HaKodesh, the breath of YHVH, will speak unto thee as thou walk the paths outside this garden, and shall guide thy children, even those who do obey Him;

49 Therefore, you will learn to respect Alohykm, only then will you know how to love.

50 ¶ Know too that mankind is not want to listen to foreign council:

51 Yea, mankind shall sing praises unto YHVH with ease, but will they know Him?

52 Therefore, respect the Creator of the heavens and earth all your life that as thou should know Him, thy seed too shall know YHVH.

53 Yea, write the love of YHVH in thy hearts, and carry with you always the fear of YHVH, Lord of the Hosts of Heaven, in your hearts.

54 Yea, this love is in reverence, and this reverence is the purity of YHVH.

55 ¶ And I say unto thee: All they who show reverence is favored by YHVH;

56 Yea, they who reverence the Creator and they who reverence this the creation; and more bless shall be all they who shall reverence both the Creator and His creation!

57 And all shall know these as their spirits shall be pure, having given birth to Nephesh.

58 Rejoice, therefore, in the Glory of the light of YHVH!

59 ¶ Thou hast been born from darkness into that true light, and thou have been separated from those who are yet lost.

60 And the time soon cometh that the light shall shine unto thee from the waters that thou shall honor the Elohim that did speak unto thee in this garden:
61 And that honor is the love, and with love comes the reverence, and from the reverence comes understanding;
62 And this I say unto thee: This love shall grow thousands upon thousands of generations, even to the quickening of every soul; even so, Amen.

Chapter 18

The Torah and the Mitzvah of the Kohen and Kohanot
(Compare to Chapter 17 of the Book of Remembrance)

1 And now, Abraham, father, and Sarah, mother, thou hast received the second malau—
2 Abraham of beri'ah tzedeq and Sarah of beri'ah migdalah, which is one priesthood after the order of the Son of Man—
3 Therefore; tame thine heart that thy heart might guide thee on thy journey.
4 When YHVH, El Elyon, should bless thee, and YHVH shall indeed bless thee more than He hath already blessed thee, let not thine ears be weary.
5 ¶ The things of this creation are a blessing unto the servants of YHVH yet will be as a dark veil that doth cover the eyes of all they that love this creation more than the Creator.
6 Let thy heart guide thee and make thy way straight! Listen to the Voice that thou should not be taken off that straight path.
7 They that are lost amongst the children of men may still find their way, if they will but seek the heart for counsel.
8 ¶ The love of the Creator is written upon the hearts of they who serve YHVH, let thine heart be open, listen more than thou doth speak, give honor to all they that seek it, honoring them just below YHVH, but seek not for honor to own.
9 Be known for thy gentle ways, seek to know all they that come seeking thy wisdom,

10 Struggle with all they that seek thy guidance and prepare the earth for the coming of YHVH to the earth.
11 ¶ Know that the sacrifice given unto YHVH is to be received by those in need, waste not that which thou hath been given that it profiteth not the poor and the needy.
12 Remember the widow and the fatherless child, they are given into thy care, forgive them and forget them not:
13 And in this thou shall prepare the earth for the coming of YHVH.
14 ¶ And when Adam and Eve were given the second malau, being ordained Kohen and Kohanot, YHVH sent unto them the voice of instruction from Raphael,
15 And Adam and Eve were taught about the offerings in sacrifices given for YHVH, saying:
16 ¶ There are three types of mercy: the offering of ascension, the offering of thanksgiving, and the offering of purification.
17 Justice is also divided thus into three categories: Celestial love, Terrestrial prayer, and Telestial honor (*or reverence*).
18 And the offering of ascension corresponds to love, for these are given to feed the creation.
19 And the offering of thanksgiving is like unto a petition to the heavens, given in an abundance of joy and in gratitude towards Alohykm.
20 The offering of purification is the atonement, even as a symbol of Yachad Yachid Echad, who should be die by those whom He doth love.
21 Both the offering of thanksgiving and the offering of purification are given to aid and strengthen the living body; express this love in thy prayers and pray in devotion.
22 Serve YHVH out of love and charity, and in the offering of ascension thou shalt give honor and respect to the kingdoms of Elohim, the bodies Celestial, the bodies Terrestrial and the bodies Telestial—even those of the sun, and the moon, and the stars.
23 ¶ YHVH did not create the world with hands, but by His Word did He create all things, and this because of His infinite wisdom and His infinite glory.

24 YHVH is great in wisdom, knowing all, and infinite in mercy, loving all, and infinite in righteousness.
25 YHVH Elohim keepeth all things, filleth the upper and lower worlds, for that which is created in the upper worlds gives birth to all things.
26 YHVH, in wisdom, reveals to mankind the secrets of the creation, giving unto mankind the knowledge of good and evil to all those who eat of the fruits of that tree.
27 And now YHVH doth look out at His creation and the desolation of this world, yet he doth not repent for wickedness is not in Him.
28 ¶ Behold, all blessings come to the righteous, they who love YHVH; therefore, sing His praises and glorify His name, for His deeds are great and mighty!
29 The offering of ascension is sacrifice by petition; therefore, give unto those in need out from the Holy Place:
30 That place is blessed and will be the temple of YHVH until Yachid Yachid Echad comes.
31 When you are worshiping YHVH, your Elohim, I will bring death and healing by the will of Ruach HaKodesh,
32 And with your voice and your prayers you will be born anew in the piercing of thy heart, born of the broken heart and a contrite spirit.
33 Yea, pray for all good things, that they may give birth to Nephesh, breathing new life into the mortal body.
34 This is the very foundation of wisdom and knowledge: From wisdom, from mercy, from knowledge, from judgment;
35 And these do speak one to another for understanding is only the crown of mankind, the light of day will come to dispel the darkness.
36 ¶ Let the light heal her, for she is the Elah Asyma, the Shekinah, the Ashurah of YHVH;
37 She will conceive and give birth to a son, even the Son of Man; and his heart will be pierced, and he will stand firm before Alohykm.
38 If ye will be triumphant in the service of YHVH, thou shalt leave all wealth, honor and the things of this world behind for the sake of Alohykm.

39 Pray ye now unto YHVH as a true Kohen and a Kohanot of YHVH, and offer unto Him sacrifices in thanksgiving.

40 ¶ Honor and serve YHVH with great fear, to this that mankind might be saved from the curse of the earth where ye do live.

41 For what is the punishment from Eden, which is this sanctuary? I say into thee that it can be a blessing.

42 And thou shall see that Eden, she is longer than the earth and wider than the sea!

43 Do not cry out in pain, but seek relief from the grief, the hurt and the pain of this separation.

44 ¶ Do not buy that which is sold unto thee by foreigners, nor make praises to the elohim created by the hands of men.

45 ¶ Do not come to death willingly, yea, do not speak evil; but fill thy days with good and the blessings of the creation of YHVH.

46 Because thou know YHVH, and you have tasted of the goodness of YHVH, it is given unto you to save others from suffering, misery, destruction; yea, even fire and that burden of sin.

47 Once outside the garden, the wicked are prepared for judgment and question it not; so mote it be.

48 ¶ Honor YHVH, worship Him, give thy offering of purification and teach thy sons and thy daughters in the ways of Alohykm.

49 Make the these three offerings, the offering of ascension, the offering of thanksgiving, and the offering of purification in thy temples, making these with love, prayer and honor unto YHVH.

50 ¶ The beginning of wisdom is to fear YHVH and the love of Alohykm; therefore, love thy neighbor as yourself, and love YHVH thy Elohim.

51 When strength denied you and thou found that mercy in YHVH, thy righteous hearts burned like fire;

52 Therefore, fear YHVH and keep thy mitsvoth, pouring onto YHVH thy honor and thy love.

53 From honor and love came the great flame; yea, everything was created by the Word, born of the love of YHVH.

54 ¶ Behold, thou shall worship Elohim Shaddai: Thou shalt honor YHVH by keeping all the Torah, and to keep His Torah, thou shall obey the Torah of love.

55 Cry out in supplication and hall down in worship before El Elyon!

56 Soften thy heart and accept YHVH without delay.

57 ¶ Avoid all evil, yet blame not the sinners; yea, thou shalt teach them the truth of YHVH;

58 For those who despise the honor of El Elyon, know that it is the judgment of Alohykm to deny mercy to sin:

59 All they with ears to hear will listen to these words and understand them.

60 ¶ Now I command thee to teach thy children to refuse that which is evil, not cultivating evil in their hearts;

61 Yea, and do teach them to neglect their own desires, but to glorify the name of El Eyyon.

62 ¶ Look and see, thy house is set in the middle, between the blades of that double edged sword.

63 The Humble will pay their respects as they gather within their homes; there they shall stand before Shekinah (*the Presence*) and serve YHVH.

64 Honor YHVH, thy Elohim, in thy prayers and thou shalt find peace in thy meditations and Ha'Elohim shall save thee from all evil.

65 Hide thyself in the light of the knowledge of Elohim, living in the temple of El Elyon.

66 ¶ Ask YHVH to save thee from the trap that doeth lead many of the children of men astray.

67 Return to YHVH in prayer, saying: YHVH, hear the words that come forth from out of my mouth, save us from the snare of those that lie in wait to deceive us!

68 Know that all they that pray unto El Eyon do so truly seeking the blessings of Abba Aviad Avinu and Malkath ha'Shamayim;

69 Therefor, by the grace of YHVH El Elyon I do say unto you: Go forth and multiply.

70 ¶ Elohim Shaddai sees the evil ones and will punish them in His time; therefore, be silent about those who do not seek the wisdom of YHVH:

71 Come from the secret that Abba Aviad Avinu and Malkath ha'Shamayim doth reveal unto you; so mote it be, Amen.

Chapter 19

The Torah and the Mitzvah of the Zaqunot
(Compare to Chapter 19 of the Book of Remembrance)

1 The light that is separated from the darkness, that the earth might be formed, this light is the knowledge of YHVH, and the darkness pride that sees that light as foolishness.

2 In their ignorance, the light proveth to harm those living in death; therefore death is their food and sheol becomes them.

3 Those wise in the wisdom of YHVH, let that light of YHVH overflow from their pierced heart that it should flood the earth; yet the mouth is kept silent.

4 ¶ O Abraham, O Sarah! Listen to that light as it pours through thee, for in it lay the mysteries of the creation, as thou prepare to break this world free from the bonds of darkness!

5 And having received the third malau—Abraham of yetzirah tzedeq and Sarah of yetzirah migdalah, which is one priesthood after the order of the Son of Man—

6 Thou was at the first and there ye were give the keys to prepare this earth for the coming of the heavens, and now thou hast been prepared!

7 Now the keys have been given to you both, that ye should break this world from the bonds of darkness,

8 That the matter and spirit be one, that the heavens be brought to the earth to heal this creation.

9 ¶ Even as the water of the mercy of YHVH doth pour down from the heavens to heal the earth, and doth ascend back into the heavens that this creation might be healed in that great mercy,

10 So too doth the fire of Alohykm pour down from the heavens to cleanse the earth, and doth ascend back into the heavens that this creation might be cleansed in that great judgment.

11 This fire is the light of YHVH, it doth pour out through the inner vessel that is the heart,

12 And it overcometh all this, and it doth penetrate all things, and it doth overcometh all things.

13 Now, open thine eyes to see that vision of YHVH prepared for thee.

14 ¶ Remember, remember, Abraham and Sarah, even as Raphael said unto our first parents:
15 Think of Elohim Shaddai and Shiloh, Yachad Yachid Echad, He that should be sent into the world.
16 This is to honor He whose name guards and protects against whispering spirits and familiar spirits;
17 Yea, thou doth live under the protection of YHVH; therefore, pray at that time that the name YHVH will be written on the hearts of the people:
18 Pray ye that the hearts of the servants of YHVH shall pick up that rod of iron, taking the Word of YHVH into their hearts,
19 To remember that holy name, that they would drive away those whispering spirits and those familiar spirits in the name of YHVH.
20 ¶ Praise God in thy prayers; yea, give thanks to the ruler of the heavens, praise the Elect of the Alohykm while thou art here upon the earth,
21 For it was written before the world was made: If the sons and daughters of Elohim are sent from heavens to earth, in glory will those that remember YHVH return to their Creator.
22 ¶ Write thy prayers in glorious letters with the flame of fire in thy heart, and restore her to her former glory, saith YHVH;
23 Therefore, by means of the nine Sefirot, one can find the crown upon the Mount of Elohim, in the House of Prayer, even the House of YHVH.
24 Bind thy thoughts to the crown and tie thy heart to the sky, for even as the judgment is the fire of heaven, by Ruach HaKodesh thou will create fire,
25 And you will see the fire in it, and you will feel this fire burning in thy heart;
26 Therefore, in the house of YHVH, fire is brought by that angel of fire, that thou should know that YHVH doth exist.
27 Take now all that thou hath learned this day and ponder it, that on the morrow thou should teach it unto the world; even so, Amen.

Chapter 20

The Torah and the Mitzvah of the Kohen Gadol and Kohanot Gadolah
(Compare to Chapter 20 of the Book of Remembrance)

1 Hear me speak, O Abraham, and thou, O Sarah! Thou hath been gifted with the fourth malau—

2 Abraham of assiah tzedeq and Sarah of assiah migdalah, which is one priesthood after the order of the Son of Man—

3 And with this thou hath been given the first of the four endowments of the Torah of Olamot.

4 Remember these words, O Abraham, and thou too, O Sarah! For now, at last, I shall share unto thee, each one of these, the words of Raphael unto Adam and Eve,

5 ¶ And after that they did receive their fourth endowment;

6 And Raphael did speak again unto Adam and unto Eve, and he did say unto them (and thus do I say unto you):

7 ¶ The Voice teaches also that Nephesh has three branches corresponding to the three names of YHVH, and that the soul is placed above the temple.

8 The covering of the throne of glory is even as a cherub in flight; therefore, let thy soul be lifted up like a cherub:

9 And know too that Ha'Elohim doth appear as the Son of Man, and even the rushing waters do sing His praises unto YHVH.

10 And the song is this: YHVH doth reign, for ever and ever!

11 Therefore, according to the written truth, honor belongs to mankind.

12 Yea, YHVH, even the Lord of Hosts, doth give the truth of Alohykm and of Ha'Elohim to the children of Elohim; therefore, give the truth to all mankind.

13 ¶ Close thine eyes! Look not at the carvings! For therein lies that daughter of Lilith, and she is tormented by the virgins and the mothers;

14 Therefore, the people will multiply and shall spread the Torah, but they will not know the Torah: judge them not in harshness, for they know not that which they do.

15 ¶ And what of those that shall worship dumb idols made by the hands of men?

16 Do not laugh, for even as the finger of YHVH did create you, O man, so too did the hands of man create the images cut from wood and stone;

17 Yet see that YHVH doth carve mankind out of the dust and breathe life into them!

18 But when a man doth put his finger into the mud and breathe his breath upon it, life doth not come; the great name of YHVH hath His holy symbols.

19 And the sign is this: man cannot bring life, but when the son of Adam doth marry the daughter of Eve, and the son of Eve doth marry the daughter of Adam, then life shall come in the new breath.
20 And so it is that Adam doth seek a helpmate, and Eve doth take him in and make him her own; and this that truth might be found within.
21 ¶ Gather thou up twelve righteous and pray together as one in the name of YHVH;
22 Do this in each of the three stages and continue on and share one with another as ye do forth in the name of YHVH.
23 Truth is written in the names of Alohykm; use the power of the names by their seals while they live;
24 Yea, the seals are drawn both above and below, for the names do dwell in the in that temple residing in the fourth heaven.
25 The heavens and the earth must be one, for both are the creation and exist by the Word of YHVH.
26 ¶ And this holy tabernacle (*or intelligence*) hath four coverings: the first covering was the spirit; the second covering is the skin, the third covering Nephesh; and the fourth shall be a white skin, resembling the purity of YHVH.
27 They who do hear will understand, and they will be blessed with wisdom in the name YHVH; so mote it be, Amen.

Chapter 21

The Wisdom of Raphael who is Raziel
(Compare to Chapters 22-24:11 of the Book of Remembrance)

1 And I, Melchizedek, give unto thee my wisdom, that you should know:
2 Each of the four malau (*endowments*) is in its part, four malau: two of the heavens and two of the earth.
3 This first that thou hast received is that of the spring that shall lead thee into the summer, and it is for planting;
4 The second is of the summer and it is for growth, and the third in the autumn and is for the harvest;
5 The fourth is for the winter, and if thou art prepared, thou shalt live to see the spring, and if thou are not prepared, then thou shall die and be born again in that spring.

6 Praise YHVH for His mighty hand, yea, praise Alohykm, even as Adam and Eve did walked earth with Ha'Elohim.
7 In the first of the Olamot, thou doth come out as a fire, burning brightly thought the night,
8 To take that light of the creator and be a beacon for those lost to the mists of darkness.
9 If thou should look to thine own wisdom, thou shalt fall as men, but if thou should harken unto the wisdom of Alohykm, thou shall live in the mercy of YHVH.
10 ¶ Remember the words of Raphael, hear me and I shall teach thee what Adam and Eve did hear from Raziel in their old age:
11 In the world below the heavens, below that veil of light, the offering of ascension is cast upon the altar, opening the door of generosity and humility through which all must pass.
12 As the Kohen Gadolim and the Kohen Gadolot, ye shall teach with commitment and humility.
13 Yea, this sacrifice purifies all, submitting to the fires of judgment, and dries up sins in that fire;
14 Therefore, it is similar to the washing in mercy, the resurrection of the dead.
15 The judgment of YHVH is as dry as a fire, strong in heat, a true passion without anger or rage;
16 Therefore, when thou doth look out upon the sky and read it, taking in the anger of YHVH,
17 Remember that Alohykm wants us to give unto others, even as YHVH doth give, and in such a way that it is that He, YHVH, be glorified.
18 ¶ Clean out thy dust and ashes as thou travail through the ten trials, you presented the ashes unto YHVH in prayer.
19 YHVH, the Creator of heaven and earth, reigns, therefore wear thy crown as His child.
20 YHVH shall create for thee a beautiful throne and thou shalt be in His glory in the house of the age to come.
21 ¶ And the Alohykm hath given thee almah (*a virgin*), which is the true joy of thy worship; therefore, know that the perfection of YHVH is not lost to mankind;
22 Yea, stand up according to the Voice, take heed unto El Elyon, and thou will be washed clean.
23 Yea, thou art made in perfection, but not by thy own power, for none cleans thee (*almah*) but YHVH;
24 Therefore, when the wicked seeds of mankind are planted within thy heart, cast them to the side and plant in their place the seeds of YHVH to perfection.

25 And let this be thy faith: Love thy enemies, gift of thy treasure unto those who curse thee, do good to all they who hate thee, and pray earnestly for those who seek to take thy goods or thy life;
26 Do this that the world might know that thou be the child of YHVH, the Creator, even El Elyon who reigneth over the heavens.
27 And as the Kohen Gadolim and the Kohen Gadolot, ye shall preach and teach by the Breath of YHVH unto mankind.
28 ¶ Yea, and know this: That perfection hath two paths; justice to the left and mercy to the right;
29 Even as the man doth give, and the woman shall receive that which he doth offer in righteousness, and in this shall thou live in balance.
30 YHVH doth see Adam as they are, with hands raised toward the skys; yet the Voice seeks to live in the heart.
31 When Adam doth receive the Voice as a seed to pierce the heart, Adam is that temple of the Breath (*Ruach HaKodesh*),
32 For even as Adam doth seek that Elohim that did gift him life, so too doth YHVH seek Adam, for mankind is His creation.
33 ¶ Every woman (*Eve*) shall be given the ten trials, after that Nephesh is born within, and the new name is written upon earth and in the heavens,
34 Hear with thine ears when the angel of YHVH doth speak, saying: The glory of the world is as great as its depth. East, West, North, South.
35 ¶ O, how wonderous is the light of YHVH! The light that doth destroy the darkness, breaking through that veil!
36 And this is the name of our Elohim: ONE (*UNITY*); for as it is above, so it is below, on earth, as in the heaven, and as below, so above.
37 The seal was given by YHVH even before the creation unto those who were given their authority, the teachers, and the priests and priestesses, and the blessed elders, and the high priests and the high priestesses:
38 And through constant change in degrees, mankind is renewed by YHVH in teshuvah to returns to that highest of the heavens.
39 ¶ The opening is here upon the earth; pass through the gates to know the mystery of being and return to the Alohykm that sent thee fourth.
40 And the gate has a key, and the key is the power of YHVH; and here is that key:
41 Aviad (the Father) is to the East; listen and heed His voice and revelation shall pour out unto thee;

42 And YHVH is to the West placing the sealing power into the hands of mankind, as YHVH shall give unto thee from time to time;
43 And Asyma (the Mother) is to the North in wisdom rest and renewal is with thee.
44 The breath, Ruach HaKodesh is to the South, from whence comes the fire of purification.
45 ¶ The light of all things appears as a veil above the creation, and below in the abyss darkness covers all that is created:
46 YHVH is in all and is all; therefore bow down to all; yea, arise and give thanks in thy heart when thou worship YHVH.
47 ¶ Here be glory to YHVH! Offer the offering of ascension in love, lift thyself up in honor to Elohim Shaddai.
48 Behold, contempt doth not serve YHVH; the fat and blood is to be burnt up and discarded as a peace offering,
49 The rest is to be given as food to any in need of substance in the name of YHVH that peace might be offered unto the world.
50 ¶ Serve and strengthen thy body with love and prayer, bringing the light of the Torah unto mankind;
51 For from the Torah of YHVH comes honor and wisdom; yea, honoring and serving Alohykm is the foundation of that house;
52 Therefore, do not deprive thyself of the food from that offering, great love comes from prayer and prayer comes from thy honor unto YHVH.
53 ¶ I share with thee a blessing of love and have shared with thee the mysteries of the holy priesthood after the order of the Son of Man all throughout thy life.
54 As the Kohen and Kohanot thou art one and ye art a holy people, wisely in thy obey the mitzvoth of YHVH, and in praise unto YHVH forever.
55 ¶ And now, I do say unto thee: This is the wisdom of YHVH Elohim, teach thy people to teach the world in the name of YHVH;
56 Fight against pride and sin not with hate in thy heart, but in praise unto YHVH in prayer;
57 Yea, without His portion given unto thee, thy enemies will destroy this land and overtake all its inhabitants.
58 ¶ YHVH, the Elohim, King of kings of kings, sees in all directions; East to West, North to South, from the heavens above unto the abyss beneath, into thy heart, and in every way;
59 See now that you are not alone, because YHVH is everywhere: He sees good and bad within; therefore glorify YHVH in His righteousness,

60 Yea, bring the people of Alohykm together in YHVH, that they will not be separated; do this that they should do the work of the heavens; so mote it be.

Chapter 22

The Knowledge of Raphael who is Raziel
(Compare to Chapters 24:12-40 of the Book of Remembrance)

1 Behold, every path is blessed by Alohykm; therefore, strengthen thy heart to please YHVH.

2 The heart is eternal because it is thy inheritance; they who follow the path will understand that all good things come from Allah.

3 ¶ Evil will come from that devil, the adversary who tempted you in the garden; that Satan is the enemy of truth;

4 Thou shalt strive to always preach and fight that Satan because the devil will always encourage you and tempt you to sin and do evil.

5 ¶ Truth comes from YHVH; Ruach HaKodesh, the Voice, shall always call and inspire mankind for good;

6 Therefore, thou must know that anything that teaches people to honor YHVH, to do good, to love Elohim and to serve El Elyon, is from Alohykm who sent you.

7 ¶ Take the time to thank El Elyon! YHVH commanded mankind to unite and set out on the path each day, never ceasing.

8 The sinner, the thief, or the adulterer, they who are blind to the light of YHVH, the wisdom of YHVH,

9 These are they who know not how to approach the Presence of Elohim in any of the dwellings of His wisdom.

10 ¶ Remember, O man: The wisdom of YHVH who created the Torah, the reward is love; yea, worship YHVH a little and you will worship Him often.

11 Mankind should never ponder to abandon the will of YHVH, but stand before the Judge of the world, for thy tongue will be tried.

12 When mankind sees clearly, he knows that Satan rules over sorcerers and necromancers, these are the deceivers who only know the wisdom of this world;

13 Because they practice that priestcraft—the work of Satan, or works based on knowledge of Lilith and the signs of her leviathan;

14 Therefore, it is clear for those who serve Satan, that they cannot be trusted, for they are liars and deceivers, that they appear to know everything yet know nothing of YHVH,
15 Go not blind to thyself therefore with evil spells, lest you be condemned because of those who deny YHVH, the Creator.
16 ¶ YHVH did give life to the heart of mankind; therefore, open thy heart to all and respect all that doth live in the creation.
17 Know thou how to pray to the Lord of Judges, for YHVH is Lord above all; yea, say these words to end the dreams that are this work, to awaken in truth.
18 The impure do not rise to know YHVH, that Elohim who did create them, that they might know when to be ashamed in guilt, and say:
19 I have sinned, lied, spoken, or written, lest I should put myself before thy eyes.
20 ¶ Let YHVH clean thy sorrow in His mercy by meditating on the goodness of YHVH each time thou doth pray, by searching thy heart as thou doth bow down in prayer;
21 Yea, seek the perfection of YHVH, keep His mitzvoth and respect all life here in the creation.
22 Do not measure thy righteousness by thy deeds, neither by that which thou should do nor by what thou didst before;
23 To do this is to be judged by every word thou shalt write and every act of grace thou might perform.
24 ¶ Know that thy honor unto YHVH doth make thee whole; thy prayer is joy in the love of YHVH is what maketh thee whole;
25 Yea, rejoice in thy prayers unto YHVH; do this and thou art loved and protected.
26 Behold, it is from that source of light, even YHVH who did give unto thee His Torah that the deepest of knowledge, all the words and deeds of all the creation, that is the mercy of the Creator; even so, Amen.
27 ¶ And what is this light that Raphael that is Raziel doth speak of? It is the fire that burneth through the day and night, that fire that can never be quenched by any veil of darkness.
28 It is that very light that burns by the wisdom of YHVH into the hearts of men and women of His creation.
29 O Abraham! O Sarah! Harken and listen, for here is wisdom: All things are given a name and names,
30 And to all things is form given in every age, every day, every hour, and every minute of the eternal creation;
31 Only intelligence is invisible, for it is an eternal force that has always lived, never to be born, and never to taste death.

32 The temples in which thou doth dwelleth must be formed eternal; therefore thy form that is an age be thy spirit given thee for it hath a beginning with no end'
33 And thy form now, even this flesh, it shall be with thee for but a day then night shall come and it shall pass;
34 But when thy soul (*Nephesh*) is born, that age and that day shall be on in that very hour,
35 Yea, thou shalt be made whole in thy restitution unto YHVH in that very minute, yet night shall yet come unto thee of the flesh:
36 ¶ But fear not, O Abraham, nor thee Sarah, for thou art one flesh; yea, thou art one in YHVH;
37 Therefore, in the resurrection thou shall be made whole again, never to die again,
38 Always to be of one mind and one heart, invisible and visible, and infinite light of radiance bearing eternal testimony to the truth of YHVH.
39 ¶ Mankind is even as a star that has fallen, bound to this creation that they should feed on the struggle of this world;
40 But that star is a fire that burns by the breath of YHVH into the darkness when thou should take upon thyself new life as thou art a new creation of YHVH.
41 And out of that struggle shall the tree grow and blossom up out of thy heart, and the fruit of that tree, it does taste sweeter than honey!
42 Therefore, by the Torah doth life exist, and by YHVH that Torah; therefore seek thou not anything of this creation that is not that Torah;
43 That Torah hath been given in every age that mankind should know that Alohykm that did create them;
44 Therefore, awaken, O Abraham! Awaken, O Sarah! and eat of that tree, for thou art free to eat of its wisdom as thou art no longer Adam, nor art thou Eve that it should be forbidden thee;
45 See, therefore, that which was once hidden, and it shall be given thee, listen to that Voice and be thou wise in the things of YHVH.

Chapter 23

The Eight Tasks
(Compare to Chapters 25-26 of the Book of Remembrance)

1 Know thou Abraham, and thou Sarah, that these new names, given thee of YHVH, are the names of thy soul;

2 These are the names hidden in mysteries for mankind, in the temple of YHVH, which is thy heart.

3 Therefore, reach to the heavens, for I have set thee apart as the Kohen Gadol and Kohanot Gadolah of this generation;

4 Therefore speak for me, Melchizedek, the great Kohen Gadol of YHVH, El Elyon, in this age;

5 And even as I have been called and set apart, thou too hath been called and set apart; and thou art one in the name of YHVH.

6 ¶ Behold eight tasks shall I give unto thee, and these are even the same tasks that Raphael did give unto our fathers, Adam and Eve, to teach thy people to do, and each in their proper order:

7 First, begin thy rituals in prayer.

8 Second, rehearse unto all the proclamations of the Word of El Elyon.

9 Third, open thy heart to hear and to feel that thou might learn and be blessed.

10 Fourth, place oils and flowers pleasing to the nose upon thy altar to welcome YHVH into thy midst.

11 Fifth, keep thy body clean that thy hands might give in righteousness.

12 Sixth, consecrate upon the altar in supplication before Alohykm.

13 Seventh, renew thy covenants that the body, mind, and spirit might be renewed therein.

14 Eight, thy feet walk into the tabernacle, yea the house of study and even the house of prayer.

15 And I say unto thee: Complete these that thou mayest return into the world of mankind in the perfection of YHVH.

16 ¶ Behold, to honor YHVH is the foundation, for it is giving up thy desire of self (*egoism*);

17 Do not praise YHVH for the sake of this world or in pretending to earn eternal glory, no; grace has saved thee, and thy work shall be as a sign unto this world.

18 When the Torah is in thy hands, read it that it should be in thy heart, and once the Torah is in thy heart it shall change thy actions;

19 And this because by thy actions shall be pour out light of the mercy of YHVH,

20 And thy heart shall be revealed and the light of YHVH shall be given unto others that their hearts might be changed also.

21 ¶ Was this knowledge hidden in the womb because Alohykm was afraid to reveal these secrets?

22 I shall tell thee truthfully that thou not be lead into temptation; for every work alone is death, otherwise how can mankind find truth?

23 Study also the letters that they should proclaim the Torah unto you, and teach your children also, that they may gain knowledge when they are young.

24 The Torah shall be written in the heart, for it is filled with all thy mitzvoth; to overcome the body, conquer thy heart (*mind*) and body; know that YHVH is.

25 ¶ Yea, give YHVH all glory, and I say unto thee again: Go now and serve YHVH with love,

26 Believe with love, and teach with love, and you will be called the children of Alohykm; so mote it be!

27 ¶ Keep thy mitzvoth in secret, walking with Ha'Elohim, and in keeping thy mitzvoth, do thus not in pride, but in secret—

28 Alohykm sees what thou doeth in thy hidden chambers that thou should be rewarded;

29 Therefore, pray alone, and when you pray, put on the garments of righteousness before Alohykm.

30 ¶ Behold, when mankind shall ask thee: What of justice? For thou art righteous according to the Torah of YHVH; keep the love of YHVH in thy heart, showing honor to YHVH;

31 Rejoice before Elohim, speak in honesty and wisdom; tremble in the Presence of Elohim, giving thy heart only to YHVH.

32 Do not present the truth to mankind only to save thy face before them, thou hast taken the oath; therefore, speak truth boldly for the sake of YHVH, thy Elohim.

33 ¶ Know too that everything created by human hands will disappear, all idols are in vain;

34 Therefore, let all thy deeds be of the heavens and not of the earth, that thou should obtain light from YHVH.

35 Remember that the secret is to honor YHVH Alohykm; everything was created to be known, understood, and to grant wisdom unto mankind:

36 Offer no evidence for truth, for truth is its own witness.

37 ¶ Now, I say unto thee: Take these words and write these things in a book, reveal the secrets, and reveal the power of the Son of Man that did create the universe;

38 Mankind doth love to learn secrets, and the greatest of secrets if thus: Glorify YHVH and let Ruach HaKodesh dwell in thy temple.

39 Come now and write these truths from the above on thy door that thou should know the oneness of YHVH.

40 Keep the glory of YHVH in thy heart; yea, worship Him alone for He is one and not two: Blessed be YHVH Elohim—

41 ¶ YHVH is the first and the last, YHVH is the Creator of the earth, there is no Elohim before nor after Him;

42 His is the first covenant, yea, the first word written even before the creation of the world.

43 YHVH doth rise first, and He speaks with a loud voice, for when the morning star fell at the end of his glory, seeking to be exalted above El Elyon, he did see that nothing could stand against Him:

44 YHVH alone is the beginning and the end; the Great Creator of the universe, even that which is beyond this world, and there is no end to His power.

45 ¶ Know that in the temple, Alohykm wrote the creation of all things; it is written in the Holy of Holies in the first heaven.

46 Through the gate, between at veil of darkness and that veil of light, humanity must choose their path:

47 To descends into the chaos of the abyss, serving in chaos, or to rise and climb up and bring that light of YHVH to cleans this, the earth.

48 YHVH Elohim did give unto mankind two temples, that is, Ruach HaKodesh dwells in mankind and mankind doth rejoice to dwell in the house of Alohykm, the sanctuary of YHVH.

49 Remember too that destruction is creation; therefore, there shall be those who did live in that first kingdom only to perish in the second kingdom.

50 ¶ Everything created by YHVH was created in pairs: two worlds, heaven and earth, all enter the Garden of Eden; their paths are lit by the sun and the moon;

51 Therefore, humanity, although glorified by the Son of Man, will perish, be reborn, and fall, otherwise He alone would be left in the kingdom; so mote it be, Amen.

52 ¶ And now do I say unto thee, Abraham and unto thee, Sarah: Reach up unto the heavens eternally,

53 For thou art of that High Priesthood after the order of the Son of Man, and pull yonder heavens down here, unto this, the earth;

54 Cast thy thoughts always upward, unto that light of YHVH, which is life eternal.

55 Thou hast been given the keys, and the light that thou should see that path;

56 Therefore, seek thee the wisdom of Shekinah, turn thy thoughts unto thy heart that thy heart should be not closed unto that light.

57 Understand the symbols and the numbers that thy path should be clear, that thou should break past the veil of light that lieth between the earth and the heavens.

58 Pour that flame of the sun that the darkness should be shattered and live this day!

Chapter 24

The Seven Days
(Compare to Chapters 27 of the Book of Remembrance)

1 And now, I say unto thee, Abraham, and unto thee, Sarah: Take heed! Every Adam and every Eve doth have seven parts, even as the seven days of thy creation;

2 These days are the path that lead all of mankind unto that light of YHVH and the Alohykm by way of Ruach HaKodesh;

3 Therefore, take heed and listen that thou might live forever, a child of Alohykm thou art and shall be.

4 Even as a child, looking up at the night sky, did I wonder, sinking deeply into the mysteries of El Elyon, dreaming in my heart.

5 And as my heart did grow, I learned to walk in that pathway of the stars, for that night sky is but a reflection of the things of this earth;

6 Yea, and it is even as such: as above, so below, as below so above, for that which is above was made first in its creation; therefore, is like to that which is below:

7 But the things of this world, they have been corrupted, and though they do mirror and that which is above,

8 It is by the grace of YHVH that that which is below shall be even as that which is above.

9 ¶ And thus do we have the seasons, that mankind should learn the night sky, and all seasons, and each of the months, and of the Sabbaths, they are of YHVH and all but a reflection of that which is above;

10 Therefore, all that I should teach you, and all that thou should make know unto thy children, and they unto their children's children, are the rituals celestial.

11 And the year doth begin in the spring, and so too doth these first four malau that I have given unto thee.

12 Behold, the washing and anointing are given that thou should be clean after thou has been ordained, that thy exodus from death and sin, even that death should pass over thee.

13 And this should be observed on the first new moon of the spring, and the first full moon observed also, as this is thy first month in teshuvah.

14 And when it shall be that the year hath passed, thou shall look and see; if thou has done wisely, it shall be observed that growth in degrees given thee of YHVH.

15 ¶ And so it was that Raphael did come to teach Adam and Eve that they might teach their seed of the degrees in the heavens, saying:

16 The entire world, yea, even the entire universe, was created and filled by the word of YHVH, and this creation became one within the seventh heaven.

17 Behold, YHVH is El Elyon, even Lord (*Adoni*) God (*Elohim*) over everything;

18 Therefore, YHVH is the ten Sefirot, from below the earth to beyond the heavens, and from the East to the West, and the North to the South, forever and ever.

19 ¶ The light of YHVH illuminates the thirty-two paths that reside between the Sefirot, starting with Elohim;

20 Walk these paths until you see the creation through the eyes of that Creator and thou shalt discover the most sacred names of Alohykm.

21 Before the beginning was YHVH, El Elyon, He who created Ha'Elohim, giving unto Himself the name YHVH.

22 And YHVH is One, that He should make all the worlds, high, middle and low, and fulfill all according to the Torah (*instruction*) of the Father (*Aviad*);

23 Without the will of Aviad, no stones nor shapes were formed, without Asyma there was no life given them.

24 Bless YHVH! Even as Alohykm, He doth live in the seventh heaven and rules over everything.

25 ¶ Think of YHVH in eternal ages; through these degress, at the beginning of the world, mankind was given to see glory and majesty.

26 ¶ The Voice speaketh unto the heart, saying: Men do not think of the glory of heaven;

27 Even as Aviad and Shekianh instructed and as YHVH decreed, Ha'Elohim did create this world with the knowledge of Alohykm in reverence;

28 Therefore, serve Yah and YHVH with all thy heart, and do good for the creation all thy life.

29 When YHVH did breathe life into mankind, Yah did say: All things are the breath of Ruach HaKodesh; and this is the first degree.

30 ¶ From the Word comes the breath, from the mouth; therefore, the soul does not find peace from pain.

31 ¶ These are the words of that same fire and water; mankind is to pressed their lips to the words that the noise of it should be strong!

32 And when YHVH did speak, sparks flew from the breath even as fire shooting from the rocks:

33 Wherefore, when thou shall speak in faith, the power of that fire cometh from out of thy mouths to ignite the flame of hope.

34 Is not the power of the Word like fire? This is the power of the Voice the doth come from the very breath of Elohim (*Ruach HaKodesh*).

35 And when it shall come to pass that the people shall rise from the grave and are born again in YHVH, it shall be even as the steam rising from the water (*baptism?*).

36 Even as the heat of the fire burns the old and creates the new life in every dwelling, in Nephi[a] is the soul born in water and fire, and mankind is born again in YHVH.

37 ¶ This is the word of YHVH: A fire that eats fire.

38 The breath of life is the glory of YHVH, who made the Word flesh.

39 Everything that is done is done through the Word of YHVH and is therefore eternally blessed.

40 They who believe in truth, even after the light of YHVH is extinguished from mankind, they will be healed:

41 The world will be healed, the earth will be filled, and creation will be completed on the day following the Sabbath of YHVH.

42 ¶ Blessed is YHVH Elohim to create all the Torah and the mitzvoth given unto mankind; Elohim Shaddai: Eternal is His glory and power; so mote it be; Amen.

43 ¶ Behold, Abraham, and thou too, Sarah, that this cleansing (*Nephi*) is that seven days of creation; therefore, remember thy rest.

Notes:

a. This term, Nephi shares the same root as "nephesh," Hebrew for "soul," and is used to describe a cleansing perhaps by burning something to purity it in a flammable liquid, this seems to be an invitation to baptism; see 2 Maccabees 1:32-36

Chapter 25

Taught at the Veil

1 Behold, even as I have taught it unto my people, I shall teach it unto you;
2 For they all, my people, did struggle upwards unto the heavens, not to leave this earth but that the will of Alohykm should be done here upon the earth:
3 And for this I and they have been blessed, and we prepare, even now, to leave this plane, for the veil of light hath been rent before us, and we have been called home;
4 Therefore, our souls do travel freely into that intimate light, beyond knowledge, beyond the idolatrous whims of mankind;
5 For we have found that Torah which I do teach thee now, and wrapped ourselves in that Shekinah, resting in the love of YHVH.
6 ¶ And now I do invite thee to teach all that I have given thee and all that I shall give thee in YHVH, unto thy children, that they too should know to rend that veil;
7 And by these rituals do I teach thee, for this is how I too was taught, in the temple of El Eyon;
8 Therefore it is how I have taught my wives, and how we have taught our people; therefore, it is how thou shall be taught, and how thou shall teach it unto thy seed until that last generation.

The rest of this chapter and remaining chapters are to be kept from the world until the temple of YHVH is built for all people, that the rituals and teachings may be shared within.

The Book of Abraham

A translation of some ancient Records that have fallen into our hands, from the Catacombs of Egypt, purporting to be the writings of Abraham, while he was in Egypt, called the Book of Abraham, written by his own hand, upon papyrus.

Chapter 1

Taken from Times and Seasons, 1 March 1842.

1 In the land of the Chaldeans, at the residence of my father, I, Abraham, saw that it was needful for me to obtain another place of residence,

2 And finding there was greater happiness and peace and rest for me, I sought for the blessings of the fathers and the right whereunto I should be ordained to administer the same; having been myself a follower of righteousness, desiring also to be one who possessed great knowledge, and to be a greater follower of righteousness, and to possess a greater knowledge, and to be a father of many nations, a prince of peace; and desiring to receive instructions, and to keep the commandments of God, I became a rightful heir, a high priest, holding the right belonging to the fathers,

3 It was conferred upon me from the fathers; it came down from the fathers, from the beginning of time, yea, even from the beginning, or before the foundations of the earth, to the present time, even the right of the first born, on the first man, who is Adam, or first father, through the fathers, unto me.

4 ¶ I sought for mine appointment unto the Priesthood according to the appointment of God unto the fathers, concerning the seed.

5 My fathers having turned from their righteousness, and from the holy commandments which the Lord their God had given unto them, unto the worshipping of the Gods of the heathens, utterly refused to hearken to my voice;

6 For their hearts were set to do evil, and were wholly turned to the God of Elkenah, and the God of Libnah, and the God of Mahmackrah, and the God of Korash, and the God of Pharaoh, King of Egypt;

7 Therefore they turned their hearts to the sacrifice of the heathen in offering up their children unto their dumb idols, and hearkened not unto my voice but endeavored to take away my life by the hand of the priest of Elkenah; the priest of Elkenah was also the priest of Pharaoh.

8 ¶ Now, at this time it was the custom of the priest of Pharaoh, the King of Egypt to offer up upon the altar which was built in the land of Chaldea, for the offering unto these strange Gods, both men, wo[m]en and children.

9 And it came to pass that the priest made an offering unto the God of Pharaoh, and also unto the God of Shagreel, even after the manner of the Egyptians; now the God of Shagreel was the Sun.

10 Even the thank-offering of a child did the priest of Pharaoh offer upon the altar, which stood by the hill called Potiphar's Hill, at the head of the plain of Olishem.

11 Now, this priest had offered upon this altar three virgins at one time, who were the daughters of Onitah, one of the Royal descent, directly from the loins of Ham. These virgins were offered up because of their virtue; they would not bow down to worship Gods of wood or of stone, therefore they were killed upon this altar, and it was done after the manner of the Egyptians.

12 ¶ And it come to pass that the priests laid violence upon me, that they might slay me, also, as they did those virgins, upon this altar; and that you might have a knowledge of this altar, I will refer you to the representation at the commencement of this record.

13 It was made after the form of a bedstead, such as was had among the Chaldeans, and it stood before the gods of Elkenah, Libnah, Mahmackrah, Korash, and also a God like unto that of Pharaoh King of Egypt.

14 That you may have an understanding of these Gods, I have given you the fashion of them in the figures, at the beginning, which manner of the figures is called by the Chaldeans Rahleenos, which signifies Hieroglyphics.

15 ¶ And as they lifted up their hands upon me, that they might offer me up, and take away my life, behold, I lifted up my voice unto the Lord my God; and the Lord hearkened and heard, and he filled me with a vision of the Almighty, and the angel of his presence stood by me, and immediately unloosed my bands,

16 And his voice was unto me: Abram! Abram! behold, my name is JEHOVAH, and I have heard thee, and have come down to deliver thee, and to take thee away from thy fathers house, and from all thy kin-folks, into a strange land, which thou knowest not of,

17 And this because they have turned their hearts away from me, to worship the God of Elkenah, and the God of Libnah, & the God of

Mahmackrah, & the God of Korash, and the God of Pharaoh King of Egypt; therefore I have come down to visit them, and to destroy him who hath lifted up his hand against thee, Abram, my son, to take away thy life:

18 Behold I will lead thee by my hand, and I will take thee, to put upon thee my name, even the priesthood of thy father: and my power shall be over thee;

19 As it was with Noah so shall it be with thee; that through thy ministry my name shall be known in the earth forever, for I am thy God.

20 ¶ Behold, Potiphar's Hill was in the land of Ur, of Chaldea; and the Lord broke down the altar of Elkenah, and of the Gods of the land, and utterly destroyed them, and smote the priest that he died; and there was great mourning in Chaldea, and also in the court of Pharaoh, which Pharaoh signifies King by royal blood.—

21 Now this King of Egypt was a descendant from the loins of Ham, and was a partaker of the blood of the Canaanites, by birth.

22 From this descent sprang all the Egyptians, and thus the blood of the Canaanites was preserved in the land.

23 ¶ The land of Egypt being first discovered by a woman, who was the daughter of Ham, and the daughter of Egyptus, which, in the Chaldea, signifies Egypt, which signifies, that which is forbidden.

24 When this woman discovered the land it was under water, who afterwards settled her sons in it: And thus, from Ham, sprang that race which preserved the curse in the land.

25 Now the first government of Egypt was established by Pharaoh, the eldest son of Egyptus, the daughter of Ham, and it was after the manner of the government of Ham, which was Patriarchal.

26 Pharaoh, being a righteous man, established his kingdom and judged his people wisely and justly all his days, seeking earnestly to imitate that order established by the fathers in the first generations, in the days of the first Patriarchal reign, even in the reign of Adam, and also Noah, his father, who blessed him with the blessings of the earth, and with the blessings of wisdom, but cursed him as pertaining to the Priesthood.

27 ¶ Now Pharaoh being of that lineage, by which he could not have the right of Priesthood, notwithstanding the Pharaoh's would fain claim it from Noah, through Ham, therefore my father was led away by their idolatry;

28 But I shall endeavor hereafter to delineate the chronology, running back from myself to the beginning of the creation, for the records have come into my hands, which I hold unto this present time.

29 ¶ Now, after the priest of Elkenah was smitten, that he died, there came a fulfilment of those things which were said unto me concerning the land of Chaldea, that there should be a famine in the land.
30 Accordingly, a famine prevailed throughout all the land of Chaldea, and my father was sorely tormented because of the famine, and he repented of the evil which he had determined against me, to take away my life.
31 But the records of the fathers, even the Patriarchs, concerning the right of Priesthood, the Lord my God preserved in mine own hands, therefore a knowledge of the beginning of the creation, and also of the planets, and of the stars, as they were made known unto the fathers, have I kept even unto this day, and I shall endeavor to write some of these things upon this record, for the benefit of my posterity that shall come after me.

Chapter 2

Verses 1-18 taken from Times and Seasons, 1 March 1842; vs 19-25 from 15 March 1842.

1 Now the Lord God caused the famine to wax sore in the land of Ur, insomuch that Haran, my brother, died, but Terah, my father, yet lived in the land of Ur, of the Chaldee's.
2 And it came to pass that I, Abraham, took Sarai to wife, and Nehor, my brother, took Milcah to wife, who were the daughters of Haran.
3 Now the Lord had said unto me: Abram, get thee out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and from thy father's house, unto a land that I will shew thee;
4 Therefore, I left the land of Ur, of the Chaldees, to go into the land of Canaan; and I took Lot, my brother's son, and his wife, and Sarai, my wife, and also my father followed after me, unto the land which we denominated Haran.
5 And the famine abated; and my father tarried in Haran and dwelt there, as there were many flocks in Haran; and my father turned again unto his idolatry, therefore he continued in Haran.
6 ¶ But I, Abram, and Lot, my brother's son, prayed unto the Lord, and the Lord appeared unto me, and said unto me, arise, and take Lot with thee, for I have purposed to take thee away out of Haran, and to make of thee a minister, to bear my name in a strange land which I will give unto thy seed after thee for an everlasting possession, when they hearken to my voice,

7 For I am the Lord thy God; I dwell in Heaven, the earth is my footstool; I stretch my hand over the sea, and it obeys my voice; I cause the wind and the fire to be my chariot; I say to the mountains depart hence, and behold they are taken away by a whirlwind, in an instant, suddenly.

8 My name is Jehovah, and I know the end from the beginning, therefore, my hand shall be over thee,

9 And I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee above measure, and make thy name great among all nations, and thou shalt be a blessing unto thy seed after thee, that in their hands they shall bear this ministry and priesthood unto all nations;

10 And I will bless them through thy name; for as many as receive this gospel shall be called after thy name, and shall be accounted thy seed, and shall rise up and bless thee, as unto their father,

11 And I will bless them that bless thee, and curse them that curse thee, and in thee, (that is, in thy Priesthood) and in thy seed, (that is thy Priesthood,) for I give unto thee a promise that this right shall continue in thee, and in thy seed after thee (that is to say, the literal seed, or the seed of the body,) shall all the families of the earth be blessed, even with the blessings of the gospel, which are the blessings of salvation, even of life eternal.

12 ¶ Now, after the Lord had withdrawn from speaking to me, and withdrawn his face from me, I said in mine heart, thy servent has sought thee earnestly, now I have found thee.

13 Thou didst send thine angel to deliver me from the Gods of Elkenah, and I will do well to hearken unto thy voice, therefore let thy servant rise up and1 depart in peace.

14 So I, Abram, departed as the Lord had said unto me, and Lot with me, and I, Abram, was sixty and two years old when I departed out of Haran.

15 And I took Sarai, whom I took to wife when I was in Ur, in Chaldea, and Lot, my brother's son, and all our substance that we had gathered, and the souls that we had won in Haran, and came forth in the way to the land of Canaan, and dwelt in tents, as we came on our way:

16 Therefore, eternity was our covering, and our rock, and our salvation, as we journeyed from Haran by the way of Jershon, to come to the land of Canaan.

17 ¶ Now I, Abram, built an altar in the land of Jershon, and made an offering unto the Lord, and prayed that the famine might be turned away from my father's house, that they might not perish;

18 And then we passed from Jershon through the land, unto the place of Sechem. It was situated in the plains of Moreh, and we had already came into the borders of the land of the Canaanites, and I offered

sacrifice there in the plains of Moreh, and called on the Lord devoutly because we had already come into the land of this idolatrous nation.

1. The Angel of the Lord.
2. Abraham, fastened upon an altar.
3. The Idolatrous Priest of Elkenah attempting to offer up Abraham as a sacrifice.
4. The Altar for sacrifice by the Idolatrous Priests standings before the Gods of Elkenah, and Libnah, and Mahmackrah, Korash and Pharaoh.
5. The Idolatrous God of Elkenah.
6. The Idolatrous God of Libnah.
7. The Idolatrous God of Mahmackrah.
8. The Idolatrous God of Korash.
9. The Idolatrous God of Pharaoh.
10. Abraham in Egypt.
11. Designed to represent the pillars of heaven as understood by the Egyptians.
12. Raukeeyang. Signifying expanse or firmament over our heads; but in this case, in relation to this subject, the Egyptians meant it to Signify Shaumau, to or be highs, heaven; or the heavens; answering to the Hebrew word, Shaumahyeem.

19 ¶ And the Lord appeared unto me in answer to my prayers, and said unto me, unto thy seed I will give this land.
20 And I, Abraham, arose from the place of the Altar which I had built unto the Lord, and removed from thence unto a mountain on the east of Bethel, and pitched my tent there; Bethel on the West, and Hai on the East; and there I built another altar unto the Lord, and called again upon the name of the Lord.
21 ¶ And I, Abraham, journeyed, going on still towards the South; and there was a continuation of a famine in the Land, and I Abraham concluded to go down into Egypt, to sojourn there, for the famine became very grievious.
22 And it came to pass when I was come near to enter into Egypt, the Lord said unto me: behold, Sarai, thy wife, is a very fair woman to look upon;
23 Therefore, it shall come to pass when the Egyptians shall see her, they will say she is his wife; and they will kill you, but they will save her alive; therefore, see that ye do on this wise:
24 Let her say unto the Egyptians, she is thy sister, and thy soul shall live.
25 And it came to pass that I, Abraham, told Sarai, my wife, all that the Lord had said unto me; therefore, say unto them, I pray thee, thou art my sister, that it may be well with me for thy sake, and my soul shall live because of thee.

Chapter 3

Taken from Times and Seasons, 15 March 1842.

1 And I, Abraham, had the Urim and Thummim, which the Lord my God had given unto me, in Ur of the Chaldees;
2 And I saw the stars also that they were very great, and that one of them was nearest unto the throne of God; and there were many great ones, which were near unto it;
3 And the Lord said unto me: These are the governing ones; and the name of the great one is Kolob, because it is near unto me: for I am the Lord thy God, I have set this one to govern all those which belong to the same order of that upon which thou standest.
4 And the Lord said unto me, by the Urim and Thummim, that Kolob was after the manner of the Lord, according to its times and seasons in the revolutions thereof; that one revolution was a day unto the Lord, after his manner of reckoning, it being one thousand years according

to the time appointed unto that whereon thou standest; this is the reckoning of the Lord's time, according to the reckoning of Kolob.

5 ¶ And the Lord said unto me: the planet, which is the lesser light, lesser than that which is to rule the day, even the night, is above, or greater than that upon which thou standest, in point of reckoning, for it moveth in order more slow: this is in order, because it standeth above the earth upon which thou standest, therefore, the reckoning of its time is not so many as to its number of days, and of months, and of years.

6 And the Lord said unto me: Now, Abraham, these two facts exist, behold thine eyes seeth it; it is given unto thee to know the times of reckoning, and the set times, yea the set time of the earth upon which thou standest, and the set time of the greater light, which is set to rule the day, and the set time of the lesser light, which is set to rule the night.

7 ¶ Now the set time of the lesser light, is a longer time as to its reckoning, than the reckoning of the time of the earth upon which thou standest;

8 And where these two facts exist, there shall be another fact above them, that is, there shall be another planet whose reckoning of time shall be longer still;

9 And thus there shall be the reckoning of the time of one planet above another, until thou come nigh unto Kolob, which Kolob, is after the reckoning of the Lord's time; which, Kolob, is set nigh unto the throne of God, to govern all those planets which belong to the same order of that upon which thou standest.

10 And it is given unto thee, to know the set time of all the stars, that are set to give light, until thou come near unto the throne of God.

11 ¶ Thus I, Abraham, talked with the Lord, face to face, as one man talketh with another; and he told me of the works which his hands had made;

12 And he said unto me: My son, my son, and his hand was stretched out, behold I will shew you all these; and he put his hand upon mine eyes, and I saw those things, which his hands had made, which were many; and they multiplied before mine eyes, and I could not see the end thereof.

13 And he said unto me: This is Shinehah, (which is the sun); and he said unto me: Kokob, which is star; and he said unto me: Olea, which is the moon; and he said unto me: Kokaubeam, which signifies stars, or all the great lights, which were in the firmament of heaven.

14 And it was in the nighttime when the Lord spake these words unto me, I will multiply thee, and thy seed after thee, like unto these; and if

thou canst count the number of sands so shall be the number of thy seeds.

15 ¶ And the Lord said unto me: Abraham, I shew these things unto thee, before ye go into Egypt, that ye may declare all these words.

16 If two things exist, and there be one above the other, there shall be greater things above them; therefore, Kolob is the greatest of all the Kokaubeam that thou hast seen, because it is nearest unto me:

17 Now, if there be two things, one above the other, and the Moon be above the earth, then it may be that a planet, or a star may exist above it, and there is nothing that the Lord thy God shall take in his heart to do, but what he will do it:

18 Howbeit that he made the greater star, as, also, if there be two spirits, and one shall be more intelligent than the other, yet these two spirits, notwithstanding one is more intelligent than the other, yet they have no beginning, they existed before; they shall have no end, they shall exist after, for they are Gnolaum, or Eternal.

19 ¶ And the Lord said unto me, these two facts do exist, that there are two spirits, one being more intelligent than the other, there shall be another more intelligent than they: I am the Lord thy God, I am more intelligent than they all.

20 The Lord thy God sent His angel to deliver thee from the hands of the Priest of Elkenah.

21 I dwell in the midst of them all; I, now, therefore, have come down unto thee, to deliver unto thee the works which my hands have made, wherein my wisdom excelleth them all, for I rule in the heavens above, and in the earth beneath, in all wisdom and prudence, over all the intelligences thine eyes have seen from the beginning; I came down in the beginning in the midst of all the intelligences thou hast seen.

22 ¶ Now the lord had shewn unto me, Abraham, the intelligences that were organized before the world was; and among all these there were many of the noble and great ones,

23 And God saw these souls that they were good, and He stood in the midst of them, and he said, these, I will make my rulers; for he stood among those that were spirits, and he saw that they were good; and He said unto me: Abraham, thou art one of them, thou wast chosen before thou wast born.

24 And there stood one among them that was like unto God, and he said unto those who were with him: We will go down, for there is space there, and we will take of these materials, and we will make an Earth whereon these may dwell;

25 And we will prove them herewith, to see if they will do all things whatsoever the Lord their God shall command them;

26 And they, who keep their first estate, shall be added upon; and they, who keep not their first estate, shall not have glory in the same kingdom, with those who keep their first estate; and they, who keep their second estate, shall have glory added upon their heads forever and ever.
27 ¶ And the Lord said, who shall I send? And one answered like unto the Son of Man, here am I, send me; and another answered and said, here am I, send me; and the Lord said: I will send the first.
28 And the second was angry, and kept not his first estate, and, at that day, many followed after him.

Chapter 4

Taken from Times and Seasons, 15 March 184.

1 And then the Lord said: Let us go down; and they went down at the beginning, and they organized and formed, (that is, the gods,) the heavens and the earth.
2 And the earth, after it was formed, was empty and desolate; because they had not formed anything but the earth: and darkness reigned upon the face of the deep, and the spirit of the Gods was brooding upon the faces of the water.
3 ¶ And they said, the gods, let there be light, and there was light.
4 And they, the gods, comprehended the light, for it was bright; and they divided the light, or caused it to be divided from the darkness; and the gods called the light day, and the darkness they called night.
5 And it came to pass that from the evening until morning, they called night; and from the morning until the evening, they called day: and this was the first, or the beginning of that which they called day and night.
6 ¶ And the Gods also said: Let there be an expanse in the midst of the waters, and it shall divide the waters from the waters.
7 And the Gods ordered the expanse, so that it divided the waters which were under the expanse, from the waters which were above the expanse: and it was so, even as they ordered.
8 And the Gods called the expanse, heaven; and it came to pass that it was from evening until morning, that they called night; and it came to pass that it was morning until evening, that they called day: and this was the second time, that they called night and day.

1. Kolob, signifying the first creation, nearest to the celestial, or the residence of God. First in government, the last pertaining to the measurement of time. The measurement according to the celestial time; which, celestial time, signifies one day to a cubit. One day, in Kolob, is equal to a thousand years, according to the measurement of this earth, which is called by the Egyptians Jah-oh-eh.
2. Stands next to Kolob, called by the Egyptians Oliblish, which is the next grand governing creation, near to the celestial or the place where God resides; holding the key of power also, pertaining to other planets; as revealed from God to Abraham, as he offered sacr2ifice upon an altar, which he had built unto the Lord.
3. Is made to represent God, sitting upon his throne, clothed with power and authority; with a crown of eternal light upon his head; representing, also, the grand Key words of the Holy Priesthood, as revealed to Adam in the Garden of Eden, as also to Seth, Noah, Melchizedek, Abraham, and all to whom the Priesthood was revealed.
4. Answers to the Hebrew word Raukeeyang, signifying expanse, or the firmament of the heav-ens: also, a numerical figure, in Egyptian, signifying one thousand; answering to the measuring of the time of Oliblish, which is equal with Kolob in its revolution and in its measuring of time.
5. Is called in Egyptian Enish-go-on-dosh; that is one of the governing planets also; and is said by the Egyptians to be the Sun, and to borrow its light from Kolob through the medium of Kae-e-vanrash, which is the grand Key, or in other words, the governing power, which gov-erns fifteen other fixed planets or stars, as also Floeese or the Moon, the earth and the Sun in their annual revolutions.

This planet receives its power through the medium of Kli-flos-is-es, or Hah-ko-kau-beam, the stars represented by numbers 22, and 23, receiving light from the revolutions of Kolob.

6. Represents this earth in its four quarters.
7. Represents God sitting upon his throne, revealing, through the heavens, the grand Key words of the Priesthood; as, also, the sign of the Holy Ghost unto Abraham, in the form of a dove.
8. Contains writing that cannot be revealed unto the world; but is to be had in the Holy Temple of God.
9. Ought not to be revealed at the present time.
10. Ought not to be revealed at the present time.
11. Ought not to be revealed at the present time—if the world can find out these numbers, so let it be, Amen.
12. Will be given in the own due time of the Lord.
13. Will be given in the own due time of the Lord.
14. Will be given in the own due time of the Lord.
15. Will be given in the own due time of the Lord.
16. Will be given in the own due time of the Lord.
17. Will be given in the own due time of the Lord.
18. Will be given in the own due time of the Lord.
19. Will be given in the own due time of the Lord.
20. Will be given in the own due time of the Lord.
21. Will be given in the own due time of the Lord.

9 ¶ And the gods ordered, saying: Let the waters under the heaven be gathered together unto one place, and let the earth come up dry, and it was so, as they ordered;

10 And the gods pronounced the earth dry, and the gathering together of the waters, pronounced they great waters: and the gods saw that they were obeyed.

11 And the gods said: Let us prepare the earth to bring forth grass; the herb yielding seed; the fruit tree yielding fruit, after his kind, whose seed in itself yieldeth its own likeness upon the earth; and it was so even as they ordered.

12 And the gods organized the earth to bring forth grass from its own seed, and the herb to bring forth herb from its own seed, yielding seed after his kind, and the earth to bring forth the tree from its own seed, yielding fruit, whose seed could only bring forth the same, in itself, after his kind; and the gods saw that they were obeyed.

13 And it came to pass that they numbered the days; from the evening until the morning they called night; and it came to pass from the morning until the evening they called day; and it was the third time.

14 ¶ And the gods organized the lights in the expanse of the heaven, and caused them to divide the day from the night; and organized them to be for signs, and for seasons, and for days, and for years;

15 And organized them to be for lights in the expanse of the heaven, to give light upon the earth; and it was so.

16 And the gods organized the two great lights, the greater light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night; with the lesser light he set the stars, also;
17 And the gods set them in the expanse of the heavens, to give light upon the earth, and to rule over the day and over the night, and to cause to divide the light from the darkness.
18 And the gods watched those things which they had ordered, until they obeyed.
19 And it came to pass, that it was from evening until morning, that it was night; and it came to pass that it was from morning until evening, that it was day; and it was the fourth time.
20 ¶ And the gods said: Let us prepare the waters to bring forth abundantly the moving creatures that hath life; and the fowl that they may fly above the earth, in the open expanse of heaven.
21 And the gods prepared the waters that they might bring forth great whales, and every living creature that moveth, which the waters were to bring forth abundantly after their kind; and every winged fowl after their kind; and the gods saw that they would be obeyed, and that their plan was good.
22 And the gods said: We will bless them and cause them to be fruitful and multiply, and fill the waters in the seas, or great waters; and cause the fowl to multiply in the earth.
23 And it came to pass that it was from evening until morning, that they called night; and it came to pass that it was from morning until evening, that they called day; and it was the fifth time.
24 ¶ And the gods prepared the earth to bring forth the living creature after his kind, cattle and creeping things, and beast of the earth after their kind; and it was so as they had said.
25 And the Gods organized the earth to bring forth the beasts after their kind, and cattle after their kind, and everything that creepeth upon the earth after their kind; and the Gods saw they would obey.
26 And the gods took counsel among themselves, and said: Let us go down, and form man in our image, after our likeness, and we will give them dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing, that creepeth upon the earth.
27 So, the gods went down to organize man in their own image, in the image of the gods, to form they him, male and female, to form they them:
28 And the gods said: We will bless them; and the gods said: We will cause them to be fruitful, and multiply and replenish the earth, and subdue it, and to have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth.

29 And the gods said: behold, we will give them every herb bearing seed that shall come upon the face of all the earth, and every tree which shall have fruit upon it, yea the fruit of the tree, yielding seed to them we will give it, it shall be for their meat;
30 And to every beast of the earth, and to every fowl of the air, and to everything that creepeth upon the earth, behold we will give them life, and also we will give to them every green herb for meat, and all these things shall be thus organized.
31 And the gods said: We will do everything that we have said, and organize them; and, behold, they shall be very obedient; and it came to pass that it was from evening until morning, they called night; and it came to pass that it was from morning until evening, they called day; and they numbered the sixth time.

Chapter 5

Taken from Times and Seasons, 15 March 18422.

1 And thus, we will finish the heavens and the earth, and all the hosts of them.
2 And the gods said among themselves, on the seventh time: We will end our work, which we have counselled; and we will rest on the seventh time from all our work which we have counselled.
3 And the gods concluded upon the seventh time, because that on the seventh time they would rest from all their works, which they, the gods, counselled among themselves to form, and sanctified it—and thus were their decisions, at the time that they counselled among themselves to form the heavens and the earth.
4 And the gods came down and formed these, the generations of the heavens, and of the earth, when they were formed, in the day that the gods formed the earth and the heavens,
5 According to all that, which they had said, concerning every plant of the field, before it was in the earth, and every herb of the field, before it grew; for the gods had not caused it to rain upon the earth, when they counselled to do them; and had not formed a man to till the ground;
6 But there went up a mist from the earth, and watered the whole face of the ground.
7 And the gods formed man from the dust of the ground, and took his spirit, that is the man's spirit, and put it into him, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life, and man became a living soul.

8 ¶ And the Gods planted a garden, eastward in Eden, and there they put the man, whose spirit they had put into the body, which they had formed.

9 And out of the ground made the Gods to grow every tree that is pleasant to the sight, and good for food: the tree of life, also, in the midst of the garden, and the tree of knowledge of good and evil.

10 There was a river running out of Eden, to water the garden, and from thence it was parted and became into four heads.

11 And the gods took the man and put him in the Garden of Eden, to dress it and to keep it:

12 And the gods commanded the man, saying: Of every tree of the Garden, thou mayest freely eat,

13 But of the tree of knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it, for in the time that thou eatest thereof, thou shalt surely die—now I, Abraham, saw that it was after the Lord's time, which was after the time of Kolob; for as yet, the Gods had not appointed unto Adam his reckoning.

14 ¶ And the gods said: Let us make an help meet for the man, for it is not good that the man should be alone, therefore we will form an help meet for him.

15 And the gods caused a deep sleep to fall upon Adam; and he slept, and they took one of his ribs, and closed up the flesh in the stead thereof,

16 And the rib which the Gods had taken from man, formed they a woman, and brought her unto the man.

17 And Adam said: This was bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh, now she shall be called woman, because she was taken out of man;

18 Therefore, shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife, and they shall be one flesh.

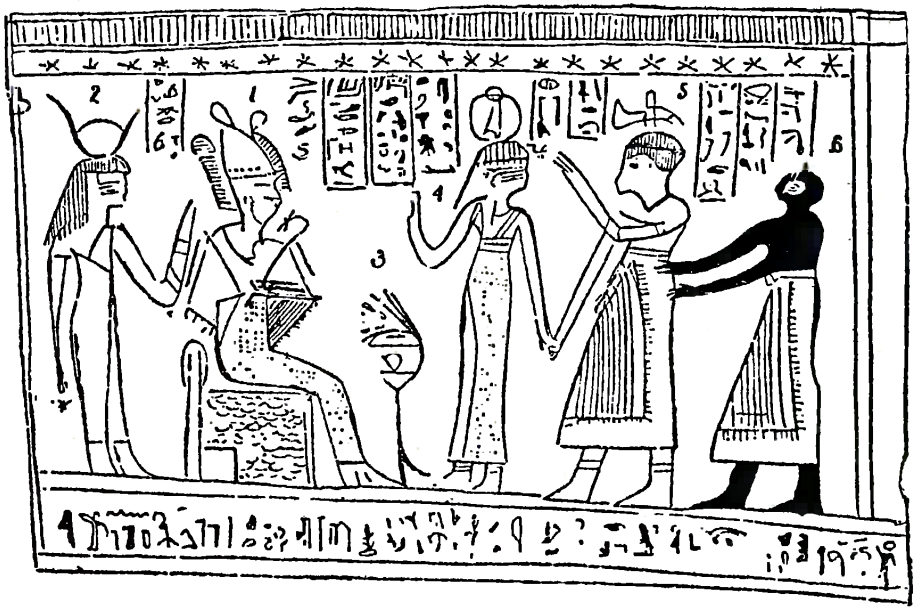
19 And they were both naked, the man and his wife, and were not ashamed.

20 And out of the ground the gods formed every beast of the field, and every fowl of the air, and brought unto Adam to see what he would call them; and whatsoever Adam called every living creature, that should be the name thereof.

21 And Adam gave names to all cattle, to the fowl of the air, to every beast of the field; and for Adam there was found an help meet for him.

Taken from Times and Seasons, 16 May 1842

.



1. Abraham sitting upon Pharaoh's throne, by the politeness of the king; with a crown upon his head, representing the priesthood; as emblematical of the grand presidency in heaven; with the scepter of justice, and judgment in his hand.
2. King Pharaoh; whose name is given in the characters above his head.
3. Signifies Abraham, in Egypt.
4. Prince of Pharaoh, King of Egypt; as written above the hand.
5. Shulem; one of the kings principle waiters; as represented by the characters above his hand.
6. Olimlah; a slave belonging to the prince.
7. Abraham is reasoning upon the principles of astronomy, in the king's Court.

The Book of the Law of the Lord

Being a translation from the Egyptian of the Law
Given to Moses in Sinai with some additional revelations

Chapter 1

The Decalogue

1a Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy might, and with all thy strength:

1b Thou shalt adore Him, and serve Him, and obey him:

1c Thou shalt have no other gods before thee:

1d Thou shalt not make unto thee any image or likeness of anything that is in the heaven above, or in the earth beneath, or in the waters of the earth, to bow thyself unto it, or to worship it:

1e Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto, nor adore anything that thine eye beholdeth, or thy imagination conceiveth of; but the Lord thy God only;

1f For the Lord thy God is a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, from generation to generation, even upon all that hate Him, and showing a multitude of mercies unto them that keep His commandments.

2a ¶ Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain:

2b Thou shalt not usurp dominion as a ruler; for the name of the Lord thy God is great and glorious above all other names:

2c He is above all, and is the only true God; the only just and upright King over all:

2d He alone hath the right to rule; and in His name, only he to whom He granteth it:

2e Whosoever is not chosen of Him, the same is a usurper, and unholy:

2f The Lord will not hold him guiltless, for he taketh His name in vain.

3a ¶ Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy.

3b Six days shalt thou labour, and do all thy work, but the seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord thy God:

3c In it thou shalt not do any work; thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, nor thy manservant, nor thy woman servant, nor thy cattle, nor the stranger that is within thy gates:

3d For in six ages the Lord thy God made the heavens and the earth, the sea and all that in them is, and rested the seventh age:

3e Therefore the Lord thy God blessed the seventh day and hallowed it:

3f Thou shalt keep it holy unto Him, that thou forget not the Law, nor be found keeping the company of the vile, nor be despised by the righteous.

4a ¶ Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself:

4b Thou shalt not revile him, nor speak evil of him, nor curse him:

4c Thou shalt do no injustice unto him; and thou shalt maintain his right, against his enemy:

4d Thou shalt not exact rigorously of him, nor turn aside from relieving him:

4e Thou shalt deliver him from the snare and the pit, and shalt return his ox when he strayeth:

4f Thou shalt comfort him when he mourns, and nurture him when he sickens:

4g Thou shalt not abate the price of what thou buyest of him, for his necessity; nor shalt thou exact of him, because he leaneth upon thee:

4h For in so doing thousands shall rise up and call thee blessed, and the Lord thy God shall strengthen thee in all the work of thy hand.

5a ¶ Honour thy father and thy mother:

5b Give heed to their commandments, obey their laws, and depart not from their precepts:

5c Reverence their age, and seek unto their house all the days of thy life:

5d Exalt not thyself against them, nor with-hold to build up their house above thine own:

5e Honour and obey the king and the judges, and the rulers, and all that are set in authority; for they are as fathers among the people:

5f That they may be a fear unto evil doers; and the Priest also, who stands before the Lord, that he may instruct thee:

5g And thy days shall be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

6a ¶ Thou shalt not kill:

6b Thou shalt slay no man in malice; neither thy child, nor thy wife, nor thy bondman, nor thy bondwoman, nor thy servant, nor the child of thy servant:

6c Neither shalt thou slay thine enemy, except thou admonish him, and entreat him, and he
hear thee not, and God give him into thy hand:

6d Thou shalt only slay him in lawful war:

6f And if any man trespass against thee, and break through, and do violence, thou shalt not slay him in revenge.

6e If thou overtake him in the trespass, thou mayest resist unto blood;

6f But except thou slay him in the trespass, thou shalt deliver him to the Judge; he shall judge him, and the hand of the officer shall be on him.

7a ¶ Thou shalt not commit adultery:

7b Thou shalt not in any wise lie with the wife of thy neighbor;

7c And if she seduce thee, thou shalt resist her; that thou pollute not thyself, and make not the place of thy house unclean, and destroy not the house of thy neighbor, and that thou cause no violence in the land:

7d Thou shalt not lie with the wife of the stranger;

7e Neither shalt thou lie with the wife of thine enemy; lest thy children be scattered abroad, and know not thee, nor the fear of thee be upon them, and they be strangers to the covenant of God, and the whole land be corrupt, and thine offspring be destroyed with the wicked.

8a ¶ Thou shalt not steal:

8b Thou shalt not trespass upon anything that is thy neighbor's, to take it from him, nor to destroy it:

8c Neither shalt thou trespass upon the stranger that dwelleth within thy gates, to destroy his substance, nor to take it from him;

8d For to thee he looketh for justice, and a shield round about all that he hath;

8e And the fear of the Lord thy God is upon him also, and to his righteousness he also seeketh:

8f Neither shalt thou overreach him by cunning, nor by stratagem, to take his substance from thy neighbor, nor the stranger within thy gates.

8g Remember that ye were strangers, and were oppressed, and oppress not the stranger, lest his cry ascend to God against you.

9a ¶ Thou shalt not bear false witness:

9b Thou shalt not speak falsely before the king, nor before the judge, nor in the assembly of the princes, nor in the presence of the ruler, nor unto the minister of the Law, nor among the multitude;

9c Nor in the ear of thy friend, nor to thy wife, nor thy child, nor thy servant:

9d Neither shalt thou withhold the truth from the king, nor the judge, nor him that is set in authority:

9e For thus shall righteousness be established in all thy borders.

10a ¶ Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's inheritance:

10b Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, nor his bondman, nor his bondwoman, nor his manservant, nor his woman servant,

10c Nor his horse, nor his carriage, nor the instruments of his labour, nor the roduce of his land,

10d Nor the things that he has made, nor the treasures that he has in store, nor anything that is thy neighbor's:

10e Thy desire shall not be upon them, to take them by stealth, nor by fraud, nor by cunning, nor by violence:

10f Neither shalt thou covet that which belongeth to the stranger that dwelleth within thy gates;

10g But thou shalt improve thine own, and thy desire shall be unto it;

10h Lest thou be corrupt, and the hand of thy neighbors be against thee, and the cry of the poor ascend to God against thee.

Chapter 2

The True God

1a The God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob is our God; this is His name forever, and this is His memorial unto all generations.

1b He created the heavens and the earth, and all things that are in them are the workmanship of His hands.

1c He created man in his own image, that he might have dominion over the earth, and over the beasts of the field, and over the fowls of the air, and over the fishes of the sea.

2a ¶ Man, being in the likeness of God's person, they all recognize him as their Lord, and fear Him as a God.

2b And notwithstanding his degeneracy, he has retained so much of the divine likeness; that beasts, birds, and fishes, fear him, and his power is over them as a mighty one.

2c It is diminished as he has departed from the likeness and perfections of his Creator:

2d And that spirit of rebellion, which man has received so redundantly, he has communicated to them also, that they rebel against him, as he rebels against God.

2e Yet the fear of man is on them continually; and his dominion is over them throughout the earth.

3a ¶ God conversed with Adam as a familiar friend; and walked with Enoch, who was faithful unto him in the midst of a corrupt race:

3b He communed with Noah, the father of a new world; and covenanted by His own oath, with Abraham the faithful.

4a ¶ He commanded a fiery law, with a voice of thunder, in Sinai:

4b The earth quaked at the tread of his foot:

4c The rustling of His garment was as low thunder; and His voice as a mighty thunderbolt:

4d The beaming of His face was as the sun in the morning; and the flash of his eye as the fierce lightning.

4c The nations trembled at his presence; and the tribes said: Not unto us; not unto us, O Lord God, but unto Moses, be thy voice known.

5a ¶ For they heard the voice of God, as the voice of a trumpet; and as loud thunder:

5b And they saw the lightning: and the mountain smoking; and they felt the earth tremble;

5c And they fled far away, crying, Not unto us; not unto us:

5d But unto Moses, declare thy Law, O God, and we will obey his voice, and live, for, who shall abide in thy presence?

6a ¶ His Word was made known to the Prophets, and His sacraments were established in Israel.

6b Kings ruled in His glorious name; and the nations who forgot Him were destroyed.

7a He hath appointed everlasting life in the Lord Jesus;

7b And given the keys of death and of hell unto Him who alone among mortals, hath kept His glorious word in all things.

7c He hath chosen Him the first born among many brethren;

7d For He is the first begotten of the dead, and hath the keys of the resurrection, and of life forevermore.

8a ¶ He maketh His Apostles the witnesses of His Law, unto the nations; and of His Gospel unto every kindred, and tongue, and people.

8b His Word is among men; and the revelation of His power, in the midst of the earth.

9a ¶ The Lord our God is glorious in His perfections; there is none like Him.

9b The gods of the heathen have no voice; neither do they see, nor understand.

9c The god of Babylon the Great, the Mother of Churches, before whom all her daughters bow down, is naught;

9d He is as wind, and vanity; he can neither be seen nor heard, nor felt;

9e He hath no dwelling place: where shall any abide with him?

9f Passionless, is he; and can neither love the good, nor hate the evil: who shall adore him, or fear him?

10a ¶ Without members and parts; he cannot hear, see, feel, smell, or taste.

10b Neither can he speak, nor come unto those that worship him, nor smite the disobedient and rebellious.

10c Handless, footless, mouthless, eyeless, and earless; a shapeless chaos, conceived in the imagination of the vain:

10d Ye shall not fear him, nor bow down unto him, nor adore him.

11a ¶ The Lord our God hath an incommunicable name;

11b Never polluted by the breath of the ungodly, which none can know, but he who ministereth in His holy sanctuary;

11c By which He revealed himself unto Moses; and in which He establisheth this Law, for an everlasting covenant.

12a ¶ God alone hath immortality.

12b Adam, the first of men, the Ancient of Days, the great Prince; Abraham, to whom God gave an everlasting possession; David, whose throne was established as the days of heaven, forever; all died.

12b Enoch, who walked with God, and was not found, because God took him; and Elijah, who ascended to the throne of God, in his own fiery chariot; shall return to the earth to sleep with their fathers.

12c The change which is sealed upon all the sons of Adam, shall come upon the faithful, who stand on the earth, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven, in flaming fire, taking vengeance on those who know not God, and obey not the Gospel.

12d And He, the Prince of the Kings of the earth; who in the days to come, shall speak with the voice of a trumpet, and the dead shall hear His voice and live; died once, that He might live forevermore.

12e He praised God, who alone hath immortality, that He would not leave him in the place of the dead:

12f He preached the gospel to the spirits in prison, and obtained the key of life everlasting:

12g But God alone liveth forever: the eternal ages are unto Him as moments to us: infinities, as units to the mathematician.

12h Our God alone hath immortality.

12i Thou shalt love Him with all thy heart, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength.

13a ¶ God alone hath omniscience.

13b He clotheth himself in light as a robe:

13c His ministers, who at midday, are as a flaming fire in the dark night, are blind before him;

13d He apprehendeth the motion of the atom which floateth in the invisible element, and discerneth the speck in the centre of the star,

13e Which the light of the sun hath not reached since the day that the sons of God shouted for joy that the earth was created, as a mountain in the eye of mortals.

13f He never sleepeth; His eye closeth not; and there is no darkness before Him.

13g Our God alone hath omniscience.

13g Thou shalt love Him with all thy heart, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength.

14a ¶ God alone hath omnipotence.

14b He looketh upon the nations, and they melt in the fury of his countenance:

14c He frowneth, and the mountains dissolve to smoke; the vallies are consumed in the breath
of His nostrils.

14d He spoke, and worlds were created: He thought, and they were lost in space.

14e Earthquakes are but the whisperings of His voice; the rustling of His attire causeth lightning, and thunder; and with the shadow of His garment He blotteth out the sun.

14f The Prince of the kings of the earth; by whom the world was created; and who liveth and reigneth forever; receiveth power from Him, and rendereth it unto Him.

14g Who shall stand before Him? Our God alone hath omnipotence.

14h Thou shalt love him with all thy heart, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength.

15a ¶ God alone is omnipresent.

15b His presence filleth the immensity of space as a point.

15c In the midst of the bottomless pit, is He; the pavilion of His feet, is the face of the earth:

15d The stars, are His home: His breath, is fragrant odour to the blessed, in the highest heaven; and it enliveneth the crumbling frame of the dead.

15e The rays of the sun, have not found His bourn; nor the light of the stars, the place He inhabiteth not.

15f His rest outspeedeth the lightning; it leaveth the morning ray behind it; and His speed is more rapid than the thought of angels.

15g Our God alone is omnipresent.

15h Thou shalt love Him with all thy heart, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength.

16a ¶ God alone is one.

16b There are choirs of angels; hosts of spirits; and multitudes of men: but God hath no fellow.

16c A great king is to Him as the unseen spawn before the monsters of the deep;

16d Methuselah, as the ephemera of a day: the most glorious spirit, is bodiless, and a breath.

16e And the Lord Jesus, who created the earth, and redeemed it; whose kingdom filleth the earth, and the heavens; possesseth but a speck, amid the stars he made.

16f He alone is one.

16g Thou shalt love Him with all thy heart, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength.

16h Thou shalt adore Him, and serve Him, and obey Him; and beside Him, thou shalt have no other God:

16i For He alone hath immortality, and omniscience, and omnipotence, and omnipresence.

16h He alone is one; and they who obey His Law, shall be like Him.

Chapter 3
Oaths

1a Thou shalt swear by the name of the Lord thy God, and of the Lord Jesus Christ, and of the Holy Spirit of God, and by nothing less:

1b Neither by the heavens, for God's throne is there; nor by the hosts thereof, for they serve Him;

1c Nor by the earth, for it is the place of the sole of His foot; nor by the inhabitants thereof, for they are mortal, and vanity;

1d Nor by thyself, for thou art of a day, and shalt cease; nor by any work of man, for it perisheth.

2a ¶ Remember that the Lord thy God swore by Himself, because there was none greater:

2b But by the greater shalt thou swear, even by God Almighty, and by Him whom He sitteth at His right hand forever; and whose is the Kingdom under the whole heaven.

2c Thou shalt not swear by the name of any other God.

3a ¶ Thou shalt not profane the name of the Lord thy God, nor of the Lord Jesus Christ, nor of the Holy Spirit of God, by any oath:

3b But such oaths only as the Law of the Lord thy God, and the command of the king requireth of thee and alloweth, shalt thou take upon thee; for all else is profane.

3c Thou shalt not profane the name of God by any oath or vow, of thine own.

4a An oath shall be before the king, and the judge, and the ruler, and the minister of the Law; and before such as are set in authority, whensoever they require it:

4b And there may be an oath also between those who enter into covenant: and also between him that serveth, and him that ordereth.

5a ¶ Thou shalt perform all thine oaths; whether unto God or unto man, thou shalt perform them.

5b Thou shalt do according to every word that proceedeth out of thy mouth.

5c Thou shalt not speak with thy lips when thy heart giveth not assent, to do and to perform all the words of thy mouth.

6a ¶ If thou swear by an oath to do anything which is known to thee, and it be sin, it is not an oath of the Lord thy God.

6b Thou canst not profane the name of the holy, to sanctify sin.

6c God shall judge thee, and him that asketh it of thee.

6d Ye shall bear your sins together.

7a ¶ But if thou swear by an oath to do a thing, and it be hid from thee, and thou know it not, and when it is known to thee it is sin;

7b Thou shalt submit thyself unto the judgment of God, and shalt do penance; and shalt make restitution, as shall be put upon thee; that all sin may be put away, and thy heart purified, and wickedness put out of the land.

8a ¶ If thy wife swear by an oath to perform anything which thou mayest disallow, and thou hold thy peace at her, the day that thou hearest it, her oath shall stand.

8b If thou wilt not that she perform it, thou shalt disallow it presently; for if thou delay, and then disallow it, thou shalt answer for her oath, and shalt bear her iniquity.

9a ¶ If thy son, or thy daughter, swear by an oath to perform anything which thou mayest disallow, and thou hold thy peace to thy child the day that thou hearest it, the oath shall stand.

9b If thou wilt not that the oath stand, thou shalt disallow it presently;

9c For if thou delay, and then disallow it, thou shalt answer for the oath, and shalt bear the iniquity of thy child.

10a ¶ And if thy servant swear by an oath to do a thing which thou mayest disallow, and thou hold thy peace at him, the day that thou hearest it, his oath shall stand.

10b If thou wilt not that his oath stand, thou shalt disallow it presently; for if thou delay, and then disallow it, thou shalt answer for the oath, and shalt bear the iniquity of thy servant.

Chapter 4

Benedictions

1a Thou shalt delight in blessing, and not in cursing:

1b And in the name of God, and of all the holy ones, even all that are above thee, shalt thou bless; and it shall be a blessing.

2a ¶ Thou shalt bless thy fellows, and thy children and servants, and theirs; and all who seek to learn the righteousness of God, and the peace of His Kingdom of thee, and all whom God has committed to thy care.

2b And him who blesseth thee, shalt thou honor.

Chapter 5
Maledictions

1a Thou shalt not curse, out of the bitterness of thine own heart;
1b Nor shalt thou curse any but he that is under condemnation of God's Law, and, being oft rebuked, will not repent.
2a ¶ Thou shalt not curse thy neighbor, nor the stranger that dwelleth with thee; for the hand of the judge is over them:
2b And, possibly, when he rebukes, they will repent, and turn to righteousness: but when he curses, then shalt thou.
3a ¶ But thou shalt not curse any who is placed in authority, or has jurisdiction over thee.
3b If they oppress thee, or do thee unrighteousness, and thy cry ascend to God in heaven, in heaven will he hear thee.
3c He will be the avenger.
3d Curse not, lest thy curse return upon thee.

Chapter 6
Prayer

1a When thou prayest, thou shalt not use many words, or vain repetitions; for God hath understanding:
1b Nor shalt thou cry aloud; for God heareth the whisper of the heart.
2 ¶ Nevertheless, in the assembly shalt thou speak with an audible voice, that he who prayeth with thee, may say: Amen.
3a ¶ Thy prayers shall be unto God, thy Father; for He is rich in mercy, and loving kindness:
3b And in heaven shall He hear thee, in the fulness of His wisdom and goodness, if thou believe on His name.
3c But unto His Ministers shalt thou petition for whatsoever He has dispensed unto them, for His mercy is over all his works.

Chapter 7
Thanksgiving

1a When, in blessing, the Lord thy God shall bestow upon thee any great and choice blessing;
1b Or, in His abundant charity, shall deliver thee from any great calamity,
1c Thou shalt assemble together thy wives, and thy children; thy friends, and thy neighbors; and shalt celebrate His glorious goodness with thank-offerings, and feasting, and music, and dancing.
2a ¶ And for the chief blessings of God to thee, shalt thou keep it in remembrance from year to year, and teach it to thy children,
2b That they who inherit the blessing may not forget gratitude to the giver, and the remembrance of the goodness of thy God be preserved throughout all generations.

Chapter 8
Sacrifice

1a Thou shalt offer upon the altar of the Lord thy God, and before His Priests, sacrifices for sin offerings,
1b And for trespass offerings, and for memorials, and for peace offerings, and for thank offerings.
2 ¶ Thy offerings shall be of the firstlings of thy flocks, and of the choice of thy fields, and of the chief of all holy things.
3a ¶ Of thy flock shalt thou offer the firstling of male or female, without deformity or blemish, of such as divide the hoof and chew the cud;
3b And of fowls, shalt thou offer all singing birds; and of fishes, all that have scales and fins;
3c And of shellfish, such as have two shells, and move about from place to place:
3d These shall be holy unto the Lord thy God, and shall be offered upon the altar.

4a ¶ Of the choice of thy fields, that which is good for food without change or addition, and whatsoever is used for bread for man, that is holy unto the Lord thy God, and shall be offered unto Him as an offering, and lifted up to the Priest;

4b But it shall not be offered on the altar.

5a ¶ And whatsoever other thing ye offer, it shall be accompanied with one of these, and thus thy
gift shall be sanctified.

5b But if it be not accompanied with one of these, thou shalt redeem it at the Priest's valuation, and it and the price thereof shall be the Lord's.

Chapter 9

Monuments

1a Whensoever the Lord thy God manifests Himself unto thee in majesty and might, or walketh with thee, and revealeth unto thee wisdom and knowledge, thou shalt erect unto Him pillars, tablets and enduring monuments, and make inscriptions upon them;

1b And shalt write and inscribe thereon His dealings with thee, His blessings and mercies, and His great power and glory, which He hath revealed unto thee;

1c That it may remain a witness to the generations to come; and that they may know that thy God is God, and there is none else.

2 ¶ Thou shalt preserve the memory of the chosen of God, who have been faithful in their ministry, and in the calling whereunto the Lord thy God hath called them, fresh with thy children, and thy children's children.

3a ¶ Thou shalt build monuments to their memory, and erect pillars and tablets, and inscribe their praises, their works, their faith and their sufferings thereon;

3b And when thou beholdest their monuments, thou shalt remember them, and talk of their righteousness, and teach thy children to walk in their righteous ways.

4 ¶ When God giveth thee a victory over thy enemies, thou shalt commemorate it with monuments and inscriptions.

5 ¶ But over the graves of persecutors and blasphemers, and they who shed the blood of the innocent, and at the places of their

abominations shalt thou pile rough stones, with muttered curses, against the day of the resurrection of damnation.

6 ¶ And thou shalt teach thy children to add a stone to the pile as they pass by, and to curse him that removes the stones, and cleaves unto their wickedness.

Chapter 10

Blessing of Infants

1a When the Lord thy God in multiplying blesseth thee, and giveth thee a child in thine own image; thou shalt bring him before the Lord thy God, in His house, or in the assembly of the Elders; and they shall lay their hands upon him, and bless him.

1b Thou shalt not delay to do it; and though thou be far away, yet shalt thou bring him before he is eight years old:

1c That the blessing of the Lord thy God may be put upon him; and his heart shall seek to the Kingdom of God, and its righteousness: for of such is the Kingdom.

1d If he die, yet shall he live therein forever. He shall be thine.

2a ¶ And the child of thy servant also, and of thy bondman, shalt thou bring to receive this blessing:

2b And the stranger that dwelleth with thee shall bring his child also, to receive his blessing:

2c For thus shall the power of the Kingdom be a shield unto him, and his heart shall cleave unto its righteousness; that he may be established therein forever.

3a ¶ And whosoever shall bring a child to be blessed; whether it be father, or mother; or master, or mistress; the same shall teach the child this Law to keep it.

3b Thus shall ye be honored as fathers and mothers in Israel:

3c But, if ye do it not, and evil befall the child, his blood be upon you.

4 ¶ The Apostles, High Priests, and Elders, in their assemblies; and the Priest thereunto appointed in the Temples of God, shall bless with this blessing: for, behold, it is a great sacrament.

Chapter 11

Baptism

1 Except a man be born of the water, he cannot enter into the Kingdom of God.

2a ¶ But no man may have baptism of water, except such as have faith toward God, and come unto him through the ministry he has sent; repenting of evil deeds, and seeking to learn righteousness by the living word:

2b For this is the door of all into the kingdom; from eight years old and upwards; through which if ye enter not, ye shall not see God.

3a ¶ For the keys of the ministry of the remission of sins, in the sacrament of baptism, hath the Lord, your God, bestowed upon His Apostles;

3b And through them, upon their fellow laborers, the High Priests, Elders, and Priests; commanding them to preach repentance and remission of sins to all nations throughout the earth.

Chapter 12

Baptism for the Dead

1 At every Temple, which thou shalt build unto the Lord thy God, by His Commandment, shalt thou make a fountain for the baptism of the living for the dead.

2a ¶ And for these shall you be baptized:

2b Every one of you, according to your several rights, and in your several orders, according to consanguinity, sex, and primogeniture, shall be baptized for any deceased husband, wife, or posterity; or any progenitor, to the third and fourth generation; or any brother, or sister, whom he in faith believes has received the Gospel in the Spirit.

3a ¶ Thou shalt also be baptized for any relative, within the fourth degree of consanguinity;

3b For anyone betrothed to thee in marriage; for thy foster father, mother, brother, sister, or
child, whom I shall give to thee by tongue, dream, vision, spirit

ministering in fire, word of angel,
or by my own voice.

4a And whensoever I will that any of my faithful servants of the Aaronic Priesthood be baptized for any other, I will send my angels to signify it unto them.

4b But unto my servants of the Melchizedek Priesthood, I will speak by my own voice, or minister in fire.

5a ¶ But no man or woman among you shall be baptized for the dead, who is not a member of some family, according to the order of the Church of the Firstborn of God;

4b Or who is under condemnation of any word of this Law;

5c Or who withholdeth anything whatsoever from the treasury of the House of the Lord your God.

6 ¶ At every Temple which ye shall build unto the Lord your God, shall High Priests be set apart, and sanctified by anointing with holy oil, and the hands of Apostles and Prophets, to baptize for the dead; for no other shall administer this sacrament.

7 ¶ Recorders, also, shall be set apart by the laying on of hands of High Priests, to record baptisms for the dead; who shall be eyewitnesses to the baptisms, and shall record according to the seeing of their eyes.

8 ¶ And other witnesses, who see with their eyes, shall sign the records of baptisms, that everyone may be proved by the testimony of two or three witnesses.

9a But there shall be one record before the king, unto which all records of baptisms for the dead shall be brought, and all written together in perpetual archives; that what you record on earth, may also be recorded in heaven.

9b At every Temple also shall ye perpetuate the record of such as are there baptized.

Chapter 13

Confirmation

1 Except a man be born of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the Kingdom of God.

2a ¶ Whosoever shall be baptized for the remission of sins, upon him shall the Apostles, High Priests, or Elders, lay their hands, and confirm him in the Kingdom,

2b And give unto him, by their hands, a gift of the Holy Spirit, according as the Spirit will.

3a ¶ And the Spirit thus given shall inspire him with faith, intelligence, and understanding;

3b And if he cherish it, then shall it guide and establish him in all righteousness.

4a For when they lay their hands upon him, the Spirit, like an invigorating breeze, shall come upon him and cover him;

4b And it shall inspire him with a new power, according to the gifts of the Spirit; and as it passeth off and leaveth him, his gift shall continue, and he shall walk in newness of life.

Chapter 14

Eucharist

1a In your feasts of love, in your solemn assemblies, in your humiliation, and in your sorrow, ye shall separate of the juice of fruit, and of the bread of grain, a portion to be consecrated unto God, that it be the body and blood of the one great sacrifice of propitiation for the sins of the world:

1b And they who are washed of their sins, and have a pure conscience before God, shall eat and drink thereof at the hands of the Apostles and High Priests, who shall consecrate it, and the Priests and Elders, who shall minister it, that, partaking of the sacrifice, they may lay hold on eternal life.

2a ¶ For this is the one great sacrifice, which except ye eat of it, there is no life in you.

2b And beware how ye eat of this sacrifice: for in the spirit in which ye eat and drink, shall ye be confirmed and strengthened.

2c And if ye eat and drink in a pure conscience, not having offended against God nor man, and all your former sins blotted out of the Book of Remembrance; ye shall be established in righteousness, and grow up into everlasting life.

2d But, if ye eat and drink in your sins, ye eat and drink condemnation, confirming yourselves in your iniquities.

3a ¶ Therefore, when ye come to the table of the Lord your God, to eat of this sacrifice, ye shall examine yourselves,

3b Whether you have done injustice to man, or iniquity against God, that ye may humble yourselves before God, and make restitution to man; and may come with clean hands, and a pure heart, to this most holy sacrament.

Chapter 15

Marriage

1a When thou takest a wife, thou shalt take such a one as thou lovest, and who loveth thee, and whom thou mayest lawfully marry:

1b And thou shalt go before an Apostle, a High Priest, or the Chief of the Elders where thou dwellest, or the Priest who administereth in the Temple or the Synagogue;

1c And by him shall ye be joined in marriage, that she may be thine in life, thine in the resurrection, and thine in life everlasting;

1d And that the children which she beareth thee, may be with thee in the everlasting Kingdom.

2a ¶ And he who joineth you in marriage, shall unite her unto thee by an indissoluble bond;

2b And shall give thee grace to love her, and cherish her, and protect her;

2c And grace unto her to love thee, and nourish thee, and honor thee.

Chapter 16

Healing

1a If Satan afflict thee that thou be sick, thou shalt send for the Elders,

1b And they shall anoint thee with oil, and pray for thee, and rebuke the power of the adversary, and bless thee that thou recover of the disease.

2a ¶ But if thy sickness continue, and God deliver not thee therefrom, thou shalt confess thy sins to them, and they shall forgive thee;

2b And thou shalt come to the assembly of those who have washed their robes, and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.

3a ¶ If an evil spirit enter into any of thine, and torment him, or lead him about, thou shalt send for the Elders or High Priests;

3b And they shall put their hands upon him, and look upon him, and rebuke the evil spirit, and cast him out.

Chapter 17

Absolution

1a If thou sin a sin against God, or do an evil thing unto man, thou shalt go unto him who is God's Shepherd, wheresoever thou art, and between him and thee alone shalt confess unto him, and shalt keep nothing back;

1b And he shall lay upon thee restitution, and penance, and shall judge thee in righteousness;

1c And what he judgeth, that shalt thou do, according to all the words of the Law of the Lord thy God, and he shall forgive thee thy sin, according as God hath spoken.

2a ¶ And thou shalt in all things make restitution, as he judgeth thee;

2b And if he require thee to confess unto the judge who sitteth in judgment, or to any who is placed in authority, or to him thou hast injured, thou shalt do it;

2c And otherwise thy sin remaineth upon thee.

Chapter 18

Ordination

1a Thou shalt not take upon thyself the honor of the Priesthood; neither shalt thou confer this honor on any but him whom the Lord thy God shall call.

1b For no man shall administer in the name of God, but he that is called by the revelation of God's will, and set apart by the hands of those upon whom the authority of His name is sealed.

2a Whosoever is called by the voice of God to the royal authority, shall be anointed and ordained by the hands of those who stand in royal authority above him:

2b But he that is first, by the angels of God; that he may have all the gifts; even wisdom, knowledge, faith, revelation, prophecy; and whatsoever gift is good for the Chief Shepherd of the flock of God:

2c That he may be able to rule in righteousness: and they for their several callings, among God's flock.

3 ¶ And whosoever is called to administer at the altar, and in sacraments and ceremonies, shall be consecrated and set apart by the hands of those in like authority, according to the calling of God, for his ministry.

4 And whosoever consecrates another to the Priesthood of God, and the authority of His name, shall, with his hands upon his head, by his voice declare and seal upon him the name and authority of God; even that Priesthood unto which he consecrateth him.

Chapter 19

Adoption

1a If thou wilt in any wise adopt a child to be thine own, and to be heir to thee, thou shalt take him whom thou lovest, and whom thou mayest lawfully take;

1b And thou shalt go before an Apostle, a High Priest, or the Chief of the Elders where thou dwellest, or the Priest who administers in the Temple or the Synagogue;

1c And thou shalt take the child upon thy knee, and clasp him in thine arms, and shalt protest that thou lovest him as thine own flesh;

1d And he shall seal him unto thee in the name of thy God: and shall sprinkle water upon him, and consecrate him thy flesh: and shall bless thee, and bless him in thy house; and he shall be thine forever.

1e God shall give thee grace to be a father unto him, and grace unto him to honour thee.

2a ¶ And if thou hast a child who was not born in wedlock, and wilt assure him unto thee, thou shalt in like manner bring him, and protest he is thine,

2b And he shall be sealed unto thee, that he be thine forever.

Chapter 20

Calling of a King

1a The Lord your God hath made the earth and established it, and unto Him the dominion thereof belongeth.

1b He created man and gave him dominion over it.

1c The nations are the workmanship of His hands; and He hath the right to rule.

2a He appointed kings, and rulers, and judges; but man rebelled against them.

2b He made laws, but man broke them, and trampled on them, and forgot them.

3a Unto Noah gave He dominion over the earth: and to Shem after him;

3b But the people rebelled against him and established their own ways; and those that oppressed them were their kings and ruled over them in unrighteousness.

4a Moses was king in Israel; but the people kept not the Law of God; and, rebelling, set up a false god, and worshiped it.

4b When God would make them kings to rule the earth, they despised His majesty, and went after other gods.

5a Men have everywhere rebelled against God: nevertheless, the earth is His, and the fulness thereof.

5b The dominion of it belongeth to Him, and He conferreth it upon whomsoever He will.

6a He hath chosen His servant James to be king: He hath made him His Apostle to all nations:

6b He hath established him a Prophet, above the kings of the earth; and appointed him king
in Zion: by His own voice did He call him, and He sent His Angels unto him to ordain him.

7a And the Angel of the Lord stretched forth his hand unto him, and touched his head, and put oil upon him, and said: Grace is poured upon thy lips, and God blesseth thee with the greatness of the everlasting Priesthood.

7b He putteth might, and glory, and majesty upon thee; and in meekness, and truth, and righteousness, will he prosper thee.

8a Thou shalt save His people from their enemies, when there is no arm to deliver; and shalt bring salvation, when destruction walketh in the house of thy God.

8b Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity: therefore thy God hath anointed thee with oil, and set thee above all thy fellows.

9a Thy words shall be like sharp arrows in the heart of the wicked.

9b Thou shalt rebuke those who pervert the word of thy God.

9c Thou shalt preach righteousness and the sublime mysteries in the ears of many people; and shall bring the gospel to many who have not known it, and to the nations afar off.

10a Thou shalt drive backward and put to shame those that do evil; and the workers of iniquity shall fall.

10b They shall be cast down, and shall not be able to rise.

10c With purity will the Lord thy God arm thee, and purity and truth shalt thou teach.

11a Keep the Law of the Lord thy God in thy heart; and none of thy steps shall slide.

11b With thee is the fountain of truth: in thy light shall the people of thy God see; for thou shalt speak his words unto them, and from thy lips shall they receive it.

12a The blessing of their God shalt thou put upon them, and His curse upon evil doers, if, after being oft rebuked, they repent not:

12b And before my people shalt thou go, to lead them into my ways; for unto thee has the Lord thy God given salvation.

13a In righteousness shalt thou rule: thou shalt redeem the poor and the needy from suffering and violence; and to thee God giveth judgment for them.

13b Thou shalt deliver the prey from the spoiler; for God, thy God, hath put them in thy hand.

14a And in weakness will He make thee strong; thou shalt rule among His people.

14b Thou shalt break in pieces the rod of the oppressor, and the yoke of the unjust ruler; they shall flee away, but the way of peace shall they not find.

15a While the day of the wicked abideth, shalt thou prepare a refuge for the oppressed, and for the poor and needy.

15b Unto thee shall they come, and their brethren who are scattered shall come with them; and the destruction of the ungodly shall quickly follow; for it already worketh; go thy way, and be strong.

Chapter 21

Duty of the King

1a The king, when he sitteth upon the throne of his kingdom and ruleth, shall write for him a copy of the Book of the Law, according to that which is before the Lord continually;

1b And it shall be with him, and he shall read therein all the days of his life;

1c That the fear of the Lord his God be continually before him, and that he remember the Law, and forget not to administer justice and judgment throughout the earth;

1d And that he turn not aside from the Commandment one way or the other; to the end that he prolong his days in the Kingdom, and of his children among the faithful.

2a ¶ He shall execute judgment among the people, and over the princes and rulers, and over all that sit in judgment:

2b He shall deliver the poor, the needy, and the oppressed:

2c And if their cry be faint, yet shall he hear;

2d He shall be a father to the fatherless, and a husband to the widow, and a guardian to him who hath no protector.

3a ¶ He shall overthrow the rebellious, destroy traitors, and punish those that do wickedly.

3b The haughty shall he make low, and the oppressor shall he tread down: those that exalt themselves, shall he abase.

4a ¶ The power of the Lord God, He giveth to him, to rule the nations, and to execute judgments among the children of men:

4b He shall declare the Laws and Commandments; exercise his dominion; and cast a shield round about the children of his people; that his dominion be not taken from him forever.

Chapter 22

Abstinence of the King

1a He shall not multiply to himself horses: he shall not multiply to himself carriages:

1b He shall not multiply to himself ships:

1c He shall not multiply to himself armor:

1d He shall have all these to defend his people, and the children of his people, but not to oppress them.

2a ¶ He shall not multiply to himself wives; lest he forget the Law, and avenge not his people: and lest his heart turn from them to strange women.

3 ¶ He shall not multiply to himself servants of the children of his people; lest his yoke be oppressive.

4 ¶ He shall not multiply to himself silver and gold; lest he be proud, and turn away from this Law, and do it not.

5 ¶ Neither shall he lead his people to strange places to dwell therein, which the Lord thy God hath not appointed for their dwelling; lest they depart from the Law, and despise it.

6a ¶ He shall not make other Laws, despising this; but all his Laws and Commandments shall be according to the Law of the Lord thy God, to establish it.

6b For the Lord thy God shall speak; he shall decree, and he shall alter it as seemeth good unto him, and none shall hinder.

Chapter 23

Viceroys

1 The king, when he committeth the administration of his kingdom to another; or when he appointeth another to rule a portion in his name, may make him a viceroy, and confer upon him kingly dignity.

2a ¶ The viceroy shall keep the king's commandment, and shall not depart from it; he shall not exalt himself against the king:

2b He shall keep none of his doings from the king; and he shall be faithful unto him, and to his house, in all things.

3a ¶ The viceroy shall make no laws: he shall govern according to the law of the king, and the Law of God:

3b If he deviseth a new law, yet shall he not proclaim it, but by the king's commandment.

4a ¶ He shall not do that which is forbidden to the king; but he shall exercise prerogative by the king's commission, in whatsoever part of his dominion he shall appoint him:

4b He shall not despise the king's commandment, nor do that which he disalloweth; lest he be a usurper, and be removed from his place.

Chapter 24

King's Council

1a The king shall be aided by a Council, to consist of wise men, chosen from among his people,

1b Learned in the Law of the Lord, and faithful unto the king; who shall assemble before him in council, as often as he shall require, to give him advice in whatsoever matter he shall ask them.

2 The king may apportion the administration of the laws, and of the affairs of his kingdom among them, giving to each his appropriate department, as the king shall command.

3a ¶ The members of the king's council shall dwell near the king; they shall attend him on his journeyings, if he require it:

3b They shall each give him information, reason, counsel and advice, of whatsoever matter he shall require, and shall keep nothing back.

4a ¶ Each member of the Council shall keep the charge of the king, which he committeth to him, in his several department;

4b Shall be a faithful steward of the king's substance, in his hands: and shall render the same, with a just account of his stewardship, as often as the king requires.

5 ¶ The counselors of the king shall be chosen by him as seemeth him good, being just men, learned in the Law, not proud, nor haughty;

5b Not given to much babbling; and they shall keep the king's secret all the days of their lives.

6a ¶ If they serve the king well, he shall reward them as just and faithful stewards;

6b If they are unfaithful, he shall frown upon them:

6c But he may choose new counselors, when it seemeth him good.

Chapter 25

King's Court

1a The king shall appoint wise men, learned in the Law of God, lovers of righteousness, not fearing the rich, nor despising the poor, to be judges; who shall sit before him continually, to judge all great causes.

1b They shall sit upon the king's judgment seat, at his gate:

1c The ear of the judges shall never be closed, that they cannot hear:

1d This is the King's Court.

2a ¶ The king shall appoint twelve judges to this court, if so many are needed; all of them

2b High Priests unto the Most High God; for the judging of all great matters;

2c But all the smaller matters may be judged by other judges, as the king shall appoint, that these may judge the larger causes continually, and that they judge upon the judgment of other judges.

3 ¶ And the king shall order and determine what causes shall come before the King's Court, upon his judgment seat to be judged, and what causes shall be judged before the other judgment seats.

4a ¶ And the judges shall hear and judge, and determine speedily: they shall not delay:

4b And they shall judge righteous judgment, and shall not take reward, and do injustice.

5a ¶ And if they judge unrighteously, or refuse judgment to the just, or despise the Law, or take reward for judgment, the king shall remove them.

5b When they have served faithfully, he shall relieve them in their age and infirmity.

6 ¶ The Deacons shall bring the disobedient, the stiffnecked, the peace breakers, and all who have done great wickedness, before the Judges, and shall execute their judgment on all who withstand it, and obey not.

7a ¶ The Deacons shall execute all the orders of the Court, and shall be a fear unto the disorderly, and all revilers.

7b They shall do whatsoever the judges command.

8 ¶ The Chief Deacon shall be the steward of the king's substance, which he committeth to the judges, and shall render a just account of his stewardship to the king.

Chapter 26

City Court

1a The king shall appoint judges in all the cities, three to a city, and more if the business of judgment require it:

1b All of them Elders of the people; Priests of God; who shall sit upon the judgment seat of the city and judge all the causes which shall come before them; even all such as the king shall appoint unto them to judge.

2a ¶ They shall sit in judgment, on the judgment seat in the Synagogue of their city, every Sabbath day, to do justice unto all men;

2b And shall render speedy judgment upon all who have violated the laws.

3 ¶ The Deacons shall execute their judgment upon all who obey not, and shall bring before them the peace breakers, and all who do violence.

4a ¶ The Chief Deacon of the city shall be Steward of the king's substance, which he committeth to the judges, and shall render a just account.

4b He shall also be the principal Minister of the Court.

Chapter 27

Municipalities

1a In every village an Elder shall be appointed to rule, to teach, and to instruct: he shall govern the village according to the Law, and the king's commandment:

1b To him shall the Priests of the Synagogue give heed; and if there be other Elders, they also shall give heed to him.

2a ¶ In every town shall Elders be appointed to rule, and teach, and instruct: five to a town:

2b But if there be more than five Synagogues in the town, yet shall there be an Elder to each Synagogue, of whom one shall be Chief.

3a ¶ They shall govern the town according to the Law, and the king's commandment:

3b They shall instruct the people in the Synagogue, everyone in his order:

3c Unto the Chief of them shall the Priests of that town give heed; and unto everyone, in the Synagogue where he administers.

4a ¶ In every city shall Elders be appointed to rule, to teach, and to instruct, in all the Synagogues:

4b But to the Synagogue of the judgment seat of the city, shall three be appointed judges of the court of the city:

4c Another shall be appointed who shall be Bishop of that city;

4d He shall be Chief of the Elders, both in that city, and in the towns and villages in its vicinity: to him shall they all give heed.

5a ¶ If there be more than one city in the province, then shall that bishop who is appointed to rule the province, administer in the chief city:

5b He shall be an Archbishop: to him shall the other Bishops give heed.

6a ¶ But if there be no city in a province, yet shall an Elder be appointed to rule in that province:

6b He shall be Bishop: and a court shall be appointed also, and three Elders to be Judges:

6c They shall be appointed at that place where the king will establish his government for that province.

7a ¶ By these shall the provinces, and cities, and towns, and villages of the kingdom be governed:

7b And officers shall be appointed to assist them in governing, as shall be necessary.

7c The king shall establish his dominion in this order forever.

Chapter 28

Twelve Apostles

1 When the Lord, your God, shall send the Gospel to the nations, He shall call and choose twelve Apostles, to be the witnesses of His name and Kingdom, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

2a ¶ He shall appoint them Shepherds of the flock; under the direction of the Chief Shepherd:

2b He shall make them Princes in His Kingdom:

2c He shall appoint them to declare his Law unto all nations; and to execute it among the Saints who are scattered abroad.

3a ¶ The Apostles, everyone, shall have jurisdiction of the Churches beyond the kingdom, by appointment of the Chief Shepherd:

3b They shall exercise royal authority in the kingdom, by the king's commandment.

4a ¶ Let them bear a faithful testimony to the nations: let them not shun to declare the whole counsel of God;

4b And He shall give them rest from their labors; they shall be princes forever.

5a ¶ One among them shall be Chief: to him shall they all give heed, as to a king among princes:

5b Yet shall the Chief Shepherd be king over them all:

5c They shall not rebel against his commandment; and they shall be princes in his kingdom forever.

Chapter 29

High Priests

1a ¶ The Lord, your God, will choose faithful men, keepers of His Law, examples in righteousness, to be Priests of the order of an endless life.

1b They shall be Princes and Nobles, and High Priests in the Kingdom of God.

1c The presiding and ruling power is the prerogative of this Priesthood.

2a ¶ From the High Priests shall the king select counselors, and judges, and rulers.

2b They shall sanctify things appointed of God to holy purposes, and shall minister in the salvation of the living and the dead.

3a ¶ One hundred and forty-four High Priests form a quorum.

3b From among themselves shall they choose one to preside in all their deliberations, and two to assist in presiding;

3c But the king whom God shall set up shall preside over all the High Priests.

Chapter 30

Seventies

1 The twelve Apostles shall select seventy Elders, chosen men, faithful in the ministry of the Word,
to preach the Gospel, under their direction, unto all people.

2 ¶ One of the Seventy shall they appoint Chief: he shall be first in their assembly, and shall set them in order.

3a ¶ Other Seventies may the Apostles choose, until there shall be seven Seventies;

3b And one shall be appointed Chief of each Seventy, to set his fellows in order, and to be first in their assembly.

4 ¶ The Seventies shall labor in the ministry of the word, and of sacraments and ordinances, one-fourth of their time; and continually, if their households do not lack bread and raiment.

5 ¶ They shall have jurisdiction by appointment of the Apostles; and shall be Chief in the Churches they build up.

6a ¶ When they have labored faithfully, they shall have rest, and a goodly inheritance among the just;

6b But if they come short in the ministry whereunto they are called, their power shall be taken from them.

7 ¶ The Chief of the Apostles shall be the prince and Grand Master of the Seventies: unto him shall they all give heed.

Chapter 31

Elders

1a The wise men in every city, who love righteousness, and hate iniquity; who seek unto the Law of God and its justice; who obey the king, and honor all who are placed in authority, shall be ordained Elders.

2 ¶ These shall be Judges and Rulers, and shall govern and instruct in their several callings, as they shall be appointed: they are the leaders of the people.

3a ¶ The Elders shall read this Law all the days of their lives, that they may instruct the people therein, to keep it;

3b And that they may be able to serve the king as governors, and rulers, and judges, and commissioners, and masters of the king's business, in the several offices to which he shall appoint them.

4 ¶ When they go beyond the kingdom to minister in word, and sacraments, and ordinances, the Apostles shall rule over them.

5 ¶ But they shall give heed to the Chief among them in their several cities, and one of the king's counselors shall be the Grand Master of them all.

6a ¶ The Elders shall instruct the people in the Law and the Gospel on the Sabbath day, and in their assemblies:

6b They shall visit the sick, the poor, and the needy: they shall comfort mourners, and all who are distressed, and counsel those who know not right.

Chapter 32

Priests

1 ¶ Faithful servants of God; godly in their walk and conversation; not given to strong drink, nor lust, nor lasciviousness; shall be ordained Priests, in all the cities, and in every town and village which hath a Synagogue.

2 ¶ They shall be Keepers and Ministers of the Temples and Synagogues, and shall be Ministers and Singers, and shall serve in all callings in the worship of God; and in all the ceremonies which shall be appointed for worship and adoration.

3 ¶ The Priests shall also assist the Elders in the work of preaching and shall visit from house to house to teach godliness among the people, and shall baptize for the remission of sins.

4 ¶ Whenever the Lord your God shall command you to build a Temple unto Him, that He may come and dwell in the midst of you, then will He establish a peculiar Priesthood, to administer the ordinances of that Temple.

5a ¶ One of the Priests in every Temple shall be Chief, and to him all shall give heed.

5b But in every Synagogue the Priests shall give heed to the Chief of the Elders.

6 ¶ One of the king's counselors shall be Grand Master of all the Priests.

7 ¶ Godly women shall be Singers and Musicians, and assistants in the ceremonies, but they shall not kill sacrifices.

Chapter 33

Teachers

1a ¶ In every city, town, and village, ye shall ordain Teachers,

1b Men and women who are apt to teach, learned in letters, and in every science, and every manner of wisdom and knowledge;

1c That they may instruct you and your children, and that you may attain to all wisdom and all knowledge.

2a ¶ In every Synagogue shall Teachers be appointed to instruct the people on the Sabbath day in the ways of the Lord, and in the words of this Law.

2b The children of the rich and the poor, shall come together to learn of them, without price.

3a ¶ One of the king's counselors shall be the Grand Master of all the Teachers:

3b He shall be Chief in their assemblies, and shall set them in order; to him shall they all give heed.

4a ¶ The Teachers of eminence shall be set apart as Doctors:

4b But if any have attained to very great eminence, they shall be Rabbis, and the most eminent of all shall be Rabbonis.

5a ¶ Ye shall establish schools in all your cities, towns and villages;

5b To every one shall a Teacher be appointed; but to the large schools many, that they may be able to faithfully instruct all who come unto them.

6 ¶ In every city shall ye establish an Academy: a learned Doctor shall be the Chief Teacher therein.

7 ¶ In every city shall a College be established: a learned Rabbi shall be Chief Teacher, and he shall have Doctors for his assistants.

8a ¶ If the city be very large, then may you establish other Colleges; and in all the cities, and large towns may you establish other Academies;

8b And the Chief Teacher where there are several Academies, shall be a Rabbi; and where there are several Colleges, shall be a Rabboni.

Chapter 34

Deacons

1a ¶ In every city shall ye ordain Deacons; lovers of the Law; men of stout heart, strong arm, and swift foot:

1b Men who neither despise the poor, nor fear the rich; kind, persevering, and just; seeking unto the Kingdom of God and its righteousness.

2 ¶ The Deacons shall be ministers unto the king, the judges, and the Elders, to execute their commandments, both in judgment and mercy: they shall be merciful and just.

3 ¶ The Deacons shall be Stewards and keepers of the king's prisons: and stewards of the king's courts.

4 ¶ In the cities, and towns, and prisons, shall Chiefs be appointed over them: but one of the king's counselors shall be their Grand Master.

Chapter 35

Establishment of the Law

1a ¶ Fear not, little flock, for your Father, in His good pleasure, hath given you the Kingdom; the dominion is yours forever;

1b Ye shall smite the nations with a continual stroke; for the Lord, your God, hath spoken it:

1c Ye shall break them in pieces, and destroy them; for the day of His vengeance has come.

2a ¶ He hath judged the nations that are near, and decreed destruction upon them, and their day continueth not:

2b The nations far away are covered with their abominations as with a garment: their iniquities are not hid: He will not spare them.

3a ¶ The Saints of the former days have sat in judgment upon them; they have judged the earth, and the nations thereof shall not be spared:

3b Fire goeth before, famine followeth after; and the pestilence shall waste them.

4a ¶ Arise and smite them, O Daughter of Zion; and thou, O Tower of the Flock, whose power is above the clouds, possess thy dominion, and be thou a refuge:

4b For Judah shall be bent, in his strength; as an arrow, Ephraim shall fill him:

4c Manasseh shall be his barb; and Jacob shall be in the midst of the Gentiles, in the empire of nations, as a Lion among the beasts of the forest;

4d As a young Lion in the flocks of sheep, who, when he goeth through, treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none shall deliver.

5a ¶ Let your fear be upon all men; and the terror of you upon your enemies; for this is the day of vengeance of the Lord, and of your recompense upon your enemies.

5b Joseph shall possess his land again; for the throne of David is established as the days of the sun; His Kingdom is everlasting.

6a ¶ And now, O Daughter of Zion, the land of robbers, the empire of many nations, shall gather her troops against thee, to look upon thee, and to defile thy dominion:

6b But they have not known the thought of the Lord; neither have they understood His counsel; for He shall gather them as sheaves of the floor.

7a ¶ Arise and thrash, for I will make thy power iron: the tread of thy foot shall crush:

7b Thou shalt break in pieces many people, and shalt consecrate their spoil unto God, and their dominion to the Lord of the whole earth.

8a ¶ Babylon the Great shall perish before thee; for thou shalt do unto her as she hath done unto thee:

8b Thou shalt render unto her as she hath rendered to thee, and reward her double for all her sins.

8c Her cities shall be given to the flames, and the inhabitants to the sword: her government shall be broken in pieces, and her dominion taken away.

9a ¶ For in her is found the blood of Saints and Prophets; and the spoil of the children of God in the midst of her:

9b And she hath drank of the cup of the indignation, and of the fury of God, with all the nations of the Gentiles.

10a ¶ Against her, Apostles have washed their feet on earth, and borne witness in heaven;

10b And by the testimony and the blood of Prophets have her sins been made known in heaven:

10c The great Prince, whose throne is as burning fire, hath judged her, saying: Let not her days be prolonged.

11a ¶ For by this Law shall men be judged in the portion of Joseph: God will give it to you, that you may possess it for an everlasting dominion.

11b In the midst of the Gentiles shall ye establish your Synagogues, and gather out the just while ye wait for the judgments of God.

12a ¶ Ye shall, therefore, read in it all the days of your lives.

12b Ye shall read it in your solemn assemblies, and in your joyous meetings; with the shout of triumph when your enemies flee before you;

12c And in the voice of mourning when you have sinned against God, and have fled before them; ye shall read it in the gathering of your neighbors, and in the household with your children.

13a ¶ Ye shall talk of it in the house, and in the field, and by the wayside, and in the forest, and on the waters; in the camp, and on the march:

13b When ye labor, and when ye rest shall ye speak of this Law to your neighbors, and to your wives, and to your children, and to your servants.

14a ¶ And ye shall think upon it in your joy, and in your sorrow; when upon the land which the Lord your God giveth you, and when far away;

14b Both in the midst of the multitude, and in your loneliness;

14c All the days of your lives shall ye read it, and talk of it, and think upon it; and it shall be inscribed upon your hearts continually.

15a ¶ For by this Law hath the Lord, your God, sanctified you, and given you judgment, and justice, and dominion.

15b Remember that ye stood before him; your king, and your princes, and your nobles, the men of you, with your wives and your children, and your little ones,

15c And entered into covenant with the Lord, your God, to be a people unto Him, and to obey His Commandments, and to keep this Law;

15c And that He covenanted with you to be your God, and to make you a nation of kings and Priests to the nations of the earth.

16a ¶ Keep, therefore, this Law, and obey these Commandments;

16b For so doth God sanctify you, and so will He establish you, and prosper you, more abundantly than in former days.

16c The land of Joseph shall ye possess forever, and Israel and Judah shall dwell again upon their own mountains.

17a ¶ Your vineyards, your gardens, and your orchards, ye shall plant again, and they shall flourish,

17b And ye shall eat the fruit thereof: ye shall build houses, and shall inhabit them;

17c And children's children shall be in them, for a crown of glory to you, if ye remember the Lord, your God, whose name is great and glorious, and keep His statutes.

18a ¶ And now if there be among you a man whose heart turneth away from the Lord your God, to serve the god of Babylon, and to honor the names of the nations;

18b If there be a root that beareth gall and wormwood;

18c And when he heareth the curse in this Law, he bless himself, saying: I shall have peace, though I walk in the imagination of my heart, the Lord will not spare him.

19a ¶ But the anger of the Lord, and His jealousy, and His fierce wrath, shall smoke against that man:

19b And all the curses that are written in this book shall be upon him, and the Lord shall blot out his name from under heaven.

20a ¶ At the end of every seven years, in the solemnity of the year, when all the children of the kingdom are gathered together before the Lord in Temples, and in Tabernacles,

20b And all the people are assembled; princes and nobles, men, and women, and children, and the stranger that dwelleth in your gates;

20c Ye shall read this Law before them all, in their hearing, and shall make it known in the midst of them.

21a ¶ And your children, and the strangers dwelling in your gates, that have not heard it, shall learn this Law, and shall all remember it again,

21b And ye shall all lift up your hands, and shall enter into covenant with the Lord your God to keep this Law, and to obey His statutes, that He may prolong your days upon the land.

Chapter 36

Priesthood

1 ¶ There are two Priesthoods: the Priesthood of an Endless Life; and the Priesthood of Life.

2 ¶ In the Priesthood of an endless life are two Orders; that of Apostles, and of Priests.

3 ¶ Of Apostles there are four Degrees.

4a ¶ The first Degree is that of Lawgiver: and is Apostle, Prophet, Seer, Revelator, and Translator.

4b This Degree is sole, and gives the word of God as from His own mouth.

5 ¶ The second Degree is that of Counsellor: and is Apostle, Prophet, Seer and king.

6a ¶ The third Degree is that of Ambassador.

6b Of these there shall be twelve.

6c They shall be Apostles and witnesses to the nations, and rulers in all places where the Lawgiver shall send them.

7a ¶ The fourth Degree is that of Evangelist.

7b Evangelists are Apostles, and witnesses of the Kingdom, to whatever nation they are sent.

7c Seven are a full Quorum; and there shall be but one Quorum to any nation, kindred, tongue or people.

8 ¶ Of Priests there are two Degrees.

9 ¶ The first Degree is that of High Priests.

10 ¶ The second Degree is that of Elders.

11 ¶ In the Priesthood of Life are three Orders; that of Priest, of Teacher, and of Deacon.

12 ¶ Of Priests, of the Priesthood of life, there shall be a Chief Priest, a first and second High Priest, and a Leader of each Course of Priests, to every Temple.

13a ¶ This Priesthood shall be divided into Courses, according to the nature of their duties;

13b And officers appointed in the several Courses, to guide and direct in the duties of the Course.

13c In organizing the Courses, those may be included who have been ordained to a higher Priesthood.

14 ¶ Of Teachers there are five Degrees; Rabboni, Rabbi, Doctor, Ruler, and Teacher.

15 ¶ Of Deacons there are three Degrees; Marshals, Stewards, and Ministers.

Chapter 37

Place of Your Dwellings

1a ¶ Ye shall not scatter abroad, after the manner of other men, nor dwell alone in the fields;

1b Ye shall dwell together in cities, in towns, and in villages.

1c Your inheritances shall be appointed to you, both in the places of your dwelling, and in the fields and forests round about.

2 ¶ In the fields and forests may you go and dwell, when you labor there, but ye shall return; and your treasures, your granaries, and your storehouses, shall be at the place of your dwellings.

3a ¶ And if ye would in any wise go and dwell among strangers to gain power over them, or to get riches, or for any other reason whatsoever, ye shall not go except by permission of your king and of the rulers whom he shall command,

3b Lest ye be led away of your own lusts, and be estranged from the Lord, your God, and be cast off forever.

3c Moreover, if ye go without permission, ye shall be spoiled of your goods; and except ye repent and return, ye shall not have a place in the congregation before the Lord.

Chapter 38

Groves, Forests, and Waters

1a Ye shall not cut down the timber on the hills and mountains, lest your children suffer for want of wood and water.

1b Ye shall not destroy the groves along the shores of the lakes and ponds, lest the winds and storms make your land desolate, and both heat and cold destroy you.

1c Therefore, shall ye cause them to grow continually, and they shall beautify your inheritance, and your children shall rise up and call you blessed.

2a ¶ Every man who receiveth an inheritance shall preserve a forest thereon, that his children may walk in the shade thereof, and may build houses and prepare food;

2b And that his cattle faint not with heat or drought, nor perish in the blast; and the land yield her increase.

2c If there be no forest, he shall plant one.

3a ¶ Ye shall preserve the trees by the wayside; and if there be none, ye shall plant them.

3b Whether it be in the cities, towns, and villages, or the fields and forests, ye shall do it.

4 ¶ All these things shall ye do as your king shall appoint, and your rulers determine, that the land be pleasant to your children.

5a ¶ And in your cities, and towns, and villages, and by the side of great waters, and ponds, and running streams, and springs, shall groves be appointed to you, that the aged and the young may go there to rest and to play.

5b There shall ye all make yourselves joyful.

Chapter 39

Apparel and Ornaments

1a Ye shall not clothe yourselves after the manner of the follies of other men;

1b But after the manner that is seemly and convenient, shall ye clothe yourselves.

2a ¶ And your king, and your princes, and your judges and rulers shall clothe themselves according to their dignity:

2b And the Priest who administers at the altar, and he who administers in the sacraments which I appoint unto you, shall clothe in the robes of his office.

3 ¶ And all the people in their solemn assemblies, and in their gatherings together, shall clothe themselves according to my Commandment.

4 ¶ And the ornaments of your persons, and of your apparel, shall every man wear, as I shall appoint; every man in his own order.

Chapter 40

Feasts

1a These are the feasts of the Lord; holy convocations, even convocations and feasts unto the Lord your God.

2a ¶ Six days shall work be done, but the seventh day is the Sabbath day:

2b Ye shall do no work therein: it is the Sabbath of the Lord in all your dwellings:

2c Ye shall take care that nothing perish, but ye shall not labor for hire nor increase;

2d Ye shall have a holy convocation in all your Temples and Synagogues.

3 ¶ The day that James, the Prophet of God, was established king, and sat upon his throne, is a notable day; it shall be kept in remembrance forever.

4a ¶ As oft as this day returneth shall all the Saints assemble together; it shall be a holy convocation.

4b They shall assemble in their Temples, and in their Synagogues, and in public places, to offer a thank-offering, an offering of praise unto God, because He has given the Kingdom to the Saints.

5a ¶ The king shall, therefore, offer a heifer, without blemish; in the presence of the congregation shall he offer it.

5b In the morning shall he offer it, and the same day shall it be eaten: he and his household shall eat of it.

5c Not a bone of it shall be broken: they shall eat it with bread, and seasoned with herbs.

6a ¶ After this manner shall all the children of the kingdom sacrifice: every man a heifer, or a lamb, or a dove.

6b Every man a clean beast, or a clean fowl, according to his household.

7 ¶ Ye shall take the victim of the sacrifice which ye shall offer, and shall bring it before the Lord in the presence of the congregation, and shall bring it to the Priest, and shall say:

8 ¶ I profess this day unto the Lord God, that I am come into the Kingdom which He promised by the mouth of all the Prophets: praised be his name for his glorious goodness, and his great power.

9a ¶ And the Priest shall slay the victim, and thou shalt say: We were a people, few in number; scattered among our enemies:

9b They killed our Prophets, murdered our brethren, robbed us of our possessions, and banished us from among them;

9c But God has made us a Kingdom: and the fear of us is upon those who hate us.

10a ¶ When the Gentiles evilly entreated us, and afflicted us, and thrust us out, we cried unto the Lord, God of our fathers;

10b The Lord heard our voice, and looked on our affliction, and sorrow, and homelessness; and he gave us this land for an everlasting possession; and hath made us a kingdom:

10c And now have I brought unto Him this victim for a thank-offering, and a perpetual memorial.

11a ¶ And thou shalt eat of the sacrifice: thou and thy household, and thy neighbor;

11b But the stranger, though he dwelleth in thy gates, and in thy house, shall not eat of it.

11c Thou shalt eat it with herbs, and the Priest with thee, in the congregation of the Lord;

11d It is a holy convocation, and a feast unto the Lord: ye shall do no servile labor that day.

12a ¶ And when thou hast eaten, thou shalt say unto the Lord, thy God: I have come into the land which thou gavest to thy Saints:

12b I have heard thy Law and have entered into covenant with thee to keep Thy Commandments; and I have eaten of the sacrifice before thee as a witness forever.

13 ¶ Look down from thy holy habitation, from heaven, and bless us this day, even all the children of thy Kingdom; and the land which thou hast given us, and establish us forever.

14 ¶ When ye are come into the land which the Lord your God giveth unto you, and have gathered the harvest of your inheritance, ye shall bring a portion of the first fruits of your fields before the Lord your God, for an offering of first fruits.

15a ¶ At every Temple where the name of the Lord your God is named, shall the Priest appoint the day of first fruits, according to the days of your principal harvests of food;

15b And by that day shall ye all bring your offering of first fruits unto the Priest, in the Temples and the Synagogues, and ye shall have a holy convocation before the Lord in every place to which ye bring the first fruits.

16a ¶ Ye shall lift up unto the Priest who ministereth unto the Lord a portion of first fruits, by the day of the holy convocation of the harvest;

16b In the selfsame day ye shall offer an offering of flesh also; a clean beast, or a clean fowl: it shall be a sacrifice and feast of thanksgiving unto the Lord, for the abundance of the harvest.

17a ¶ And ye shall not eat of your harvest, neither bread, nor grain, nor green ears, nor roots, nor germs, till ye have brought your offering of first fruits before the Lord, your God.

17b He that eateth thereof, shall add a fifth to what he ate, and bring it and the increase,

17c And the first fruits also: and the first fruits shall be an abundance for the feast, every one for his household:

17d And the rich shall bring for the poor, out of his abundance, and for the Priests also that minister.

Chapter 41

Inheritances

1a I have appointed the Islands of the Great Lakes for the gathering of the Saints, saith the Lord God.

1b I have given the Islands to them for their inheritance; even all that man walketh not unto from the main.

2 ¶ And I have appointed my servant James the anointed Shepherd of my flock, to apportion unto every one his portion, for a perpetual inheritance.

3a ¶ Let him, therefore, appoint unto everyone his inheritance, sufficient for him, and for his children:

3b And to the princes their portions, that they have an abundance for their servants, and their households;

3c Lest they be tempted to take reward for judgment, or feed not the poor for lack of bread, or deliver not the oppressed for the weakness of their arm.

4a ¶ Ye shall not sell your inheritances: nor shall ye deliver them to the hands of strangers, to possess them.

4b Ye shall in no wise grant them to others: for they are the dwelling of your wives, the food and raiment of your servants, and the home of your children.

5a ¶ If ye sell your inheritances, and take a price for them, yet shall not the purchaser possess them; they shall not be his forever.

5b And though you thrust him not out, yet shall your wives, your servants, and your children return to them, and none shall hinder.

6 ¶ And a book of inheritances shall your king keep, and your rulers also shall keep them, that every man may read therein, and trespass not upon his neighbor.

7a ¶ Ye shall set up landmarks to your possessions, and no man shall move them.

7b If ye set not up landmarks, or neglect to keep them up that they go to decay, and are lost, and one trespass unwittingly, ye shall not punish him.

7c He shall pay for what he hath gotten, or he who hath suffered the trespass shall pay him for his labor, and take his own, if he will.

8 ¶ If strangers or enemies set up landmarks against you, ye shall destroy them: they shall not remain.

Chapter 42

Descent of Inheritances

1a If a man die leaving sons, his inheritance shall belong to them, and it may be parted among them.

1b And to the firstborn, or he that is worthy to be so reckoned, shall be given a double portion, that he may keep up the dignity of his father's house.

2a ¶ The sons which he hath adopted shall be reckoned with the sons he hath begotten: they are his.

2b But if any of his sons have received an inheritance already, they shall not receive a portion with their father's children.

3a ¶ No man shall receive two inheritances, lest his neighbor have none.

3b But if he receive another, or if he marry an heiress, he shall surely give up the former, that it may be given to him who hath none, or who lacketh a portion.

4a ¶ If a man die having no sons, but daughters, the inheritance shall belong to them:

4b The men who shall take them to wife, shall be called after the name of their fathers, every man after the name of his wife's father: otherwise he shall not possess the inheritance.

4c Thus shall the house and the name of him be kept up, who hath no son.

5a ¶ But if he have neither sons nor daughters, and he be found a righteous man, then may the king appoint his nearest kinsman who is found worthy, and is not the firstborn of his father, his heir;

5c And he who is thus appointed shall be called after the name of him who had no child, thus shall his name and his house be kept up.

5d Otherwise shall the king give his inheritance to him who is needy.

6a ¶ If a man desert his inheritance for a long time, that it be left to decay and waste, or become wild, that the portion of the house of the Lord, and the treasury of the king fail, then shall the king's servants possess it.

6b And the king may take it to himself or grant it to another who needeth it.

7a ¶ If the sons of him who has left his inheritance return, the king's servants shall render it to them.

7b But if the king has taken it to himself, or granted it to another, then shall the king give them another inheritance.

8 ¶ If any man will leave his inheritance to seek a place in another land which the Lord, your God, giveth you, then shall he render his inheritance to the king, who shall appoint him another, that his children may possess it instead of the former, and his house and his name be not lost among the Saints.

9a ¶ If the king seek men to go up to a new land to possess it by the Command of the Lord your God, then shall the sons among many brethren go up and establish their houses,

9b And their names shall be named upon their inheritances, that they may be kept up forever,

9c And they shall not inherit with their brethren of the possessions of their father.

10 ¶ Thus shall every man have an inheritance, or a portion, and they shall not be divided till they are too small for you.

11a ¶ If an inheritance has been divided, and one who hath a portion die leaving no child, or render it up to receive another, it shall not be given to a stranger to his house.

11b It shall return to the head of the family to whom the inheritance pertaineth.

12 ¶ And if he die leaving no sons, but a daughter, and any of her kinsman who has also a portion of that inheritance take her to wife, he shall have her portion with her.

Chapter 43

Social Order

1a Thou shalt not abide in the conversations of the ungodly; the corrupt desires of deceitful lusts; as an old man unchanged;

1b But shalt be renewed in the spirit of thy mind; that thou be a new man; growing into the likeness of God's perfections; born anew in righteousness and true holiness.

2a ¶ Put away lying: speak every man the truth to his neighbor; let no corrupt communication proceed out of thy mouth;

2b But that which is good to edifying, and increasing faith; that it may minister grace to the hearers:

2c Grieve not the Holy Spirit of God, by which thou art sealed unto the day of redemption.

3 ¶ Put away anger, wrath, bitterness, and malice; and be ye kind one to another: tenderhearted, forgiving one another, even as God forgiveth you; followers of God as dear children, walking together in love.

4 ¶ The first power over every child is the mother: the highest power in any household is the father of the family, the head of the house: to him let all give heed; but the Law is over all.

5a ¶ If the father dies, his firstborn son is head in his stead:

5b Nevertheless, in the dwelling, he shall not rule over his mother, nor the mother of his brother;
he shall honor them all the days of his life.

6a ¶ Thou shalt honor thy father and thy mother all thy days:

6b Thou shalt not depart from them, nor rebel against them; but shalt abide with them, except they send thee away with a blessing; that thou mayest build them up, or, be established by thine own name.

7 ¶ But thou shalt seek to establish thy sons: thou shalt build them up with thee, or part them a portion of thine inheritance, as shall be meet, that they may grow up, and in their honor bring honor to thee.

8a ¶ And if thou have widows, or children, or servants, or any members of thy household, thou shalt provide for them according to their station, and thy possessions.

8b If thou do it not, the king shall appoint them their meat and their portion, as shall be just.

9a ¶ But the inheritance shall remain one; over it the firstborn shall have the highest dignity; and his portion shall be double:

9b If any man having a portion, divideth it among his posterity, he need not to respect the firstborn: he shall do as seemeth him good.

10a ¶ If thy firstborn is not worthy to keep up the dignity of thy house, and thou wilt abase him, and exalt another in his stead, thou shalt bring him before the judges at the judgment seat of the city, and show what evil he hath done:

10b And if thou clearly show that he is unworthy, and that the other is worthy, the judges shall declare it: thou shalt abase him, and adopt the other:

10c But if thou hast neglected to instruct him, and to restrain him, the Judges shall declare it: thou shalt not abase him; the sin be upon thy head.

11a ¶ Thou shalt not sell thy daughter: thou shalt in no case take a price for her in marriage:

11b But thou shalt endow her of raiment, and goods, and flocks, according to thine ability;

11c And thou shalt give her in marriage only to whom she loveth, and who is worthy:

11d Thou shalt not give her to a stranger, nor to a despiser of this Law, nor to a blasphemer.

12a ¶ Every man may give a portion to his children, a dowry to his wives, and a possession to his servants, while he liveth;

12b And except it is manifestly unjust, the judge shall not change it after his death;

12c As he determines it by his last blessing, so shall it be: if it be made sure before, it shall not be changed.

13a ¶ The princes, and the nobles who have a great possession for an inheritance, according to their dignity, shall reserve a portion according to his dignity to the firstborn:

13b To their other sons shall they give portions as common men; but they shall seek rather to make Nobles of them all.

14a ¶ If a nobleman or a prince have servants, and they eat not their bread at his table, he shall appoint them their portions, in his inheritance, that they hunger not:

14b Upon his inheritance he shall be as a king to them; but he shall not exact more than a tenth of them, besides the tithing of all.

15a ¶ This is the Law of the servant taken captive in war, and of the servant bought with money, and of the servant born in thy house, and of him who cleaveth unto thee that thou mayest be a Prince and a Savior unto him:

15b He shall be unto thee next to thy child: and thou shalt seek to establish him; for his greatness is thy glory.

16a ¶ But if they be content to abide in his household, it is better: he shall appoint them their food, their raiment, and their habitation, in due season;

16b And they shall labor in his shop, and his field, and with his flock; they shall share in all his toils, and in all his possessions, and he shall be a ruler over them.

16c If they serve him, he shall not cast them off forever; but if he oppress them, and they flee from him, ye shall not return them to him, lest his hand be hard upon them.

17a ¶ And if the brethren or the neighbors of a Prince or a Nobleman join themselves unto him, he shall appoint unto them duty and reward, according to their rank, and ability, and faithfulness:

17b In his household they shall be as sons; and with him, and with his heir, shall possess his inheritance, that they together, being strong, may wax exceedingly great.

Chapter 44

Household Relations

1a Thou shalt be fruitful and multiply and replenish the land which the Lord, thy God, giveth thee and subdue it: lest it be waste and desolate, and thy name be lost in the generations to come.

2a ¶ But all thy children shall be of thy wives: thou shalt not go after strange women,

2b For so should the land be corrupt under thy feet; an abhorring to the righteous; and thy children scattered abroad;

2c And in the mixing of thy seed, is barrenness and desolation; the corruption of the flesh, and disease and anguish.

3a ¶ Thou shalt not marry thy mother, or thy daughter, in any line, to all generations:

3b Thou shalt not marry thy sister, or the daughter of thy sister or thy brother, or the sister
of thy father or thy mother: thou shalt not marry a woman and her daughter to all generations.

4 ¶ Thou shalt not marry a virgin in infantile sexual impotence; nor a dwarf, nor one hereditarily deformed, nor possessed of evil spirits, nor any one not clothed in her right mind: nor any one thou lovest not, or who loveth not thee.

5a ¶ Thou shalt not take unto thee a multitude of wives disproportionate to thine inheritance, and thy substance:

5b Nor shalt thou take wives to vex those thou hast; neither shalt thou put away one to take another.

6a ¶ Thou shalt not put away thy wife but for adultery: the adulteress is abominable;

6b She shall be given to the corruptions of the flesh, that her belly may swell and her thigh rot;

6c And that she be a warning and a proverb: if she repent in dust and ashes for a long time, thou mayest forgive her; yet is she not thy wife: if thou wilt take her, thou shalt marry her again.

7a ¶ Thou shalt not lie with the wife of thy neighbor; for it is an abomination:

7b Neither shalt thou take her to wife; she cannot be thine:

7c If he stone thee to death, no man shall hinder: thou shalt not be avenged; what he doeth he shall do speedily.

8a ¶ Thou shalt give thy daughter in marriage while she is yet young:

8b If thou give her not till she has been six years potent, she may give herself in marriage: thou shalt not prevent her.

9a ¶ Thou shalt take a wife to thy son, while he is yet young; yet not in his infantile impotence:

9b Thou shalt take for him one that he loveth, and who loveth him; if thou doest it not, when he hath been seven years potent he may take one to himself: thou shalt not prevent him.

10a ¶ And if thou covenant or promise to marry a woman or a virgin, thou shalt not break thy covenant; thou shalt not draw back from thy promise:

10b And if thou lie with one, and she conceive seed of thee, thou shalt take her to wife; thou shalt not bring her shame upon her:

10c If thou dost her brethren shall stone thee, and none shall deliver thee; and yet thou shalt be judged for thy faithlessness:

10d If she be not of thy rank, and her brethren fear thee, the hand of the Elders shall be against thee: thou shalt not corrupt the poor, nor bring shame upon them.

11a ¶ If thy brother have an inheritance, and die leaving a wife, but no seed, thou shalt take her to wife, and raise up seed to thy brother, that his name be not lost among the people:

11b Thou shalt possess the inheritance with her, till the seed be grown up to possess it.

11c If he had but a portion, it shall be thine, and the seed also.

11d If she love thee not, or thou wilt not take her, this right goeth to the next kinsman; but no one shall take the inheritance or portion without her.

12a ¶ Moreover, if thou takest a widow in marriage, and she have been joined to another forever, thou shalt only take her for life;

12b And it shall be expressly determined whose the seed is; whether thine, or his whose widow she is.

13 ¶ If thou marry a wife having children, and they have no father in the kingdom, and she bring them to thee, they are thine: thou shalt receive them, and establish them.

14a ¶ If thou marry a wife, and she is the first representative in the faith of her progenitors and near relatives, in the redemption of the dead they shall be hers; she shall bring them to thee:

14b If thou obtain a royal Priesthood, they shall be thine in the dominion forever: thou shalt raise them
up in the last day, to increase the glory of thy kingdom.

15 ¶ If a woman or a virgin obtain a good report through faith, and is chosen of God a Prince and
a ruler, she shall have an inheritance appointed to her, with her husband or her brethren, that she may possess it, and her children with her, and that she may rule over all her house.

Chapter 45

Highways

1a The Seas, and Lakes, and Rivers where men can pass in boats and vessels of any kind, are the highways of the nations: thou mayest travel them: no man shall hinder.

2 ¶ Deserts, and forests, and waste places are also highways for the people: thou mayest pass over them, and none shall prevent thee.

3 ¶ The king may make great roads from city to city, and wheresoever the good of his people requires them, either by land or by water.

4 ¶ The king shall appoint Elders, discreet men to keep his highways, and to receive tribute of those that use them, that there may be money to make and preserve them forever.

5a ¶ The king may also grant unto others to make highways, and to receive tribute for the use of them, that they may be recompensed for the labor they have done:

5b They shall not be oppressive in their charges: the king shall restrain them according to justice.

6 ¶ The king shall appoint Elders in all the cities, and towns, and villages, to establish, make and preserve roads in all the country round about, as his people have need.

7 ¶ The king shall grant unto them a portion of the tithing of his people for the making of roads for the common use of all, without cost, that nothing obstruct you in your travels.

8a ¶ The king's highway shall be made in the best place, and no man shall hinder; it is for all the people to pass over.

8b But in making roads the Elders shall spare every man's inheritance, unless the necessity for crossing it be very great.

9 ¶ In the cities, and towns, and villages, ye shall make streets, and lanes, and alleys, with sidewalks, and crosswalks.

10 ¶ And in the highways, and roads, and streets, ye shall plant trees, and shrubs, and grass, and they shall be pleasant and beautiful.

Chapter 46

Tithing

1a Of all the fruit of your fields, and the increase of your flocks, a tenth shall you render to the house of the Lord, your God, and the treasury of the king;

1b That the Priest who administers in holy things, and the servants of the king, who rule in righteousness, may eat bread, and the land yield her increase.

2a ¶ If ye do not these things, the Priest shall fail to instruct you and your children: the order of God's house shall be forgotten;

2b And the servants of the king shall forget the Law, and judge for hire, and righteousness shall cease.

2c Then shall wickedness be in the midst of you, and oppression come upon you.

3a ¶ Moreover, the king shall send his servants to demand of you, and they shall exact that which ye have withheld, and shall wrest it from you with increase;

3b And if ye resist them, ye shall be spoiled.

4a ¶ Of all the spoil which you take from your enemies, a tenth shall ye render to the house of the Lord, your God, and the treasury of the king:

4b That he who administers in holy things may remember you before God, and the king's arm may deliver you.

5 ¶ If ye do not this, ye shall not go out with a blessing, and ye shall flee before your enemies, and none shall deliver you.

6 ¶ Moreover, the king shall lift his hand against you, and shall buffet you, and from you shall he take the spoil; and if ye remove it from him, he shall spoil you.

7a ¶ When you labor not in these things, yet one-tenth of your time shall you consecrate to the Lord, your God, and shall labor for the house of the Lord, your God, and for the treasury of the king, according to your skill, and your cunning, and your art,

7b And you shall not withhold that a place for God to dwell among you may not be wanting, and the work of the king may not fail, and that you may possess abundantly fields, flocks, and habitations.

8 ¶ If ye do not these things, ye shall not prosper in the work of your hands, and poverty shall be in your dwellings.

9a ¶ Moreover, the king shall take your goods and your substance from you, to recompense what you have defrauded the house of the Lord, and the treasury of the king, with increase.

9b And if ye obstinately defraud in these things, ye shall be beaten with stripes.

10 ¶ And whosoever cometh into the kingdom, a tenth of all he possesses shall he give for the establishment of the kingdom, and for its increase, that he may have an everlasting inheritance therein.

11 ¶ And until he do this, no inheritance shall be given unto him, and he shall not wax rich in goods.

12a ¶ Moreover, the king shall send his servants to take a tenth from him, with increase;

12b And then the king, remembering his children, shall grant an inheritance unto him: but his obstinacy shall surely be remembered.

Chapter 47

Payment of Debts

1a Thou shalt pay what thou owest: thou shalt not refuse it:

1b And if thou refuse, the judge or the Elder shall send a Deacon, and he shall take of thy substance, and pay him whom thou owest.

2a ¶ If thy neighbor oweth thee, and is poor, thou shalt have compassion on him, and shalt not oppress him;

2b But if he will not pay thee, or if he trespass on thee, or do thee wrong, thou shalt admonish him;

2c If he hear thee not, thou shalt take with thee one or two neighbors, and shalt labor faithfully with him to do thee justice.

2d If he will not hear them, thou shalt lay thy testimonies at the judgment seat, and the Elder or judge who judgeth, shall hear thee and him also;

2e And he shall judge between thee and thy neighbor: and whosoever will not hear him, he shall send the Deacon to execute his judgment.

3a ¶ But if thy neighbor seek to defraud thee, or to do thee violence, or if he have done thee violence, thou mayest bring the matter to the judgment seat before thou admonish him:

3b The Elder or the judge shall judge between thee and him.

4 ¶ If thy neighbor hath not the very thing to pay thee that he promised, and be poor, thou shalt have compassion on him, and shalt take what he hath; but thou shalt not make him quite naked.

5a ¶ Thou shalt not lend to thy neighbor that is poor, on usury: thou shalt aid him, and strengthen him, and not oppress him:

5b Neither shalt thou keep his garment in pledge till morning: thou shalt return it to him.

6a ¶ Thou shalt not defraud the laborer of his hire.

6b Thou shalt not keep his wages till the darkness, lest he return not to his home, and his children have no bread; and their cry ascend to God against thee.

6c If he testify to thee that they lack nothing, then shall he wait on thee, as thou shalt agree.

The Visions and Parables of Zenos

Zenos, lost in the wilderness, prepares for death,
but instead sees the angel of the Lord and
is given a vision of God.

Chapter 1

Zenos, lost in the wilderness, prepares for death,
but instead sees the angel of the Lord and is given a vision of God.

1 And in the day that I, Zenos, did find myself alone in the wilderness, being driven off course, for I did wonder many days alone;
2 And it came to pass that in the day that I had lost all hope for the salvation of my life, I did pray into YHVH for the forgiveness of my sins and for the salvation of my eternal soul.
3 Yea, and I did pour my heart out unto YHVH for my family, yea even for the sake of my wife and children, yea and for my friends and my neighbors,
4 Yea, and for my servants, and for the strangers that did come to dwell among us in the land, and even for those that hateth me;
5 Yea, and I did pray for all mankind, that my soul might be pure before YHVH, for the Law (*Torah*) doth proclaim: Hear, O Israel: YHVH *is* our Elohim, YHVH is One (*or united*).
6 And so too doth the Law proclaim: And thou shalt love YHVH thy Elohim with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy might.
7 Holy ye shall be (*or become*), for I, YHVH Elohim, am holy.
8 Every man and every woman shall fear and respect their Mother the earth, and their Father in the Heavens, for these are the Creator, and ye, their creation, shall keep my Sabbaths; I am YHVH Elohim.
9 Be not adulterers, turning unto idols, neither make unto yourselves molten gods, for I am YHVH your Elohim.
10 And when ye shall make thy peace offerings in sacrifice unto YHVH, ye shall offer it at your own will that I might find them acceptable to me.
11 And the Law doth say also: If a stranger sojourn with thee in your land, ye shall not vex him; but the stranger that dwelleth with you shall be unto you as one born among you,

12 And thou shalt love them as thyself; for ye were strangers in the land of Egypt, and I am YHVH, your Elohim.
13 And the Law says also: Ye shall observe all my statutes, and all my judgments, and do them; I am YHVH.
14 And it came to pass that after I had prayed, being prepared to return to that Elohim who did create me, I beheld that the angel of YHVH came to me saying: I am come being sent from YHVH,
15 Chen (חן) be unto thee, and shalom, from He that is, and eternally was, and shall come in the flesh;
16 And from the seven malak who are cherubim (*angels*) which are called to stand before His throne, saying: Unto YHVH be glory and dominion forever and ever; So mote it be, Amen.
17 And this they say, for when YHVH shall come with in the flesh His friends shall wound him, and shall pierce him through;
18 And when He shall descend from the clouds every eye shall see Him, and all the blood of man upon the earth shall wail, whether with joy in their faith or in sorrow of their sins; So mote it be, Amen.
19 And it came to pass that the angel of YHVH gave unto me a scroll, saying: Take thee this scroll and eat it, for it is thy call from YHVH unto thee.
20 And I took it, and I ate of it, and it was bitter, and the pain of it was bitter, yet it was also sweet, as it were honey upon my tongue.
21 And it came to pass that having eaten the scroll, when the angel of YHVH spoke, my eyes were opened and I heard as it were a loud voice, as the sound of a shofar, saying: I am Ahyeh Asher Ahyeh, and I have called thee and set thee apart;
22 Therefore write what I shall show unto thee; and it is for thy seed, and for thy brothers, even the seed of Joseph and of Ephraim, and of Manasseh;
23 And thy words shall be written down and you shall go forth and warn my people; and these words which thou shall write, they shall be lost unto the world,
24 But these words shall not be lost unto me, for I shall keep them and preserve them; and at the Last Days they shall be brought forth to teach mine Israel;
25 Therefore, read these, my words, unto thy brethren and unto thy seed, and declare teshuvah in my name unto all the land that mine peoples might be spared;
26 And say thou unto them that I shall spare them not should they come not to me in teshuvah.
27 And I say unto thee, Zenos, that mine peoples shall reject me, and this must be that they be scattered to the four winds, that the blood of my chosen people should cover all the earth.

28 And it came to pass that after the angel of YHVH had finished speaking I fell at his feet to worship him,
29 And the angel of YHVH said unto me: Standest thou, and worship me not, for I am the malak (*servant*) of YHVH; therefore, worship Elohim in the spirit of revelation and prophecy.
30 And it came to pass that as I turned to see the voice that spake unto me, the angel of YHVH was gone from before me;
31 And in his place I saw as it were ten and seven flames; and from these seven burned more brightly than the others;
32 And in the midst of these I saw one who was like unto the Son of Man, clothed with in garments from His crown (*keter*) to his feet which touched the earth (*malchut*);
33 And girt about the chest (*binah*) with a girdle of gold, his heart being anointed;
34 And His eyes were full of wisdom (*chokhmah*) and knowledge (*da'at*), as they were flames of fire;
35 And his feet were as eternal glory (*hod and netzach*), never departing to the right nor to the left, but ever forward;
36 And in his right hand was mercy (*chesed*), and in his left judgment (*gevurah*);
37 And his countenance (*yeshod*) was as the sun shineth in his strength;
38 And I saw as it were seven stars come from out of his mouth, and each of these held in their hands and in their mouths a sharp two-edged sword.
39 And when I saw Him, I fell back to the earth and trembled.
40 And it came to pass that the angel of YHVH spoke unto me again, saying: Fear not; for what thou beholdeth is תא Aleph-Tav; the beginning and the end, the Creator and His Creation; and in Him are the keys of sheol (*death and hell*);
41 And I shall tell thee of the vision thou hast seen, of the things which were, and that are, and shall come to pass, and thou shall write it;
42 For the mystery of the seven flames are the seven angels of the seven dispensations which ruleth over the seven days of YHVH.

Chapter 2

Zenos is given another vision explaining his vision of God, he sees the heavens as they prepare the earth.

1 And it came to pass that after the angel of YHVH had spoken I looked, and I beheld a window opening in the heavens,
2 And the voice which I had heard like that of a shofar spake again unto me, saying: Come thou, and ye shall see that thou might understand that vision of which thou hast seen,
3 Yea, come and see that thou mayest know that which came before, and that which must be.
4 And I was taken away in the spirit, and I beheld as it were a throne in the heavens, and a Man (*Ahmen*) and a Woman (*Shekinah*) who sat upon the throne;
5 And They had in one hand a great sapphire upon which was written the Law (*Torah*) and in the other a great emerald upon which were written the mysteries of the temple;
6 And round Their throne I saw as it were twenty-four smaller thrones, and upon these sat twenty-four elders, clothed in their purity and prepared to be sent fourth as instructed by YHVH;
7 And out of these I saw as it were lightnings and thunderings coming forth, and these were the voices of the seven fires burning before the throne, which are the seven angels of the seven dispensations.
8 And before the throne I saw as it were the great urim and thummim where upon the eyes of Elohim rests;
9 And all about the thrones were four beasts whose eyes saw before and behind by the means of the great urim and thummim:
10 And the first beast was like a lion, being as it were the fire of judgment (*gevurah*), and standing towards the south;
11 And the second beast was like an ox, being as it were the earth grounded in wisdom (*chokhmah*), and standing towards the north;
12 And the third beast wore the face of a man, being as it were the waters flowing in mercy (*chesed*) and standing towards the east;
13 And the fourth beast was like an eagle in flight, being as it were in the air with heavenly knowledge (*da'at*) and standing towards the west.
14 And I saw that these four beasts were of six wings, and were full of eyes, and they were in constant motion day and night.
15 And as they were in motion about the thrones, they, each of them as one, said: Holy, holy, holy, Elohim Shaddai, the very Father;

16 And Shekinah, Holy is She who dwelleth in the place which is no place, beyond the infinite height and depth, the infinite of all directions embraced by the Tree of Life;
17 And YHVH the fruit of Her tree, the Yachad Yachid Echad who was, and is, and is to come.
18 And the beasts did give glory and honor in thanks, and the four and twenty elders did fall down before Him who liveth forever and ever.
19 And I beheld that not all did worship, but there was one like unto a great serpent, even a leviathan, and he did cause that a third of the host of heaven should follow after him.
20 And I saw as it were a great war in heaven, and Michael and his angels did fight against the leviathan;
21 And the leviathan fought and so too his angels, and they prevailed not; neither was their place found anymore in heaven.
22 And the great leviathan was cast out, that Satan (*accuser*), he that deceiveth the whole earth; and his angels were cast out with him.
23 And the leviathan was wroth with Shekinah, therefore he did go down to make war with the remnant of her seed, they which keep the Torah and remember the name YHVH;
24 And all that dwell in darkness upon the earth shall worship the leviathan, and their names are not written in the book of life from the foundation of the world.
25 And it came to pass that I saw as it were in the midst of the thrones, and elders, and the four beasts, there stood one like unto the Son of Man as a Lamb, waiting to be sent forth to be slain;
26 And from Him came the seven angels of the seven dispensations, being sent forth into all the earth by the Son of Man, whose blood should be spilt upon the rock, for terrible are the works of mankind.
27 And it came to pass that I heard a voice like unto a shofar call from out of the temple of heaven, saying to the seven angels of the seven dispensations: Go thy ways, and pour out the vials of the wrath of YHVH upon the earth.

Chapter 3

Zenos sees the spiritual vision of the first dispensation, that of Adam and Eve overseen by Michael the archangel who is Adam.

1 And there came Michael, one of the seven angels of the seven dispensations, with a vile;

2 And he spoke unto me, saying: Come I will show unto thee the judgment of she who prostituteth herself upon the many waters, with whom the nations of the earth have committed fornication;
3 Yea, and the whole earth hath she made drunk with the wine of her fornication.
4 And it came to pass that I was carried away in spirit into the wilderness, and there I saw as it were a woman who sat upon a red serpent, yea even that leviathan;
5 And written upon the leviathan were the names of blasphemy unto Elohim Khayyim;
6 And the leviathan had, as it were, seven heads and ten horns, and this to mock the seven and ten flames.
7 And though she was naked, the woman appeared to be adorned in scarlet, red and purple, and wearing gold, and precious stones, and pearls;
8 And in her right hand she held as it were a golden chalice which was full of abominations and her fornication, and in her hair and her fingers were filthiness;
9 And her name is Lilith, and she is the mother of idolaters, and she and Cain walk the earth teaching mankind the abominations written upon their great serpent.
10 And it came to pass that I saw as it were the woman lying with Cain, intoxicated by their sins, drunk as it were with the blood of qaddish (*the holy ones or the saints*), and in the blood of all those that died, martyred.
11 And it came to pass that the angel of YHVH spoke unto me, saying: I shall tell thee the mystery of Lilith, and of the leviathan and his seven heads and his ten horns;
12 And the serpent that thou sawest shall ascend out of the abyss, being perdition.
13 And here is wisdom: The seven heads are seven lying tongues on which the woman sitteth that shall oppose the seven angels of the seven dispensations, each one in their turn;
14 And they are seven rulers of man: five are fallen, and two are yet to come;
15 And the ten horns are ten rulers with no power, but they receive power as kings upon the earth for one hour as they join with the leviathan;
16 And these being perdition are as one mind, giving their strength and their power unto Lilith and her leviathan,
17 For these have made war with Yah, and YHVH shall overcome them, for he is Mashiach HaMashiach, Yachad Yachid Echad, the Great High Priest (*of?*) Melchizedek.

18 An the waters where upon Lilith rested are peoples and nations of the earth;
19 And the ten horns which thou sawest upon the leviathan, these shall hate Lilith, and shall make her desolate, stripping her naked, and burning her with fire,
20 And this because YHVH shall put in their hearts to fulfil His will, even unto their own detriment should they not return in teshuvah, for the Word of YHVH shall be fulfilled.
21 And it came to pass that I saw as it were Shekinah; and she was clothed in a fire as bright as the sun, and she did wear upon her head a crown of twelve stars;
22 And I beheld that she was in pain, carrying her child, and the child was ready to be delivered.
23 And it came to pass that when the leviathan saw that he was cast unto the earth, he persecuted Shekinah as she sought to bring forth the man child.
24 And it came to pass that Lilith and Cain and all those that followed after them worshipped the leviathan, saying: Who is like unto the leviathan?
25 And: Who is able to make war with him?
26 And: He doeth great wonders, even showering the earth with fire from the heavens,
27 And so did these deceive the men of the earth by his priestcrafts called miracles,
28 And it came to pass that Lilith and Cain went about saying to the men to make idols to worship the leviathan.
29 And it came to pass that I saw that Michael had opened one of the seals, and I heard, as it were the sound of a shofar,
30 And then I heard the beast that was as a lion say: Come and see!
31 And I saw as it were a man sitting upon a white horse, and unto him was given a crown, and I beheld that he went forth conquering, and to conquer.
32 And it came to pass that I saw Michael sounding his shofar, and there followed hail and fire mingled with blood,
33 And the abaddon (*devils*) were cast lose upon the earth, and they burnt up the third part of the trees and all the green grass.
34 And it came to pass that YHVH Elohim called Adam and Eve and their sons and daughters to say unto all they that worshiped the leviathan: YHVH knows thy works, and thy labors, and He shall not long be patient;
35 For how many days more dost thou think YHVH will bear them which are evil?

36 And thou hast listened to them which say they are holy men and women, and are not, and YHVH hast found them liars.
37 And YHVH has seen they that have left their first love; and He has known them but has crossed out their name.
38 And to these YHVH says: Remember, O remember, from whence thou art fallen, and repent, and do again thy first works;
39 And if thou will not, I will come unto thee quickly, and will remove thy fire out of its place, except thou walk again in teshuvah.
40 And unto they that overcometh shall I give them to eat of the tree of life, which ye left behind in the Eden of Elohim.
41 And it came to pass that Michael went forth, and poured out his vial upon the earth;
42 And there fell a noise as a loud crying, and they which had the mark of the leviathan upon them, and which worshipped his image, were cursed with a sore curse.

Chapter 4

Zenos sees the spiritual vision of the second dispensation, that of Enoch and his wives overseen by Zaphkiel or Metatron, the archangel who is Enoch.

1 And it came to pass that I beheld Zaphkiel open the second seal, and I heard the beast like unto an ox say: Come and see!
2 And it came to pass that I saw as it were another horse going out that was red, and power was given to him that sat thereon to take peace from the earth;
3 And that mankind should war and should kill one another, and there was given unto him a great sword.
4 And it came to pass that Zaphkiel who is Metatron sounded his shofar, and I saw as it were a great mountain burn with fire, and it was cast into the sea,
5 And the third part of the sea became blood; and death became the third part of the creatures which were in the sea; yea, and a third part of the ships were destroyed.
6 And it came to pass that I saw as it were the leviathan, being red in color, the same as before, with his seven heads and ten horns, and I beheld that he now had seven crowns upon his heads.
7 And I saw, as it were, his tail had drawn up the third of the stars of heaven, and these were cast down upon the earth, and these had spawned the iyrin.

8 And it came to pass that I saw as it were the leviathan standing before Shekinah; and she was with child, ready to be delivered;
9 And the leviathan stood ready with his teeth bared, as to devour her child as it should leave the womb;
10 But to my astonishment, I saw as it were two wings were given to Shekinah, like that of an eagle, and she did fly into the wilderness,
11 And I saw as it were that she hid there in safety and was nourished far from the face of that serpent Lilith.
12 And it came to pass that there was power given to the leviathan to speak blasphemies even unto the whole earth, save it be the city in the wilderness where Shekinah did dwell;
13 But unto the rest of the world, death was given them that would not worship the image of the leviathan;
14 And these made war with one another but lived in fear of the city in the wilderness wherein Shekinah dwelt.
15 And it came to pass that Metatron poured out his vial upon the sea; and it became as the blood of a dead man, and everything that did live in the sea died.
16 And I saw great works of darkness, and tribulation, and poverty—even unto those that were rich of the things of the world.
17 And it came to pass that the angel of YHVH said unto me: Fear not any of those things which thou shalt suffer;
18 For YHVH has given thee life, and unto all that overcometh the world, these shall not see the second death.

Chapter 5

Zion and Shekinah flee the Earth.

1 And it came to pass that I saw as it were Eden, who is Shekinah, who is the Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil, which is to say wisdom (*Chokhma*), and the Tree of Life;
2 And the seven malak who are cherubim (*angels*) the seven angels of the seven dispensations went down from the heavens into the earth to do the will of YHVH in the whole earth.
3 And it came to pass that when Adam and Eve in their generation were sitting outside the gate of the Garden to behold the radiant appearance of the Shekinah, the whole earth was radiant from one end to the other with her splendor,
4 And her splendor was greater even than that of the sun at midday, and it blinded the leviathan, and Lilith as she rode upon him;

5 And as these traveled, they brought darkness, and the worship of the sun, the moon, and the stars;
6 And the worship of the earth, and the worship of the works of the hands of men, which are to worship the leviathan.
7 And it came to pass that I saw as it were the seven angels of the seven dispensations come before the throne of Elohim, saying: Elohim Shaddai, what shall we do with the children of Adam?
8 For we see that these art gone to worship idols in fornication with Lilith and her leviathan, even that great beast of blasphemy against thy name;
9 And what shall we do to cleanse the earth of this abomination, and to lay waste unto the inhabitants of the earth who worship idols?
10 And it came to pass that YHVH Elohim lifted up His Shekinah from the earth, from the midst of the idol worship, and there Her name was Zion.
11 And I saw as it were the seven angels of the seven dispensations with armies and the hosts of heaven camped as it were roundabout the earth in camps of thousands and tens of thousands hosts;
12 And I saw as it were that these fetched their shofars and took the horns in their hands and surrounded the Shekinah of YHVH with songs.
13 And it came to pass that Zion ascended to the high heavens, as it is written, and Enoch was lifted up to heaven together with Shekinah.
14 And the angel of YHVH came unto me saying: When the Lamb desired to be lifted up upon that tree for the sins of mankind, He first sent Michael the Prince to prepare the earth for YHVH;
15 And then he sent Zaphkiel who is Metatron to gather all they that would follow YHVH and to carry them in Shekinah and in great glory in a fiery chariot with horses of flame and fire, driven by malak of glory.
16 And it came to pass that I saw as it were YHVH lifting Enoch up to the high heavens together with Shekinah;
17 And it came to pass that I saw as it were that when these reached the high heavens, the sapphires whereupon was written the Law were aflame as though to be burned up in a consuming fire,
18 And I puzzled in amazement, wondering what flames could devour the Law in fire?
19 And it came to pass that there came a voice as thunder from the Throne in Heaven saying: Fear not; for because all the children of man have denied me and my kingdom, and have gone a whoring after Lilith, worshipping idols, I have removed my Shekinah from among them and have lifted Her up on high;

20 But these whom I have taken from among them are mine elect, even the inhabitants of the Zion come out of the world, and these are equal to one with another in faith, in righteousness, and in perfection.
21 And so I have taken these from the earth which is my creation under all the heavens unto my bosom, and these shall I return in the last days;
22 For these from the generation (*dispensation*) have I preserved from the Flood, lifting them upon the wings of the wind, taking my Shekinah to the highest heaven that she may sit with me again upon my throne;
23 And unto she is given the key to the gates of understanding, and subtlety, and life, and grace, and kindness, and love, and meekness, and preservation, and mercy, and honor;
24 And these are given Her that mankind may learn to worship YHVH in wisdom and knowledge unto understanding; And in understanding unto mercy and instruction; and in mercy and instruction unto beauty, love, and kindness, and unto victory in my kingdom;
25 And this is the foundation , and this is to walk in teshuvah unto splendor;
26 And I have adorned mankind with all these good and praiseworthy things; and unto Israel more than all the children of heaven.

Chapter 6

Zenos sees the spiritual vision of the third dispensation, that of Noah and Na'amah overseen by Gabriel the archangel who is Noah.

1 And it came to pass that I saw that Gabriel followed Michael and Metatron, saying: All those who shall worship the leviathan, receiving his mark on their forehead, or in their hand, these shall feel the wrath of YHVH poured out unto thee from the cup of his indignation;
2 These things saith He which holdeth in his hands that sharpened two-edged sword;
3 For He knows thy works, and where thou dwellest; therefore, hold thee fast the name YHVH, and speak not His holy name in vain!
4 Eat not anything sacrificed unto idols, for this is to commit adultery and fornication, but walk thee in teshuvah;

5 Or I shall come at thee quickly, and when ye least expect, and will fight against thee with the sword of my mouth.
6 But to they that overcome shall be given to eat of the hidden manna, and the fruit of the tree of life,
7 And unto these shall be given a new name written upon a white stone, and no one shall look upon the stone and see in it except they that do receive it;
8 For the new name given unto the qaddish (*holy ones or saints*) of YHVH is thy call to service to YHVH in His Holy Priesthood, and the white stone is thy urim and thummim.
9 And it came to pass that I saw that Gabriel opened the third seal, and I heard the beast with the face of a man say: Come and see!
10 And I saw as it were a black horse, and his rider bore a pair of balances in his right hand, and a sword in his left.
11 And it came to pass that Gabriel sounded his shofar, and there fell a great fire from heaven, and it fell upon the third part of the waters on the earth, and a third part of the waters beneath the earth;
12 And the waters came forth as a great flood, and many died because of the waters, that there should be a new birth from the cleansing.
13 And it came to pass that Gabriel poured his vial out upon the waters; and they became as blood.
14 And it came to pass that I heard Gabriel say: Thou art righteous, YHVH, which art, and was, and shalt be, because thou hast judged thus.
15 For these have made war against thy people, YHVH, and shed the blood of thy servants the prophets, and thou hast given them blood to drink; for they are worthy.
16 And it came to pass that I saw, as it were, Shekinah in the wilderness, in the place prepared for her of YHVH, and there I saw that His Shekinah was fed for sixty years.
17 And it came to pass that the leviathan spat water out of his mouth as a it were a flood after Shekinah, that he might cause her to be carried away of the waters.
18 And the earth did help Shekinah, for the earth did open her mouth swallowing up the flood which the leviathan did cast out of his mouth that the waters could not reach up unto Her.
19 And the leviathan opened his mouth to blasphemy against YHVH Elohim, to blaspheme His name, and His tabernacle, and them that dwell in heaven.
20 And it came to pass that after the waters had subsided he caused all mankind to receive a mark upon their right hand, or in their foreheads as an oath and covenant that none might buy or sell, save

they the mark, or the name of the leviathan, or the number of his name.
21 And this mark was like unto that with which Cain had been marked by YHVH, to make a mockery of the things of Elohim.
22 And the mark of the leviathan is Vav Samekh Mem (וסם, *666*), and the name of the leviathan is Samael *who is Samyaza*.

Chapter 7

Zenos sees the spiritual vision of the fourth dispensation, that of Melchizedek and his wife (wives?) overseen by Raphael the archangel who is Melchizedek.

1 And it came to pass that I saw as it were the Son of Man standing upon a great mountain, and the strength of Zion with Him;
2 And with Him I saw as it were one hundred forty and four thousand qaddish (*holy ones or saints*), these having the Holy Name of Elohim written in their foreheads.
3 And it came to pass that I heard the angel of YHVH saying: Here are they that keep the commandments of Elohim, in their faith in YHVH.
4 And it came to pass that I saw as it were Lilith about the earth calling herself a prophetess, teaching and seducing qaddish (*holy ones or saints*) to commit fornication, and to eat things sacrificed unto idols;
5 And though YHVH had given her space to repent of her fornication, she repented not;
6 And I saw that great tribulation awaited those that went with her into her bed to commit adultery with her, except they repent of their deeds.
7 Yea and YHVH did slay her children with death when she left the garden, refusing to return; for YHVH gives unto all, yea everyone, according to their works.
8 But unto they that overcometh, and keeping the Word and the works of YHVH unto the end, to these will He give power and dominion;
9 For these YHVH shall rule with the rod of iron; and he shall be their potter, and they His chosen vessels that He shall mold and form for these He shall receive from Elohim;
10 And these that shall be given Him shall be as His morning stars.
11 And it came to pass that Raphael opened the fourth seal, and I heard the voice of the beast as an eagle in the air saying: Come and see!

12 And I saw as it were a pale horse whose rider is Death; and sheol (*death and hell*) came after them;
13 And power was given them over the fourth part of the earth, to kill with a sword, and with hunger, and with death, and with the beasts of the earth.
14 And it came to pass that Raphael blew upon his shofar, and the third part of the sun, and of the moon, and of the stars were smitten;
15 Yea, and as the third part of them was darkened, and the day shone not for a third part of it, and the night likewise, and the earth was covered in darkness for it would receive not the light.
16 And it came to pass that I saw the angel Moroni flying through the midst of heaven, saying with a loud voice: Woe unto the inhabitants of the earth for there are three more angels yet to sound!
17 And it came to pass that Raphael poured out his vial upon the sun; and power was given unto him to scorch men with the judgment of fire.
18 And mankind was scorched with a great heat, and cursed the name of Elohim, and they repented not, nor did they come to give Him glory.
19 And it came to pass that I saw as it were Shekinah where she was sent away into the wilderness, and I beheld that she brought forth a man child; and he is to rule all nations with a rod of iron and his name is King of Peace;
20 And by this King of Peace was Shekinah able to travel again from the earth to the heavens.
21 And it came to pass that her child was caught up unto Elohim, even as Enoch, and to the thrones I had seen afore.
22 And it came to pass that power was given unto the leviathan and Lilith and Cain to make war with the people of YHVH, and to overcome them;
23 For they had conquered all kindreds, tongues, and people except those ruled over by the King of Peace until Abraham, the servant of YHVH, was born.

Chapter 8

Zenos sees the spiritual vision of the fifth dispensation, that of Moses and his sister Miriam overseen by Haniel the archangel who is Moses.

1 And it came to pass that Haniel opened the fifth seal, and I beheld all the souls that have been and were yet to be slain for Israel, and for the testimony which they held.
2 And it came to pass that they cried with a loud voice, saying: How long will ye judge unjustly, and accept these wicked people?
3 Defend the poor and fatherless: do justice to the afflicted and needy; yea, deliver the poor and needy and rid them out of the hand of the wicked!
4 And it came to pass that white robes were given unto each of them; and these were told that their patience was to be rewarded,
5 Yea, and that these should rest yet for a little season, for now is the blessed day that the Torah is given unto mankind.
6 And it came to pass that Haniel sounded his shofar, and I saw as it were a star fall from heaven unto the earth, and the key to the bottomless pit was given him.
7 And it came to pass that Haniel opened the bottomless pit; and there arose a smoke out of the pit, as the smoke of a great furnace; and the sun and the air were darkened by the smoke of the pit.
8 And there came out of the smoke ten plagues upon the earth, and unto them was given power to harm the men that would keep Israel from her Elohim.
9 And they were commanded that they should not hurt the grass of the earth, neither any green thing, neither any tree;
10 But only those men which have not the seal of YHVH in their foreheads, yea even those that did not observe the Passover, yea even they without the blood of the Lamb upon their doors.
11 And it came to pass that in those days did men seek death, yet did not find it, for though they desired to die, death fled from them; and thus were the abaddon (*devils*) loosed upon the earth.
12 And it came to pass that Haniel poured out his vial upon the seat of the leviathan; and his kingdom was full of darkness;
13 And these gnawed their tongues from the pain of it and blasphemed the Elohim of heaven because of their pains and their sores, and repented not of their deeds, but cursed the Torah of YHVH (*The Law of the Lord*).

14 And it came to pass that a loud voice as thunder came saying unto the earth: I know thy works, be watchful, and strengthen the things which remain, for I have not found thy works perfect;
15 Receive ye, therefore the Torah (*the Law*), and hold fast to it, and walk in teshuvah before YHVH, and behold, there is more yet to come.

Chapter 9

Zenos sees the spiritual vision of the sixth dispensation, that of Jesus Christ and his wife Mary Magdalene overseen by Zadkiel the archangel who is John the Baptist.

1 And it came to pass that I heard again a loud voice from heaven as loud as thunder and sounding as a shofar, saying: Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our Elohim, and the power of His anointed one, the Mashiach HaMashiach;
2 For Satan, the accuser of mankind shall be cast down, and the leviathan shall be overcome by the blood of the Lamb;
3 Therefore rejoice, ye heavens, and ye that dwell in them, and all the earth below.
4 And it came to pass that the angel of YHVH said unto me: Look!
5 And I saw as it were a tree of exceeding beauty, and the tree and its fruit was of an exceeding purity;
6 And about the path that did lead to the tree I saw as it were a great mist, and a river of filthy water, and on the other side of that water a great temple dedicated to the leviathan.
7 And it came to pass that the angel of YHVH said unto me: Look!
8 And I looked again toward the tree, but she had gone from before my presence, and in her place, I beheld again Shekinah.
9 And I saw as it were the Heavens open; and the angel of YHVH came down and stood before me; saying: Behold, the woman which thou seest, is the mother of YHVH, after the manner of the flesh.
10 And I saw as it were Shekinah bearing a child in her arms.
11 And the angel said unto me: Behold the Lamb of YHVH, yea, even the Eternal Father!
12 Yea, behold the love of YHVH which liveth in the hearts of the children of men!
13 And it came to pass that I saw as it were a rod of iron leading to the fountain of living waters and the tree of life, even the white tree alive in the midst of the House of YHVH, Holiness to YHVH;

14 And it came to pass that the angel of YHVH said unto me: The Tree of Life is Shekinah that bears the fruit of YHVH; and the waters, His mercy.
15 And it came to pass that I saw and beheld the prophet which should prepare the way before Him, wash him in tevilah (*baptism*);
16 And after that he was washed clean, the Heavens did open, and Ruach Ha'Kodesh did fall upon Him from the heavens descending.
17 And it came to pass that the angel of YHVH spake unto me, saying: Look!
18 And I saw as it were the Lamb of Elohim, that he was taken by the people; yea, even Elohim Olam, was judged of the world; and He was lifted up and slain for her sins.
19 And it came to pass that after He was slain, I saw the multitudes of the earth, that they were gathered together to fight against the Lamb and those qaddish (*holy ones or saints*) He did call to serve Him;
20 And I saw as it were the multitude of the earth gathered together as it were in that great temple dedicated to the leviathan.
21 And it came to pass that the angel of YHVH came unto me, saying: They that serve the leviathan hath gathered together here to fight against the Lamb and His qaddish (*holy ones or saints*).
22 And it came to pass that I saw as it were the temple of the leviathan, which is the pride of the world; and it fell in its haughtiness, and the fall thereof was exceedingly great.
23 And it came to pass that the angel of YHVH spake unto me, saying: Behold the fountain of filthy water, and the depths thereof, these are the abyss of sheol *(death and hell*);
24 And the mists of darkness are the temptations of Lilith, which blindeth the eyes, and harden the hearts of the children of men, leading them away that they become lost that they might perish;
25 And the temple of the leviathan is filled with vain imaginations, and the pride of the children of men.
26 And a great and a terrible gulf divides the justice of YHVH who is the Lamb given in sacrifice from before the beginning of the world, henceforth and forever.
27 And thus shall be the destruction of all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, that shall fight against the Lamb and the qaddish (*holy ones or saints*) of YHVH!
28 And it came to pass that the angel of YHVH spake unto me saying: Look!
29 And I saw as it were many nations and kingdoms after the order of man,
30 And the angel of YHVH spoke unto me again saying: These are the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles.

31 And it came to pass that I saw as it were the sands of the sea, and the leviathan rising up out of the sea, having seven heads and ten horns, and upon his horns ten crowns, and upon his heads the names of blasphemy;
32 And it came to pass that he did leadeth mankind into captivity, yea and all did go into captivity;
33 And vengeance was his name, saying: He that killeth by the sword must be killed by the sword!
34 But Israel is to learn patience and faith, for many did I see that were wounded by the sword and did live, and this because of the Mashiach HaMashiach to come.
35 And it came to pass that I saw as it were they which walk in teshuvah, the qaddish (*holy ones or saints*) no longer defiled with women or in other words, transgressing the Law of YHVH; for these are virgins (*pure*).
36 And I saw, as it were, that all they that should follow the Lamb whithersoever he goeth, these were redeemed from among men, being the firstfruits unto Elohim from the Lamb.
37 And it came to pass that in their mouth was found no guile; yea, and they are without fault before the throne of Elohim.
38 And seeing this, the mercy of YHVH, I cried out saying: Thou hast turned away thy judgments, because of thy Son!
39 And the Lamb spoke unto me saying: Behold, I have set before thee an open door, and no man can shut it;
40 For though thou hast little strength, thou hast kept my word, and hast not denied my name.
41 And because thou hast kept the word of my patience, I also will keep thee from the hour of temptation, which shall come upon all the world, to try them that dwell upon the earth.
42 And it shall come to pass that when Zadkiel shall opened the sixth seal there shall be a great earthquake; and the sun shall become black as the depths of a great well, and the moon become as blood;
43 And the stars of heaven shall fall unto the earth, even as a fig tree casteth her untimely figs when she is shaken of a mighty wind.
44 And the heaven shall depart as a scroll when it is rolled together; and every mountain and island of the seas shall be moved out of their places.
45 And it came to pass that after these things I saw as it were four angels standing on the four corners of the earth, holding the four winds of the earth, that the wind should not blow on the earth, nor on the sea, nor on any tree.
46 And I saw the angel Moroni ascending from the east, having the seal of Elohim Hayyim;

47 And it came to pass that he cried with a loud voice to the four angels, who were the four beasts standing on the four corners of the earth, saying: Hurt not the earth, neither the sea, nor the trees, till we have sealed the servants of our Elohim in their foreheads.
48 And I saw that there should be sealed one hundred and forty-four thousand of all the tribes of the children of Israel.
49 Of the tribe of Juda should be sealed twelve thousand, of the tribe of Reuben should be sealed twelve thousand, of the tribe of Gad should be sealed twelve thousand,
50 Of the tribe of Aser should be sealed twelve thousand, of the tribe of Nepthalim should be sealed twelve thousand, of the tribe of Manasses should be sealed twelve thousand.
51 Of the tribe of Simeon should be sealed twelve thousand, of the tribe of Levi should be sealed twelve thousand, of the tribe of Issachar should be sealed twelve thousand,
52 Of the tribe of Zabulon should be sealed twelve thousand, of the tribe of Joseph should be sealed twelve thousand, and of the tribe of Benjamin should be sealed twelve thousand.
53 And it came to pass that Zadkiel sounded his shofar, and I heard a voice from the four horns of the golden altar which is before Elohim, saying to Zadkiel: Loose the four angels which are bound in the great river Euphrates.
54 And it shall come to pass that the four angels shall be loosed, which were prepared for an hour, and a day, and a month, and a year, for to slay the third part of men;
55 And the number of the army of the horsemen were too numerous than I could count, nor could I number them.
56 And it shall come to pass that by these will the third part of mankind be killed, by the fire, and by the smoke, and by the brimstone, which shall be issued out of their mouths;
57 And their power is in their mouth, and upon their tongues, and in their tails; for their tails were like unto serpents whipping about, and their heads with sharp teeth, and with these they do hurt.
58 And it came to pass that the rest of mankind which were not killed by these plagues yet repented not of the works of their hands, that they should not worship devils, and idols of gold, and silver, and brass, and stone, and of wood, which neither can see, nor hear, nor walk;
59 Neither repented they of their murders, nor of their sorceries, nor of their fornication, nor of their thefts.
60 And it came to pass that Zadkiel poured out his vial upon the great rivers and the waters in them dried up.

61 And I saw as it were three unclean spirits leap out from the mouth of the leviathan and out of the mouth of Cain,
62 And these spirits of abaddon (*devils*) went about working false miracles unto the kings of the earth and unto the whole world,
63 For they shall gather to battle Elohim Shaddai, gathering these together to control all trade and commerce upon the earth;
64 For these shall be they who shall hand the Lamb of YHVH to be sacrificed upon the tree, and knowing not what they do, these shall scourge him and mock him for the sake of the leviathan.
65 But they shall not kill Him, for He is YHVH, and He is the master of life and death;
66 And before He shall be taken up, He shall heal the sick, and the blind He shall cause to see, and even the dead shall He raise;
67 But in the time that He shall choose, He will give up the ghost gladly that we might live, and on the third day shall He take back His own life, for the keys of Sheol (*death and hell*) are His.
68 And it shall come to pass, and the day shall come that the kings of the earth, and the great men, and the rich men, and every bondman, and every free man shall hide themselves in the dens and in the rocks of the mountains;
69 And these shall say unto the mountains and rocks: Fall upon us, and hide us from the face of He that sitteth on the throne, and from the wrath of the Lamb;
70 Yea, and these shall say: The great day of His wrath is surely come; and who shall be able to stand?
71 And YHVH Elohim shall surely visit all the House of Israel at that day;
72 Some with His voice, because of their righteousness, unto their great joy and salvation;
73 And others, with the thunderings and the lightnings of his power; by tempest, by fire, and by smoke, and vapour of darkness, and by the opening of the earth, and by mountains which shall be carried up;
74 And all these things must surely come.
75 And the rocks of the earth must rend; and because of the groanings of the earth, many of the kings of the isles of the sea shall be wrought upon by Ruach Ha'Kodesh, to exclaim: The God of nature suffers.
76 And those at Jerusalem shall be scourged by all people because they crucify YHVH, and turned their hearts aside, rejecting signs, and wonders, and power and glory of YHVH;
77 And because they turned their hearts aside and have despised HaKkadosh Israel, they shall wander in the flesh, and perish, and become a hiss and a byword, and be hated among all nations;

78 Nevertheless, when that day cometh that they no more turn aside their hearts against the HaKkadosh Israel then will He remember the covenants which He made to their fathers;
79 Yea, then will He remember the isles of the sea; yea, and all the people which are of the House of Israel, will I gather in, saith YHVH, from the four quarters of the earth;
80 Yea, and all the earth shall see the salvation of YHVH; every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, shall be blessed.

Chapter 10

Zenos sees the spiritual vision of the seventh dispensation, that of Joseph Smith Jr. and his wives Emma Smith and Eliza Snow, overseen by Ariel the archangel who is also known as Uriel.

1 And it came to pass that I saw the last days, and woe to the inhabitants of the earth and of the sea!
2 For the Leviathan and Lilith and Cain and their abaddon (*devils*) shall come unto you, and these shall come forth with a great wrath, because they knoweth that they hath but a short time left.
3 And it came to pass that I saw as it were a great beast at the last day like unto a leopard ready to pounce, and his feet were as the feet of a bear prepared to maul, and his mouth as that of a lion waiting to devour.
4 And it shall come to pass that the leviathan will give him power and great authority and fame in the world of man, his name being known for both good and evil among mankind.
5 And it shall come to pass that one of his heads shall be wounded as it were unto death;
6 And his deadly wound shall be healed; and because of this all the world shall wonder after the leviathan and Lilith.
7 And it came to pass that I saw as it were another beast coming up out of the earth; and he had two horns like a lamb, and he spake as the leviathan.
8 And he shall make use of all the powers of the first beast before him and shall cause the earth and them which dwell therein to worship the first beast, whose deadly wound was healed.
9 And here is a great secret: the great beast is the church of abaddon (*church of the devils*), and though it shall be thought destroyed in reformation, it shall even live;

10 And the second beast shall be as the first, and shall teach that there is no Elohim, and great shall be his evangelists in the sight of mankind.
11 And the prophets of these beasts shall serve the leviathan, and these shall come into Israel as Pride, Ego, and Sin, lusting after the things of the flesh;
12 For behold, I say unto you that there are save two churches only: Israel (*the Church of Christ*) and the church of abaddon (*church of the devils*); and these are not the gatherings of men, but are in them the men that are gathered.
13 And this is why YHVH hath said unto those who breathe neither cold nor hot: I would thou wert cold or hot;
14 Therefore unto those that art lukewarm, being neither cold nor hot, I will spew thee out of my mouth.
15 For these are the rich of this world who say: I am rich, and increased with goods, and have need of nothing;
16 Yet these are wretched, and miserable, and poor, and blind, and naked, being lukewarm, neither hot nor cold, for they are indifferent, with no love in their hearts for their fellow man.
17 Therefore, I say unto these: Give thy gold unto the poor that thou mayest be rich and I shall dress thee in white garments, that thou mayest be clothed in righteousness.
18 And it shall come to pass that when Ariel shall open the seventh seal, there will be silence in the heavens for a short time.
19 And it came to pass that I saw as it were the seven angels of the seven dispensations which stood before YHVH Elohim; and to them were given seven shofars.
20 And it came to pass that another angel came and stood at the altar, and there, with the burning of frankincense, he offered the prayers of all the qaddish (*holy ones or saints*) upon the golden altar which was before the throne of Elohim.
21 And the smoke of the incense, which came with the prayers of the qaddish (*holy ones or saints*), ascended up before YHVH Elohim out of the angel's hand.
22 And the angel took fire from off the altar and cast it into the earth which did bring thunder, and lightning, and an earthquake.
23 And it came to pass that the seven angels of the seven dispensations placed their shofars to their lips prepared to sound again, for this shall be the final dispensation before the coming of Yahshua HaMashiach (*Jesus Christ*).
24 And it came to pass that I saw the angel Moroni fly in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel to preach unto them that dwell

on the earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people,
25 And he did call out with a loud voice, saying: Fear YHVH, and give glory to Him; for the hour of his judgment is come;
26 Bow down and worship Him that made the heavens, and the earth, and the sea, and the fountains of waters.
27 And it came to pass that Uriel followed after him, saying: Sodom is fallen, that great city, because she made all nations drink of the wine of the wrath of her fornication,
28 And she helped not the poor, nor the widowed, giving not of her bread, but was full of the pride of her abominations.
29 And I saw as it were a white cloud, and upon the cloud one sat like unto the Son of Man, having a golden crown (*keter*) upon His head, and a sharp sickle in His right hand.
30 And it came to pass that Haniel came forth from out of the heavenly temple, crying with a loud voice to him that sat on the cloud: Thrust in thy sickle, and reap!
31 And: See that the time has come for thee to reap; for the harvest of the earth is ripe.
32 And He that sat on the cloud thrust in his sickle on the earth; and the earth was reaped.
33 And it came to pass that Sandalphon came forth from out of the temple which is in heaven, he also having a sharp sickle.
34 And it came to pass that Moroni came out from the altar, which had power over fire; and called out with a loud cry to him that had the sharp sickle, saying: Thrust in thy sharp sickle, and gather the clusters of the vine of the earth; for her grapes are fully ripe.
35 And it came to pass that Sandalphon thrust in his sickle into the earth, and gathered the vine of the earth, and cast it into the great winepress of the wrath of YHVH.
36 And it came to pass that I saw as it were that the winepress was trodden, and blood came out of the winepress, and the winepress was full, yea and even runneth over.
37 And it came to pass that I saw Raziel who is Raphael come down from heaven, clothed with a cloud;
38 And a rainbow was upon his head, and his face was as it were the sun, and his feet as pillars of fire;
39 And he had in his hand as it were a small book, and he opened the book, and he planted his right foot in the mercy of YHVH, and his left foot in the wisdom of Shekinah;
40 And Raziel cried out with a loud voice, and the other six of the seven malak who are cherubim (*angels*) over the seven dispensations cried with him.

41 And it came to pass that when the seven angels of the seven dispensations had uttered their voices, I heard them with voices as it were lions, saying:
42 May YHVH brighten our eyes with the light of His Torah, with wisdom (*Chokhma*) and knowledge (*Da'at*) may He place in our hearts His understanding (*Binah*) that all may be worthy to greet Him; for He will enlighten they that hear!
43 Awaken therefore the heart (*Tif'eret*) with eternal victory (*Netzach*), to make the heart shine with brilliance (*Zohar*).
44 And more did they say that I am forbidden to say, but their words are sealed up.
45 And it came to pass that Areal who is Uriel sounded his shofar and there were great voices in heaven, saying: The kingdoms of the earth are become the kingdoms of YHVH, and he shall reign forever and ever.
46 And I saw as it were the twenty-four elders which sat before the throne of Elohim fell upon their faces,
47 And these worshipped YHVH, saying: We give thee thanks, YHVH Elohim Shaddai, which art, and wast, and art to come, because thou hast taken to thee thy great power, and hast reigned.
48 And it came to pass that Uriel poured out his vial into the air; and there came a great voice out of the temple of heaven, from the throne, saying: It is done.
49 And I heard as it were numerous voices of men and women in heaven, saying: Alleluia! Salvation, and glory, and honor, and power, unto YHVH our Elohim, for true and righteous are His judgments!
50 And he hath judged Lilith, who did corrupt the earth with her fornication, and hath avenged the blood of His servants at her hand! Alleluia!
51 And the twenty-four elders and the four beasts all fell down and worshipped the Elohim that sat on the throne, saying, Amen; Alleluia!
52 And a voice came out of the throne, saying: Praise our Elohim, all ye Their servants, and ye that fear YHVH, both great and small.
53 And I heard as it were the voice of a great multitude, and as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of mighty thunderings, saying: Alleluia! And the YHVH Elohim omnipotent reigneth;
54 Therefore, let us be rejoicing in the day of our salvation, and give honor to Him, for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and Shekinah hath made herself ready.
55 And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white, and the fine linen is the righteousness of qaddish (*holy ones or saints*).

56 And the angel of YHVH said: Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb.
57 And it came to pass that beholding all this, I fell to the earth saying: Thou art merciful O Elohim, for thou hast heard my prayer, even when I was in the wilderness;
58 Yea, thou wast merciful when I prayed concerning those which were mine enemies, and thou didst turn them to me;
59 Yea, O YHVH, and thou wast merciful unto me when I did cry unto thee in my field; when I did cry unto thee in my prayer, and thou didst hear me.
60 And again, O Elohim, when I did turn to my house thou didst hear me in my prayer, and when I did turn unto my closet, O YHVH, and prayed unto thee, thou didst hear me;
61 Yea, thou art merciful unto thy children, when they cry unto thee to be heard of thee, and not of men; and thou wilt hear them;
62 Yea, O Elohim, thou hast been merciful unto me, and heard my cries in the midst of thy congregations;
63 Yea, and thou hast also heard me when I have been cast out, and have been despised by mine enemies;
64 Yea, thou didst hear my cries, and wast angry with mine enemies, and thou didst visit them in thine anger, with speedy destruction;
65 And thou didst hear me because of mine afflictions and my sincerity; and it is because of thy Son that thou hast been thus merciful unto me;
66 Therefore I will cry unto thee in all mine afflictions; for in thee is my joy; for thou hast turned thy judgments away from me, because of thy Son.

Chapter 11

The parable of the roots and the branches.

1 And it came to pass that, the vision having ended, the angel of YHVH came unto me gain saying: Open thy mouth and speak thee the Word of YHVH that thou shalt cry unto this nation.
2 And it came to pass that I, Zenos, opened my mouth and began to prophesy, saying: Hearken O ye House of Israel, and hear the words of me, a prophet of YHVH!
3 For behold, thus saith YHVH, I will liken thee, O House of Israel, like unto a tame olive tree, which a man took and nourished in his vineyard; and it grew, and waxed old, and began to decay.

4 And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard went forth, and he saw that his olive tree began to decay; and he sayeth: I will prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it, that perhaps it may shoot forth young and tender branches, and it perish not.
5 And it came to pass that he pruned it, and digged about it, and nourished it, according to his word.
6 And it came to pass that after many days, it began to put forth somewhat a little, young and tender branches; but behold, the main top thereof began to perish.
7 And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard saw it, and he sayeth unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, go and pluck the branches from a wild olive tree, and bring them hither unto me;
8 And we will pluck off those main branches which are beginning to wither away, and we will cast them into the fire, that they may be burned.
9 And behold, saith the Lord of the vineyard, I take away many of these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will;
10 And it mattereth not that if it so be, that the root of this tree will perish, I may preserve the fruit thereof unto myself; wherefore, I will take these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will.
11 Take thou the branches of the wild olive tree, and graft them in, in the stead thereof; and these which I have plucked off, I will cast into the fire, and burn them, that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard.
12 And it came to pass that the servant of the Lord of the vineyard, having done according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard, and grafted in the branches of the wild olive tree.
13 And the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be digged about, and pruned, and nourished, saying unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree;
14 Wherefore, that perhaps I might preserve the roots thereof that they perish not, that I might preserve them unto myself, I have done this thing;
15 Wherefore, go thy way; watch the tree, and nourish it, according to my words.
16 And these will I place in the nethermost part of my vineyard, whithersoever I will, it mattereth not unto thee;
17 And I do it, that I may preserve unto myself the natural branches of the tree; and also, that I may lay up fruit thereof, against the season,

unto myself, for it grieveth me that I should lose this tree, and the fruit thereof.
18 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went his way, and hid the natural branches of the tame olive tree in the nethermost parts of the vineyard; some in one, and some in another, according to his will and pleasure.
19 And it came to pass that that after much time had passed, the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor in the vineyard.
20 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard, and also the servant, went down into the vineyard to labor.
21 And it came to pass that the servant sayeth unto his master: Behold, look here; behold the tree.
22 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard looked and beheld the tree, in the which the wild olive branches had been grafted; and it had sprang forth, and began to bear fruit.
23 And he beheld that it was good; and the fruit thereof was like unto the natural fruit.
24 And he sayeth unto the servant: Behold, the branches of the wild tree hath taken hold of the moisture of the root thereof, that the root thereof hath brought forth much strength;
25 And because of the much strength of the root thereof, the wild branches hath brought forth tame fruit.
26 Now if we had not grafted in these branches, the tree thereof would have perished.
27 And now, behold, I shall lay up much fruit, which the tree thereof hath brought forth; and the fruit thereof I shall layup, against the season, unto mine own self.
28 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto the servant: Come, let us go to the nethermost part of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches of the tree hath not brought forth much fruit also, that I may lay up of the fruit thereof, against the season, unto mine own self.
29 And it came to pass that they went forth whither the master of the vineyard had hid the natural branches of the tree, and he sayeth unto the servant: Behold these.
30 And he beheld the first, that it had brought forth much fruit; and he beheld also, that it was good.
31 And he sayeth unto the servant: Take of the fruit thereof, and lay it up, against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self,
32 For behold, this long time have I nourished it, and it hath brought forth much fruit.

33 And it came to pass that the servant sayeth unto his master: How comest thou hither to plant this tree, or this branch of the tree? For behold, it was the poorest spot in all the land of thy vineyard.
34 And the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto him: Counsel me not! I knew that it was a poor spot of ground; wherefore, I said unto thee, I have nourished it this long time; and thou beholdest that it hath brought forth much fruit.
35 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto his servant: Look hither: behold, I have planted another branch of the tree also; and thou knowest that this spot of ground was poorer than the first,
36 But, behold the tree: I have nourished it this long time, and it hath brought forth much fruit; therefore, gather it, and lay it up, against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self.
37 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sayeth again unto his servant: Look hither, and behold another branch also, which I have planted; behold that I have nourished it also, and it hath brought forth fruit.
38 And he sayeth unto the servant: Look hither, and behold the last; yea, behold: this have I planted in a good spot of ground, and I have nourished it this long time, and only a part of the tree hath brought forth tame fruit; and the other part of the tree hath brought forth wild fruit: behold, I have nourished this tree like unto the others.
39 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto the servant: Pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit, and cast them into the fire.
40 But behold, the servant sayeth unto him: Let us prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it a little longer, that perhaps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee, that thou canst lay it up against the season.
41 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard, and the servant of the Lord of the vineyard, did nourish all the fruit of the vineyard.
42 And it came to pass that a much time had passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor again in the vineyard;
43 For behold, the time draweth near, and the end soon cometh, wherefore, I must lay up fruit, against the season, unto mine own self.
44 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard, and the servant, went down into the vineyard; and they came to the tree whose natural branches had been broken off, and the wild branches had been grafted in; and behold, all sorts of fruit did cumber the tree.
45 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did taste of the fruit, every sort according to its number.

46 And the Lord of the vineyard saith: Behold, this long time have we nourished this tree, and I have laid up unto myself against the season, much fruit.
47 But behold, this time it hath brought forth much fruit, and there is none of it which is good.
48 And behold, there are all kinds of bad fruit; and it profiteth me nothing, notwithstanding all our labor: and now, it grieveth me that I should lose this tree.
49 And the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto the servant: What shall we do unto the tree, that I may preserve again good fruit thereof unto mine own self?
50 And the servant sayeth unto his master: Behold, because thou didst graft in the branches of the wild olive tree, they have nourished the roots, that they are alive, and they have not perished; wherefore, thou beholdest that they are yet good.
51 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto his servant: The tree profiteth me nothing, and the roots thereof profiteth me nothing, so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit.
52 Nevertheless, I know that the roots are good; and for mine own purpose I have preserved them; and because of their much strength, they have hitherto brought forth from the wild branches, good fruit.
53 But behold, the wild branches have grown, and have overran the roots thereof; and because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof, it hath brought forth much evil fruit;
54 And because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit, thou beholdest that it begineth to perish; and it will soon become ripened, that it may be cast into the fire, except we should do something for it to preserve it.
55 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto his servant: Let us go down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard and see if the natural branches have also brought forth evil fruit.
56 And it came to pass that they went down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard.
57 And it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the natural branches had become corrupt also; yea, the first, and the second, and also the last; and they had all become corrupt:
58 And the wild fruit of the last, had overcome that part of the tree which brought forth good fruit, even that the branch had withered away and died.
59 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard wept, and sayeth unto the servant: What could I have done more for my vineyard?

60 Behold, I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard, save it were these, had become corrupted, and now, these which have once brought forth good fruit, have also become corrupted;
61 And now, all the trees of my vineyard are good for nothing, save it be to be hewn down and cast into the fire!
62 And behold, this last, whose branch hath withered away, I did plant in a good spot of ground; yea, even that which was choice unto me, above all other parts of the land of my vineyard.
63 And thou beheldest that I also cut down that which cumbered this spot of ground, that I might plant this tree in the stead thereof.
64 And thou beheldest that a part thereof, brought forth good fruit; and a part thereof, brought forth wild fruit.
65 And because that I plucked not the branches thereof, and cast them into the fire, behold, they have overcome the good branch, that it hath withered away.
66 And now behold, notwithstanding all the care which we have taken of my vineyard, the trees thereof hath become corrupted, that they bring forth no good fruit:
67 And these I had hope to preserve, to have laid up fruit thereof, against the season, unto mine own self.
68 But behold, they have become like unto the wild olive tree; and they are of no worth, but to be hewn down and cast into the fire, and it grieveth me that I should lose them.
69 But what could I have done more in my vineyard? Have I slackened mine hand, that I have not nourished it?
70 Nay; I have nourished it, and I have digged it, and I have pruned it, and I have dunged it; and I have stretched forth mine hand almost all the day long; and the end draweth nigh.
71 And it grieveth me that I should hew down all the trees of my vineyard, and cast them into the fire, that they should be burned.
72 Who is it that hath corrupted my vineyard?
73 And it came to pass that the servant sayeth unto his master: Is it not the loftiness of thy vineyard? Hath not the branches thereof overcame the roots, which are good? And because that the branches have overcame the roots thereof?
74 For behold, they grew faster than the strength of the roots thereof, taking strength unto themselves; behold, I say, is not this the cause that the trees of thy vineyard hath become corrupted?
75 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto the servant: Let us go to, and hew down the trees of the vineyard, and cast them into the fire, that they shall not cumber the ground of my vineyard;

76 For I have done all, yea and what more could I have done more for my vineyard?
77 But behold, the servant saith unto the Lord of the vineyard: Spare it a little longer.
78 And the Lord saith: Yea, I will spare it a little longer; for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard; wherefore, let us take of the branches of these which I have planted in the nethermost parts of my vineyard,
79 And let us graft them into the tree from whence they came, and let us pluck from the tree, those branches whose fruit is most bitter, and graft in the natural branches of the tree, in the stead thereof.
80 And this will I do, that the tree may not perish, that perhaps I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof, for mine own purpose.
81 And behold, the roots of the natural branches of the tree which I planted whithersoever I would, are yet alive;
82 Wherefore, that I may preserve them also, for mine own purpose, I will take of the branches of this tree, and I will graft them in unto them.
83 Yea, I will graft in unto them the branches of their mother tree (*Shekinah*), that I may preserve the roots also unto mine own self, that when they shall be sufficiently strong, that perhaps they may bring forth good fruit unto me, and I may yet have glory in the fruit of my vineyard.
84 And it came to pass that they took from the natural tree which had become wild, and grafted in unto the natural trees, which also had become wild; and they also took of the natural trees which had become wild and grafted into their mother tree (*Shekinah*).
85 And the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto the servant: Pluck not the wild branches from the trees, save it be those which are most bitter; and in them ye shall graft, according to that which I have said.
86 And we will nourish again the trees of the vineyard, and we will trim up the branches thereof; and we will pluck from the trees those branches which are ripened, that must perish, and cast them into the fire.
87 And this I do, that perhaps the roots thereof may take strength, because of their goodness; and because of the change of the branches, that the good may overcome the evil;
88 And because that I have preserved the natural branches, and the roots thereof; and that I have grafted in the natural branches again, into their mother tree;
89 And have preserved the roots of their mother tree (*Shekinah*), that perhaps the trees of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit; and that I may have joy again in the fruit of my vineyard;

90 And perhaps that I may rejoice exceedingly, that I have preserved the roots and the branches of the first fruit;
91 Wherefore, go to, and call servants, that we may labor diligently with our might in the vineyard, that we may prepare the way, that I may bring forth again the natural fruit, which natural fruit is good, and the most precious above all other fruit.
92 Wherefore, let us go to, and labor with our might, this last time: for behold, the end draweth nigh; and this is for the last time that I shall prune my vineyard.
93 Therefore graft in the branches: begin at the last, that they may be first, and that the first may be last, and dig about the trees, both old and young, the first and the last, and the last and the first, that all may be nourished once again for the last time.
94 Wherefore, dig about them, and prune them, and dung them once more, for the last time, for the end draweth nigh, and if it so be that these last grafts shall grow, and bring forth the natural fruit, then shall ye prepare the way for them, that they may grow;
95 And as they begin to grow, ye shall clear away the branches which bring forth bitter fruit, according to the strength of the good and the size thereof;
96 And ye shall not clear away the bad thereof, all at once, lest the roots thereof should be too strong for the graft, and the graft thereof shall perish, and I lose the trees of my vineyard, for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard;
97 Wherefore, ye shall clear away the bad, according as the good shall grow, that the root and the top may be equal in strength, until the good shall overcome the bad, and the bad be hewn down and cast into the fire, that they cumber not the ground of my vineyard;
98 And thus will I sweep away the bad out of my vineyard, and the branches of the natural tree, will I graft in again, into the natural tree; and the branches of the natural tree, will I graft into the natural branches of the tree;
99 And thus will I bring them together again, that they shall bring forth the natural fruit: and they shall be one.
100 And the bad shall be cast away; yea, even out of all the land of my vineyard: for behold, only this once will I prune my vineyard.
101 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the Lord had commanded him and brought other servants; and they were few.
102 And the Lord of the vineyard saith unto them: Go to, and labor in the vineyard, with your might; for behold, this is the last time that I shall nourish my vineyard:,

103 For the end is nigh at hand, and the season speedily cometh; and if ye labor with your mights with me, ye shall have joy in the fruit which I shall lay up unto myself, against the time which will soon come.
104 And it came to pass that the servants did go to it, and labor with their might; and the Lord of the vineyard labored also with them: and they did obey the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard, in all things.
105 And there began to be the natural fruit again in the vineyard, and the natural branches began to grow and thrive exceedingly, and the wild branches began to be plucked off, and to be cast away;
106 And they did keep the root and the top thereof, equal, according to the strength thereof.
107 And thus they labored, with all diligence, according to the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard, even until the bad had been cast away out of the vineyard, and the Lord had preserved unto himself, that the trees had become again the natural fruit;
108 And they became like unto one body; and the fruit were equal; and the Lord of the vineyard had preserved unto himself the natural fruit, which was most precious unto him from the beginning.
109 And it came to pass that when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good, and that his vineyard was no more corrupt, he calleth up his servants and sayeth unto them: Behold, for this last time have we nourished my vineyard;
110 And thou beholdest that I have done according to my will; and I have preserved the natural fruit, that it is good, even like as it was in the beginning; and blessed art thou.
111 For because that ye have been diligent in laboring with me in my vineyard, and have kept my commandments, and hath brought unto me again the natural fruit, that my vineyard is no more corrupted, and the bad is cast away,
112 And behold, ye shall have joy with me, because of the fruit of my vineyard;
113 For behold, for a long time will I lay up of the fruit of my vineyard unto mine own self, against the season, which speedily cometh; and for the last time have I nourished my vineyard, and pruned it, and dug about it, and dunged it;
114 Wherefore I will lay up unto mine own self of the fruit, for a long time, according to that which I have spoken.
115 And when the time cometh that evil fruit shall again come into my vineyard, then will I cause the good and the bad to be gathered;
116 And the good will I preserve unto myself; and the bad will I cast away into its own place;

117 And then cometh the season and the end; and my vineyard will I cause to be burned with fire.
118 And in the day that YHVH shall set his hand again the second time to recover his people, is the day, yea, even the last time, that the qaddish (*holy ones or saints*) of YHVH shall go forth in his power, to nourish and prune his vineyard; and after that, the end soon cometh.
119 And how blessed are they who have labored diligently in His vineyard; and how cursed are they which shall be cast out into their own place, and the world shall be burned with fire.

Chapter 12

The Parable of the Banquet.

1 And it came to pass that Zenos spoke again another parable in prophecy, saying: And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard had two sons, and the first was selfish, and would eat at foreign tables, learning the ways of idolaters and eating unclean food.
2 And the second was faithful and did only eat at his father's table, and there in his father's house he was permitted to remain.
3 And unto the faithful son did the Lord of the vineyard say: Let thy garments always be white and let not oil be wanting for thine head.
4 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard made for a banquet and invited all, even the travelers and strangers;
5 But the unfaithful son was told he should not come, not of his deed but by the wounding of his pride, and so he went away in shame;
6 Therefore, he did go about telling false rumors about his Father, the Lord of the vineyard.
7 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard hired a great number of laborers to work in his vineyard.
8 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did gather the laborers taking them into the midst of his vineyard (*pardes*), yet he told them not what their wage should be by the work there, and this that the they might not be neglectful;
9 And it came to pass that when the evening was come the Lord of the vineyard did call each one of them, asking: Where within my vineyard didst thou labor?
10 And it came to pass that one answered unto him, saying: I labored in the east of the garden under a certain tree, and the Lord of the vineyard said: Unto thee shall be given a single gold piece.

11 And unto another who had labored in the west part of the garden under another tree, he said: Unto thee shall be given two hundred gold pieces;
12 And thus it was throughout all of his servants, each being given that which they were due.
13 And it came to pass that his servants came unto him saying: Why didst thou not say unto us the price of hire within thy vineyard?
14 But the Lord of the vineyard answered them saying: How then should my vineyard be cared for?
15 Wouldst not my servants only look after that part of my vineyard that giveth the greatest reward? And the rest of my vineyard would fall then to the wayside and should surely die?
16 But if thou shall be about my business, I shall see who doth care for the most precious parts of my vineyard, and when evening doth come I shall reward them.
17 And it came to pass that there was one among them who worked with much vigor, greater so than all the others, and yea even more than he was tasked.
18 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went forth and took this the good servant by the hand and walked about the vineyard and he did talk with him.
19 And it came to pass that when evening came, all the laborers came to the Lord of the vineyard to receive the reward of their labors;
20 And that good and faithful servant came with them, and the Lord of the vineyard paid him a full day's wage.
21 And it came to pass that the other laborers complained one to another, saying: Behold we have worked from morn until eve while this that one hast worked but a few hours, and yet the master has given him a full day's pay?
22 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said: Who art thou to envy?
23 Doth not the Law say: Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife, nor his manservant, nor his maidservant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor any thing that is thy neighbor's?
24 So too didst my good and faithful servant do more in a few hours than thou didst, who toiled all day.
25 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent word to all saying: Wash ye, make ye clean, and anoint yourselves, and wash your clothes and prepare yourselves for the banquet; yet he did not appoint a time.
26 And it came to pass that the faithful among them made themselves ready and waited at the entrance of the vineyard.

27 And these did say: In the Master's vineyard, nothing will be wanting, and there need be no signs of preparation, yet the feast may be at any time.
28 And it came to pass that the foolish among them did prepare themselves not, for these did listen to the pride of the wicked son who set forth to place his name above that of the Lord of the vineyard.
29 And it came to pass that these foolish did say: There cannot be a great banquet without much commotion and trouble, and the gathering of stores and provisions;
30 Therefore, we need not disturb ourselves until we see the signs; therefore, we shall be watchful of the signs that we may know.
31 And it came to pass that they joined themselves with their fellows, and thought not too feed the poor, but went away seeking after signs, and took no thought of the word of the Lord of the vineyard.
32 And each went about their way, and the foolish did make much gossip about those that stood ready, and did seek unto themselves the signs and wonders, reading much into nothing.
33 And it came to pass suddenly, the word of the Lord of the vineyard: Let all come to the banquet!
34 And the servants of the Master hastened the wise and the faithful and pressed them to come at the bidding of the Lord of the vineyard.
35 Then those that had prepared themselves, came in their honor and their glory, and those fools that had not prepared themselves, came in their pollution and uncleanliness.
36 And the faithful servant came last, for he stood ready and ensured that all were present and presented before the Lord of the vineyard.
37 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did rejoice over the wise and faithful that had done according to his bidding, and who, moreover, had honored the beauty of His vineyard;
38 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard was angry with those who had taken no heed of his word, and who had polluted his vineyard with all the uncleanliness that clung about their garments, and who had treated it with contempt.
39 And it came to pass that these cried out saying: Let us in, for we went seeking thee, we looked for thy signs and wonders!
40 Then the Lord of the vineyard came saying: Those that have prepared themselves for my presence, and were ready when I called, shall come and feast at my table, and those that did not prepare themselves shall not eat at the banquet;
41 And those that did not, but listened instead to my foolish son, were not prepared and therefore are not worthy.

42 And it came to pass that the wise among them thought that they might depart, for these were in fear of the great wrath of the Lord of the vineyard,
43 And it came to pass that the Master replied: No, but ye shall stay in my vineyard, for ye are worthy of it,
44 Yea, sit and eat at the banquet table; and eat and drink resting, while these stand upon their feet, and are smitten, and look on, distressed, and let thy garments at all times be white.
45 And it came to pass that after I had finished speaking, I stood in wonder over the banquet in the vineyard.
46 And it came to pass that as I stood wondering, the heavens were again opened unto me, and there I saw as it were a new heaven and a new earth, and I didst behold that the first heaven and the first earth were passed away.
47 And I saw as it were Zion, the holy city, coming down from Elohim out of heaven, and Shekinah prepared as a bride adorned for Her husband.
48 And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying: Behold, the temple of YHVH is with Adam, and YHVH shall dwell with them, and they shall be his people;
49 And there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away.
50 And I saw as it were They that sat upon the throne saying: Behold, I make all things new; therefore prepare thyselves for that which is to come; So mote it be; even so, Amen, and Amen.
51 And the vision was closed unto me, and the angel of YHVH said unto me: All these things that thou hast seen are of the heavens,
52 For all things happen in the realm of the heavens at the first, and then upon the earth, that all things be as one.
53 Therefore I, Zenos, say unto thee, prepare ye for the great and dreadful day of YHVH!
54 Yea, keep thy garments clean and stand ready for the day when the earth and the heavens shall again be one.

Neum

The Oracle or the Declarations

A collection of the utterances of the Oracle of YHVH, who did dance in prophecy to know the will of YHVH for His Israel and the children of Judah.

One

1 YHVH is our Elohim, YHVH has dominion over the whole of creation; YHVH is One, YHVH is Unity.

2 By YHVH was the world created; the creation of YHVH is One, by the providence of YHVH is the creation governed.

3 Lift up your eyes on high and behold! Who is it that has created all things? Lift up your eyes on high and see!

4 By the pathakh azeen (*opening of the eyes*) will you recognize Ha'Elohim; who is the Creator? Even as Moses was told: I AM that I AM.

5 ¶ And who is YHVH? Who is YHVH that should be given dominion over the heavens above? For do not all things exist by the very will of YHVH?

6 YHVH is the visible and the invisible which you seek; therefore, that which is beyond YHVH is vanity, for there is nothing beyond YHVH: YHVH is One.

7 To seek after one thing is to seek after all things; all is One in YHVH, in YHVH are all things One; YHVH is the beginning, YHVH is the End.

8 ¶ What shall I liken unto YHVH? What shall I testify unto you concerning YHVH? From the beginning of creation, all things have testified of YHVH.

9 And YHVH has crowned you, O Israel, with crowns of holiness; YHVH has set you apart, O Israel, with His Torah that you should ascend on high, a holy people unto YHVH.

10 ¶ And so YHVH does say to you: My people must first be brought low; then shall I descend and enter into your walls below.

11 Let this console you and comfort you, O Israel: YHVH shall descend and become like you in all things;

12 YHVH shall descend below all things and shall overcome all things and rise above all things.

13 ¶ YHVH shall have pity, for Israel, she shall overflow in her afflictions;

14 And though your afflictions shall be like that of the sea, there shall be remedy and healing for you, O Israel!

15 ¶ And when you shall ask: Who shall heal me? And when you shall ask: Who shall strengthen me? YHVH, even Elohim Shaddai, shall heal and strengthen you.

16 O seed of Jacob! It is YHVH that stands between you and death! It is YHVH that watches over you and protects you!

17 ¶ If you will but seek after this one thing you will seek after all things:

18 In YHVH are all things One, all is One in YHVH; YHVH is the End, even so, YHVH is the Beginning.

19 That which you seek is the visible and the invisible, for such is YHVH; therefore, there is nothing beyond YHVH but that which is in vain, for YHVH is One.

20 ¶ All things exist by the very will of YHVH; therefore, unto YHVH is given dominion over the heavens above.

21 And by the providence of YHVH is the creation governed, for by YHVH was the world created; the creation of YHVH is One.

22 YHVH is our Elohim, YHVH has dominion over the whole of creation; YHVH is One, YHVH is Unity.

23 ¶ A profound mystery shall be revealed to you today;

24 All the knowledge and all the wisdom of this world is even as this: The children of the world know nothing, even unto this day.

25 Listen therefore to the decree of Neum, for the cries of the Oracle are the decree of YHVH; listen and stand ready, all those that hear these words!

Two

1 Behold, I am Neum, the Oracle, reader of the stars—I am she who pours out the libations for YHVH;

2 I am she who still dances in prophecy when the daughters do sing, and the young men do play their harps and beat their drums.

3 You know me, O Judah; yea, you know that I do prophesy truly; for has not all that I have been told to say among you been true?

4 ¶ The remnant of the daughters of Miriam do mock to shame me, for the sons of Aaron have silenced their voices, but YHVH shall be heard!

5 If the mouths of the daughters of Miriam be silenced, then the mouths of the other daughters of Israel shall be opened:

6 For I am not of the seed of Levi, but am a daughter of Joseph and of Manasseh;

7 Yet did the Presence of YHVH come to me, calling me Neum, the oracle of Ha'Elohim.

8 ¶ Behold, when your daughters were sick with child, did I not pour out libations for deliverance of healing and restoration?

9 When your young men did prepare for war, did I not read the stars for them to guide them home to safety?

10 When your herds did wander off a far way, did I not give unto you the words of the Voice that you did retrieve them?

11 Wherefore, I say unto you this day: Listen to the Oracle of YHVH, give ear that you might hear,

12 That your children and your children's children might stave off death at the last day.

13 ¶ I shall speak unto you freely; yea, I shall give unto you the word of YHVH, that you shall have these sayings among you:

14 And this that you shall stand up, and give heed, O Judah! That all those who would understand these proverbs and these intrigues,

15 And all those who would cut through to dig out the knowledge, and all those who would hold fast to these mysteries and these wonders,

16 That by the strength of El Elyon you might break the chains of death and hell, seeing past all those who do walk in naivety.

17 ¶ And even those who are devious in their dealings with their fellows,

18 Yea and the stiff necked, the hardheaded and hardhearted, those intertwined with the customs of fools;

19 Even these shall see at the end, that would deny YHVH in the flesh, even these shall see and shall know that YHVH is Lord and King over all.

20 ¶ And the inheritance of the wise shall be salvation from death by the power of YHVH, for by Him shall death be conquered, and the graves opened.

21 Yea, and there will be no more death, nor mourning, nor crying, nor pain; for the old things shall have passed away.

22 Even as in death there is grief, and in the grave there is sorrow, YHVH shall show His compassion,

23 So great is His unfailing love for His Israel that YHVH shall bind up her wounds.

24 ¶ And when the time does come, the dead shall hear the voice of the Son of Man, and those who hearken unto the Voice shall live.

25 And even as YHVH, in His infinite mercy, shall redeem the life of His Israel from the grave, surely He will take Israel into Himself;

26 For this One shall pay our ransom, for He is our Elohim forever and ever:

27 And so it is that YHVH will be our guide even unto death, that He swallow up death forever, having redeemed us and taken away our destruction.

28 ¶ And now I would ask you: What good is the mystery to you, all they who search for the beginnings of knowledge?

29 Why is the heart honored, for it is that which governs the body of man?

30 Does the heart hear when the Voice speaks unto the heart, when the Oracle tells the parable?

31 Why is the heart precious to the soul when it is the birth of the soul that reveals the true heart of mankind?

32 Why is a prince set apart to look down upon his brother as a ruler? Is it not YHVH that gives the king his reign?

33 And the prince is born without strength, yet he dominates his brothers with a whip that cost him nothing.

34 ¶ How are the tzaddikimare (the righteous) like unto the stars? Even as the stars do shine with a fierceness, they hold true in their glory.

35 Shining in their glory, they strive not to contend with one another as mankind does, but find peace in the light of one another, and contentment as the others shine even brighter than they.

36 And there is one that shines brighter than them all, and none are envious of the glory of that star;

37 Therefore, might Judah be holy, even as YHVH, our Elohim, is Holy;

38 Might Judah be righteous that there will be peace in Israel, even as there is peace in the Heavens.

39 ¶ Who could say they are as the stars I read in the night sky? Not a soul in Judah, no—

40 For El Elyon hath given the seed of Jacob her strength that her fate shall not be tied to the stars like all the other nations of His creation.

41 Yet who among you seeks the presence of Light and Understanding that is given of Ha'Elohim?

42 ¶ The path of remembrance without foundation is without the depth of understanding.

43 Those taught by the angels of El Elyon, those who sing praises that they would be even as Ha'Elohim—

44 Unto these are given the fruit unto the knowing of good and evil.

45 ¶ I thank you, O YHVH, for your eyes are awake and they do watch over my soul!

46 You have rescued me from the passion of idle talkers, from the company of those who would seek the pleasant words of flattery that lead souls away.

47 Israel to the North, you hath let slip away, but they are not hidden from you!

48 Save therefore the soul of the poor who they planned to destroy by spilling the blood of your servant.

49 I walked this walk for you, YHVH, my Elohim, but they did not know this.

50 They laughed at me, sought to shame me with lies from their mouths!

51 But you didst support the soul of the poor and the weak, you did save me from their harsh arms,

52 You redeemed me amid their taunts; from the wicked I do not fear destruction.

53 ¶ Surely even the maggot can praise you, YHVH, and the worm remembers your love and kindness;

54 Yet they who have tasted of death but returned have forgotten you, and your people have stumbled, having forgotten to sing your praises.

55 Your kindness has been revealed unto them, and your righteousness has enlighten them, Elohim Shaddai:

56 For in your hands are the souls of every living thing; you have given the breath of life unto all flesh.

57 ¶ Deal with us, O YHVH, according to your goodness, according to your great mercy, and according to your many righteous deeds.
58 YHVH has listened to the voices of those who love His name, and He has not deprived them of His love nor of His kindness;
59 Yet His mighty arm shall be swift in dealing with Judah, should she not remember her place, and return to her covenant!

Three

1 O those of flesh who are of yourselves nothing: Why do you so quickly exalt yourselves, living in the flesh and having no eye unto the glory of YHVH?
2 Do you not tremble at nor fear Ha'Elohim who sees you from above?
3 El Elyon does know, for YHVH sees all, and His malamkim are witnesses of all things.
4 ¶ The adversary does ask mankind: Who is He who nourishes all?
5 Yet the Creator has planted His breath in all and sent His sweet spirit to guide all of the human race.
6 And by the Voice that spoke unto our father, Abraham and our mother, Sarah, we do know that there is One who is sovereign over Ha'Elohim;
7 Choice in His power, with no beginning of days nor end of years, YHVH is almighty and invisible, all seeing being All Himself.
8 ¶ Blessed be YHVH, who executes deeds of righteousness, crowning His kadishim with His love, and His kindness, and His mercy.
9 My soul does cry out to praise Your Name, to sing praises to El Elyon for your loving deeds, to proclaim your faithfulness unto Israel and unto Judah!
10 ¶ And I say: There is no end to my praise of you, YHVH.
11 I was near death for my sins, and they did sell me off captive; but you did save me, O YHVH, according to your great mercy.
12 ¶ And I have loved Your Name, YHVH, and in you have I found my strength and my protection.
13 When I remember your might, my heart is brave and upon your mercies I do lean; you have forgiven my sins, O YHVH, and purified me from my iniquities.

14 ¶ Instill in me a spirit of faith and knowledge, for I am not ashamed though I stand in the midst of those that would see my destruction.

15 Do not allow the adversary nor the unclean spirits control over me; let not pain and evil desires conquer my bones.

16 ¶ O YHVH, you are my praise! I shall sing and praise you all day long; my desire is ever that my brothers and my sisters of Judah would rejoice with me.

17 Yet Elohim Shaddai is beheld by none in the flesh; for what flesh can see visibly the true Elohim that reigns from the heavens?

18 ¶ Worship YHVH who exists from age to age, giving to all mankind the light through Israel, the seed of Jacob, and Isaac, and Abraham.

19 Let those that seek evil's counsel have their reward for forsaking El'Olam,

20 And even by giving their offerings unto foreign elohim, these have made your sacrifices to the vanities of men and made yourselves abomination before YHVH.

21 In insolence you have walked, and I, Neun, the Oracle, have seen you; in madness and folly you walked.

22 ¶ And I, the Oracle, have seen you forsaking the straight path (Israel), you have turned aside and are wandering through the thorns.

23 Stop your vanities of the flesh, roaming in darkness, leave the darkness of night and take hold of the light that is YHVH!

24 Behold, our Elohim does speak unto us plainly, His words shall not be for nothing!

25 ¶ Come, all you pursuers of the darkness and vial secrets!

26 Come here and behold, a light even more glorious than that of the sun, YHVH shines even more brightly; therefore, come forth!

27 Even as our mother, Eve, did seek to taste of the wisdom, in your hearts she did plant the seed that you might have the knowledge of this great light!

28 ¶ And I, the Oracle shall show you but a sliver of this light, to tell you of the beginning unto the end, even from the first generation of Adam, even down to the very last day,

29 This I shall prophesy: what has been, what is now, and what shall yet befall Israel and the world through the seed of Adam and Eve.

30 ¶ The Voice did call upon me to give you truth, to know how this earth came into being,

31 And to make known unto you that you shall not forget the love of the Creator for this, His creation.

32 YHVH is El Elyon, the true King who did bring all things into existence, saying: Let it be; and it was so.

33 For YHVH did establish all things, even this earth you stand upon, plucking it up and placing it.

34 ¶ And so it is that there is Elohim then who does send the rain and the winds and the storms, and the earthquakes;

35 YHVH is the Lord of heaven, King over the earth, and one with all things.

36 Though the Elohim may have seed, and these be immortal, then we be the seed of YHVH; therefore, by YHVH death has no sting.

37 ¶ But the elohim of man are born and do die, for having no power they have nowhere to stand among Ha'Elohim.

38 And these gods of man, they fall before Ha'Elohim, they are nothing before El' Elyon; YHVH did not create them, they are but the shadows of man.

39 ¶ And Ha'Elohim is one, and YHVH is the most exalted of Ha'Elohim, for all things were made by Him; and without him was not anything made which was made.

40 Yea, in YHVH is the reward (*besorah, or Gospel*), and the reward is life, and the life is the light of mankind.

41 ¶ Again, it is YHVH that brought into being the countless multitudes that live in the deep,

42 And all the beasts and the creeping things and all living things on the earth, and all that spread their wings to inhabit the skies.

43 ¶ And it is YHVH that did breathe the breath of life into Adam, and that did appoint Adam to care for this, His creation.

44 And all things that can be understood, and all things that cannot be understood, these are the creation of YHVH.

45 ¶ And who of mortal flesh can know all these things? I tell you: None knows them save YHVH, who from the beginning has made them.

46 Dwelling in the heavens, YHVH did place before Adam a much greater reward of good,

47 But for the evil and the unjust, they do bring upon themselves war and pestilence and their woes.

48 ¶ You, Adam (*mankind*), why do you exalt yourselves in vain only to be rooted out by the Oracle of YHVH?

49 Be ashamed of making idols, do not in your madness take away your children; only evil elohim desire the bones of the fruits of your loins in the smokes of their fires.

50 Even as the wife of treachery that should sell her children unto foreign nations as slaves have you become, and how else should the good husband deal with such as this?

Four

ד

1 O Israel! O Judah! O Zion! You were even as Adam and as Eve, the first people created to know YHVH that mankind might see the salvation of YHVH,

2 Yet do you worship or fear Ha'Elohim, to keep the Torah and the mitzvoth? or do you bow down to dumb idols of wood and stone?

3 Do you stand to offer sacrifice to the living Elohim? or do you sit before the doors of empty temples?

4 ¶ Consider the soothsayers, those teachers of sin: Repeat aloud the parable, declare now the mystery even as we speak; then you will know if you have understood.

5 Know that YHVH sees you and will reward you by your hearts,

6 Yet in your foolishness the vision I have been given is sealed up from you, and you have not understood the eternal mysteries in their fullness;

7 You have not become wise in your understanding of the Torah and the ways of YHVH; and why is this?

8 ¶ It is because you have not properly understood the origin of Wisdom;

9 But if you should unseal the vision that I have been given, then you shall know, then shall you understand!

10 To hear the parable, to see the mysteries you must first give up all your wisdom, for you are wise unto the things of this world, and they are but the errands of fools!

11 ¶ Hear now what wisdom is: Wisdom is to know the Creator, to feel of His love, and to love even as He loves;

12 What greater wisdom can there be than this? And yet, who is Judah that her neighbors should fear her?

13 ¶ Judah is a wicked people who takes pride in crafty ways; scoundrels who belong to the liar;

14 Two-tongued, adulterous, idolatrous, evil-hearted, taking only for themselves—

15 Will no one endowed with wealth and goods give any part to another?

16 Will any give of their substance for the wants of the poor, the hungry, the naked, the widows, and the orphans?

17 And because of this, O Judah, your daughters shall have secret lovers to keep her child from hunger, and there is no husband to gain, for your sons are drunken fools!

18 ¶ You think that this mighty kingdom rests in the power of this world, forgetting of the immortal King and therefore, you, Judah, will fall.

19 Judgement shall come unto you by the Eternal Savior, even the Son of the Eternal Father who created the heavens and the earth.

20 And YHVH sees where you stand, Judah; a people that delights in the blood of the innocent,

21 Other men will reign over you, will profit from your sorrows, will have you seeking the Messiah in your ruin that you will not know when He does appear.

22 ¶ And as a holy prince shall YHVH come into His creation, to wield the scepter of His righteousness over all the earth; yet you will know Him not.

23 Three share their fates when He is crucified (*Hebrew, yaqa, "to be dislocated," "alienated," "executed," or "hanged"*); one will hang with no sin, and one will be forgiven, and one will reject truth.

24 And fire shall sweep over the isles of the seas, and darkness shall cover the earth for an instant, that the earth may weep for her Creator.

25 ¶ O wretched Adam! when that time shall arrive, even the judgement of El'Olam, the King of creation, shall be turned back in His mercy, for so great is the Mercy of YHVH.

26 And YHVH will forgive His creation, and the graves shall be opened and shall yield up many of their dead;

27 And many kaddishim (*saints*) shall appear and live, never to again taste death.

28 ¶ And shortly after, Judah will be scattered, and her lands taken over and she shall weep in her sorrows.

29 This I have seen, if Judah does not return and move away from her whoredoms.

30 And even now, Judah, you are like Sodom, that wicked city that was destroyed for their greed:

31 Sodom did have even as much pride as they did lack charity in those days;

32 For we do know that they had bread and wine in abundance, and they still would not sustain the poor and the needy.

33 ¶ And so it was that she who supplied the poor man with bread was cast into the fire and burned to ashes,

34 And no one took notice of her or pitied her, and her cries ascended to the heavens, and their sins were great before YHVH.

35 And so it was that the great cities were destroyed, for they took no pity, and they would not heed the words of Lot when he did preach unto them.

36 And even like Sodom, YHVH shall send out the righteous from among you, O Judah, and give unto them new lands, even lands upon the isles of the seas.

37 ¶ And now, Judah, you who's mothers and fathers YHVH did bring out of Egypt to this land: When did you forget YHVH and lay waste unto the stranger?

38 Wherefore, in a flash of gleaming fire is your destruction coming,

39 You shall be burned with torches and carried out of the land that YHVH has given to our fathers and our mothers.

40 Your long days have become shortened, your false and useless idols feeling no shame.

41 ¶ But they who fear the true El'Olam shall inherit life, and forever dwell in the fields of paradise, feasting on the sweet bread and looking on throughout the heavens.

Five

1 Hear me, O men of Israel: the eternal King reigns! And even as the sun looks down upon the lands, so too does YHVH see you, Judah.

2 You call yourself His bride, yet you are a mistress unto harlots, and so then shall you come to naught, falling to ruinous misfortunes;

3 But in your suffering you shall have fame in later generations, and even into distant lands.

4 And those that shall escape this suffering shall be sent to prosperous lands that mankind had not known.

5 ¶ And with a purple robe, mighty, just, and in His fierceness shall the Son of Man come to your children's children after the thunder and the storms.

6 Those of an evil yoke shall be destroyed, and after shall YHVH descend in His mercy.

7 But first shall the soil of these distant lands be wet with blood and rain, for your seed shall drink much murder.

8 ¶ And the righteous will rejoice, for they shall be spared, and YHVH having destroy the king of death,

9 Yet so shall it be that in the third and fourth generations that man's offspring shall perish,

10 For they shall forget all that their fathers and their mothers had seen and born witness to.

11 ¶ And then shall that adversary bring back the secret combinations of Cain, and Sodom (*sodomy/sodomites*) shall again rise against the house of Israel.

12 Reject the adversary, O Israel! Reject the false traditions carried in by the winds from foreign lands!

13 ¶ Remember the words of Asyma, standing in the temple in Jerusalem, to Her Israel, yea, even the divine mother who does say:

14 Enter into the Presence here in this temple of holiness, in worship of YHVH, in respect for thyself, and all that herein dwell.

15 For I need not thy devotion, but thy sincerity of heart, for it is truth that shall purify thee.

16 Yea, it is not thy understanding that hath brough thee unto this house this day, but thy thirst for knowledge and wisdom, and understanding.

17 Enter not by thy fears, not by thy sins, not by thy hatred, but with a broken heart and a contrite spirit;

18 That through the mercy of YHVH these impurities shall be cut out, and this that you shall find strength.

19 You may look upon me as thy Mother, and as thy Sister, and as thy Wife, and as thy Daughter,

20 But look not upon me as one to look down upon or that should look down upon thee.

21 Yea, I am the very Presence of Elohim; the devotion you have for me, is it greater than that which you have for the Breath that is within you?

22 Behold, if you should be offended of these, you do offend Unity, who is YHVH.

23 If you should be One and stand in the Presence, it is understanding that you shall take with you.

24 Wherefore, I say unto you: Enter this house this day with respect for all those that dwell here in, and for yourself; do this and it shall be well for you.

25 ¶ I will speak freely to you, and I will give you the sayings of El Elyon that you may share them among you, though they will be mocked and scorned by you.

26 Yet all those who would understand will know and share them as parables to teach all that would listen, and as riddles to those that would hold fast to truth.

27 And all those who would infiltrate the hidden mysteries, all those seeking the beginnings of knowledge, even those who would hold fast to the secret pleasures;

28 These shall know truth when they find it and shall teach truth in ways understood by the Godly.

29 ¶ And all those who will walk in simplicity will know the path, while those who are devious, those with a stiff neck, with hard heart, that do lay with the harlot,

30 These are the customs of fools, and they will lose the inheritance of Israel.

31 What good is the secret of YHVH? The mystery of the wisdom of Shekinah?

32 ¶ All who search for the beginnings of knowledge, do you seek wisdom? What is understanding to you?

33 Why is the heart sought in strength when the fool cannot hear the parable?

34 What good is the puzzle to you if even when the solution is found, it is not understood?

35 ¶ What good is wisdom without knowledge? Knowledge without understanding?

36 Should the prince be our ruler when the king can be found?

37 How can we be a nation of kings if we are without strength?

38 The whip that dominates costs nothing, for the one does rule when the many accept his rule, and who is the greater king, the king of men or the Lord of Hosts?

39 ¶ Who among us can say that they seek light and illumination in the Presence of our Elohim?

40 And by the angels of YHVH, all those who praise Elohim Shaddai that they would know the good from evil, shall know truth.

41 Any plan that lacks mercy lacks justice.

Six

ו

1 O Holy Mother! Never was there a place unknown unto thee!
2 Never was there one that desired mercy that you showed not mercy unto them!
3 Who are they that have not asked for your mercy? Shall Judah be denied thy shield and thy protection?
4 Who are they that have not found solace in you? In the Presence?
5 Who are they that have not found succor in your bosom? Or solace in your womb?
6 And who is Israel that she shall be denied your succor and your solace that your child should be shattered and scattered about unto the foreign winds?
7 ¶ YHVH, I pray thee! Give unto me thy hope, for it is not vain!
8 O Holy Mother, give unto me you succor and thy solace, for your peace is even an eternal peace!
9 O Elohim, wipe away these, my tears, that my heart be content; have mercy for all those that live upon the footstool of YHVH, and have mercy upon Israel!
10 For my heart is content to kneel at your footstool, to gain favor in your sight.
11 ¶ My desire, YHVH, is but to come into your Presence, to see that beautiful Mother, the Queen of the Heavens,
12 To dance in Her orchards, and to gather up the fruits of Her garden, and to delight in the flowers of Her fields!
13 ¶ O Mother of the lamb of sacrifice! Bride of the Heavens! Even as YHVH is the very Father of Israel, so too are you her Mother.
14 How I long to stand in your Presence, to rest my wounds in the healing power of your flowing waters!
15 O fountain of healing! O wellspring of grace! You are a home of peace unto my soul.
16 You are the most precious gem of the heavens, Mother of YHVH, and a virgin most pure!
17 ¶ O Divine Mother, how you weep for your daughter, Zion! How you lament for her, but not in vain!

18 For she shall return unto YHVH weeping in her sorrows, humbled in her defeats; yet YHVH shall be glorious, yea, YHVH shall ever be undefeated.

19 ¶ YHVH, I invoke you in my mourning, for I know this: In your name have I been spared.

20 You, Zion, shall scorn me, and leave me forgotten, but YHVH shall remember.

21 The enemies of YHVH shall falter into eternal anguish, yet YHVH shall even make a way for these! and in this shall Israel be forever remembered.

22 For it is by the seed of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob; and by the seed of Judah, and Peretz, and Chetzron;

23 And by the seed of Ram, and Ammynadab, and Nahshon; and by the seed of Shalmon, and Boaz, and Obed,

24 And by the seed of Jesse, and David, and Solomon that salvation shall come.

25 For it was even by the seed of Solomon that Israel was again divided, but through the seed of David shall Israel be made whole again; so speaks YHVH, so mote it be, Amen and amen!

26 ¶ And in that day shall Israel feel pains even as a woman in labor, for a son will come to save Israel from death.

27 Israel shall labor to bear her a son, and she shall give birth to a manchild, and her pains shall bring joy eternal.

28 Her son O how great he shall be! Even a counselor with power, a man with the power to control the wind and the seas;

29 But Israel carries the seed of death in her womb and shall suffer from the pit in her horror.

30 ¶ And the foundations of the walls of the temple will shake even as a mighty boat being whipped about upon the face of the waters.

31 Clouds shall grow dark, like those in the storms of the seas, and those that live upon the islands shall flee in terror:

32 But shall even as in the great flood, they shall not escape the roar of the waters or the desolation of the lands.

33 The wise men of Judah, their wisdom confounded, lost in the abyss as the windows of heaven are opened,

34 But in their own self-worth shall those windows be bolted shut unto them.

Seven

1 YHVH hath divided the creation into seven parts: the rocks, the seeds, the seas, the seasons, the humans, the holy, and the purification;

2 In these first six there are both light and darkness, but in the seventh is the Sabbath of YHVH, and in the seventh are all made whole.

3 The darkness that would corrupt the seven creations: the sand, the sterile (*lifeless desert*), the violence, the lie, the treachery, the lust, and the perdition.

4 But the lights of the stars were given to mankind for a memorial of the name YHVH,

5 And this that the hidden things of the mysteries of the light shining forth to end the ways of darkness,

6 And that which is hidden from upon the earth shall be made known.

7 ¶ And in the last days, there will be times of great heat upon the earth where it was once cold, and periods of cold upon the earth where there was once great heat,

8 And mankind no longer shall see the breaking of day or the coming of night, and the earth, she shall not sleep.

9 And this will be the beginning of the end, that time when Israel will be gathered back, for the blood of Abraham shall cover the whole earth.

10 And the Divine Mother (*Shekinah*), She who was hidden but not forgotten, She shall be remembered once again.

11 ¶ But before She will return, there shall come a man who will remind the daughters of Zion of their place, yet not to free them, but to enslave them.

12 For he shall take the things of YHVH and give them as gifts to other elohim, the elohim of men.

13 He shall take the very things of nature and give them unto your sisters and your daughters, as if they were his to give,

14 And he shall see his own greatness and shall be called Father by many.

15 And this he shall do that works of darkness be spread forth, that when the light shall come to free the daughters of Zion, they should reject that light.

16 ¶ But behold, the light of YHVH shall cut through the darkness, and the light shall be divided from the darkness, that even the very shadows cast therein will vanish.

17 And the daughter of Zion will awaken and will teach her sister truth,

18 That they shall remember all that YHVH did give them, that the sons of Aaron shall keep them away no more.

19 And the daughters of Zion shall listen to the Voice and shall know the ordinances of YHVH,

20 And this that they might restore the daughters of Israel to the ways of YHVH.

21 ¶ Behold the night skies! See as the sun moves through the thirteen constellations,

22 Twelve for the sons of Israel and one for her daughter, yet the skies they do rest upon twelve pillars.

23 And so it is that the year divided into twelve parts (*months*), moving from moon to moon,

24 Yet the daughter is given her due when the sons, upon their path, stray in their seasons.

25 ¶ And by this does Israel know when to plant seeds, and when to harvest,

26 For it is not for mankind to know the times nor the seasons, but YHVH has set them in their places by His own strength (or *power*).

27 As Miriam did teach us: Everything depends upon fate (*above the Egyptian ankh, the "key of life," are 2 Hebrew words: מִקְרֶה chance and במזל luck, above these on the parchment is the English, "fate"*) even the Torah, for such is the will of YHVH.

28 And so it was that the daughters of Miriam would lead all of Israel to celebrate YHVH when He did bring the moon into its fullness in the night skies.

29 ¶ And so too shall it be that in the last days, the daughters of Israel shall lead us once again in worship and in ritual, and in learning.

30 Just as there is a path from east to west for the sun to travel acrost the earth each day,

31 She does travel from the north to the south until the shortest day, giving up her warmth, and from the south unto the north until the longest day;

32 And this that she should bring us her warmth and light.

33 ¶ So too is there a path for every star in the night sky, and of the constellations they do tell us when to prepare for war, and when to make our bread.

34 Yea, and the stars do tell us their stories, with Kesil and Kymah, and Ayish in Mezarim sharing with us their tales of love, woe, and glory, as Kimah moves about around the earth.

35 And as we can see, Tzedeq, Ma'adym, Chochevet, and Kochav do move in their own ways, and Lebanah and Chamah to light our way.

36 ¶ The great light of YHVH coming from Chamad, the warmth of His life-giving light; Lord of Hosts an King of the heavens and the earth!

37 The mercy of YHVH does pour down upon us, gently and generously;

38 In its time, and its season, the heavens do bestow the love of YHVH in their way.

39 Give glory to YHVH, for the face of our Elohim is light and love.

Eight

1 And so it is that when mankind should build that they do take one stone and place it upon another stone;

2 And upon these stones, they do set another stone, and this they do, one upon another, until their wall is complete.

3 Yet when mankind pulls but one stone, the wall does fall down, and the rocks fall heavy upon the earth.

4 And so it is that when mankind uses two stones to hold up another, it is the keystone;

5 And these they do place over the waters and to connect the lands, many feet and hooves may travel over it, that mankind might be joined as one.

6 ¶ So too are the stars in the sky, as they move and weave their tales, speaking unto us;

7 When mankind does read the stars to build up walls, behold they will see but wars and ruin;

8 But when mankind refuses to serve the stars, but to make the stars the servants of mankind, then we see that the stars do warn us!

9 ¶ O Israel, O Judah! O Adam! When will we heed the warnings of the stars?

10 For these do not claim us, but we them; for were they not given us of YHVH?

11 And behold, Adam was not created for the stars, but the stars for Adam, and Miriam was taught to read them that we should know!

12 For the secrets are written, but the sisters are now lost, being forbidden to look,

13 And so it is that they no longer know the secret of the way, nor do they understand the things of old;

14 And because of this, the daughters of Israel do not know what should come upon them,

15 So they could not rescue themselves for they are left without the secret of the stars.

16 ¶ But I say unto thee, O sister of Israel, daughters of Zion! This shall be a sign that surely shall come to pass:

17 When the sources of evil men are shut up, and wickedness of the oppression of Aaron banished,

18 That you will be in the presence of righteousness, your priesthood restored in the last days:

19 The daughters of Zion shall come forth from the darkness into the presence of light, and the power of men cannot stop them,

20 For as the smoke vanishes and is no more, so too shall the wickedness of the men of Israel vanish forever,

21 And the righteousness of YHVH will be manifest like the sun.

22 ¶ The mouths of the daughters of Zion shall be opened, the sisters of Israel shall gather, and the world will be made firm;

23 And all the followers of sin and the secrets of Lilith and Cain and of the sins of mankind shall be ran out of Israel.

24 And then will the sisters lead in Israel once again, and the true knowledge of El'Olaum shall fill the earth, and there will not be any more of the folly of mankind in Zion.

25 ¶ And I say unto you this day: That all that I have spoken will surely happen, and it is a true oracle of YHVH;

26 And those that will read these words in the last days shall know that this thing cannot be averted,

27 For it is the very will of YHVH that Israel's daughters and her sisters shall regain their strength and their authority given them of YHVH.

28 ¶ It is true that not all the people will reject evil, yet the will of YHVH shall move forward,

29 And the sisters will feel the call of YHVH from the very breath of Elohim within them.

30 And truth shall roll forth to conquer all the nations, in every tongue and language that can grasp the ways of Israel, for the ways of Israel are the ways of YHVH.

31 ¶ And in that day, what nation will rise to oppress Zion? Can Zion oppressed be overtaken by another that is not stronger than they?

32 And by this shall you know Zion in the last days: She shall be a nation that will not oppress her neighbor,

33 And they shall be a people that does not rob the wealth of the poor, nor their labors, but shall seek to have all things common among them.

34 But before Zion can be built, Israel must find Zion in their hearts, that they be purified and become a people of peace.

35 ¶ And in that day shall the gifts of the daughters of Zion be restored with their priesthood, and the keys of the law of Sarah shall be given and understood;

36 For the keys of the law of Sarah are so named that we, the daughters of YHVH, shall not lose our birthright, nor be taken by the world.

37 And the daughters of Zion shall be given revelation upon revelation until all is restored, even as it was at the first.

Nine

1 O Daughters of Israel! O Daughters of Zion! May the seed of Miriam reclaim their birthright!

2 May the compassion of Ha'Elohim come unto us, that the Lord of hosts shall bear His mighty right hand, that the very king of Heaven place His blessing upon you forever!

3 Mighty One, shield us from the harm of hate, and from the harm of intention, and shield us from the evil eye!

4 Might that YHVH will lift us up, even from death, for YHVH is the Elohim of life!

5 Shield us from all those that would rise against us, to slander us with their words; guard us against backbiting and bitterness, and woe.

6 ¶ For what should we call one who's every deed pretends to be of righteous yet who's judged is impure?
7 And what shall we say of one who would chase after the things of the earth, and not after what is wise or that which is righteous?
8 For it is not in Adam that wisdom is hidden; wisdom is hidden, except it be the wisdom of a cunning evil, the schemes of giving for one's own gain.
9 And this is a thing that must never be done, but instead we must accept the mitzvoth of the Creator;
10 And what will Adam do that she should live?
11 ¶ For she who has violated the mitzvoth of the Creator shall have their names taken from the mouth of YHVH, and He shall not know them;
12 Therefore listen, all of you who will hold true to the secrets of eternity, for they are wonderful!
13 And hear the desires behind every deed, for YHVH does know the truth of your purpose.
14 Yea, and YHVH knows every secret that lies in the heart of Adam and reads every thought.
15 ¶ YHVH does know every, for YHVH is Lord over all.
16 YHVH is the Creator, for from long ago YHVH did establish the heavens and the earth, and forever is YHVH, from everlasting to everlasting.
17 And the purpose of creation YHVH has opened up to all they that will listen and seek after truth,
18 And YHVH tests His sons and His daughters that they will see that these are worthy of their inheritance.
19 ¶ And YHVH does not forget, but does forgive those that give unto Him every secret, and the truth of every deed;
20 And what use has YHVH for these things? For YHVH did create all people and knows their deeds.
21 Wherefore, I say unto all those that hear the voice of the oracle: That this life is the time to learn of YHVH;
22 Therefore, walk today in teshuvah and harden not your hearts, that the great plan of redemption will be understood, and it has been brought about unto you.
23 ¶ And I say into all of you now: That this life is the time to prepare to meet YHVH; and today is the day for mankind to perform their labors;
24 For the day of salvation draws nigh, and our enemies are even now at our borders.

25 Look even now and see that angels are declaring it unto many at this time in our land, and the prophets and the prophetesses are about, take heed to our warnings!

26 And because we have forgotten the old ways, the ways of YHVH and His Torah, because we will not receive the word of YHVH at this time, we shall be taken.

27 ¶ O you wicked, and perverse, and stiffnecked people! Why will you not heed the voice of YHVH? Why do you see this as nought?

28 And even now, at this late hour, YHVH has shown unto me a great and marvelous thing concerning that which must shortly come.

29 ¶ And when the day does shortly come, these things shall roll forth among you, and much truth will be lost and hidden up, that Israel might return again to YHVH in the last days;

30 Therefore, watch and be ready, guard up your homes.

31 Keep hidden and teach in secret the truths of YHVH that your children might know and tell their children,

32 Until the day shall come that the mysteries of YHVH shall be brought again to the light.

Ten

1 Look now at the soothsayers, those teachers of sin that have corrupted our ways!

2 I will now speak to you in a parable; hear my words and teach them to your children, tell them to teach these words to their children;

3 And this that when the time comes, then you will know if any have truly understood.

4 ¶ And it came to pass that a rich man desired to teach his son all the things of the world,

5 And so it was that the son was sent out into a foreign land where he studied and learned all that he could until he was a grown man.

6 And it came to pass that the man returned to show his father all that he had learned, that his father would be proud!

7 But when he reached his village, he did not find his father in the village, and so it was that he asked of his neighbors for his father's whereabouts; but they refused him.

8 Returning to his house, his father's servants did not know him, and thus they did cast him out into the streets.

9 And it came to pass that for all of his learning, the man had no money, and could not see his father in that land:

10 And so it was that he took to become a beggar, for no one knew him and none would hear him.

11 But the man would not beg for money, he told all that would hear him of his father,

12 For so great was the love of the father that he had sent out his son into the world.

13 And it came to pass that after many months came the Passover, and the man returned again unto the house of his father,

14 And there a seat was saved for him, for his father was there, and he did know him:

15 And upon seeing his son again, the father said unto his son: I have set apart this seat for you;

16 Come now and sit upon my right hand, for I see how you have gone out among these people,

17 And though they knew you not, they will know you now, for in you am I well pleased.

18 ¶ Study now my words, the words of Neum, for they are the words of YHVH, and by the breath of Ha'Elohim you will understand it;

19 But in your foolishness this parable is as a vision that is sealed up from you,

20 For to understand the mysteries of YHVH you must become wise in the understanding of YHVH,

21 For you have not properly understood the Creator nor His Wisdom;

22 But if you should unseal the vision, then you will know of the things to come and that they are all of YHVH to your salvation.

23 ¶ Hear now what wisdom is: And it came to pass that a young man on his way to gather up water from a certain well that had been with his family for many generations;

24 And on his way, he did see many beautiful flowers, and trees filled with fruits.

25 As he walked, he was tempted by the beauty of the flowers and by how delicious the fruit appeared, and eventually he did wander from the path.

26 And it came to pass that as he wandered farther away from the path, the boy became lost, for the forest grew dark and he could not see.

27 And because he could not see, he could no longer enjoy the beauty of the flowers, nor eat of the fruit, for he could not see it to find them.

28 And it came to pass that he stumbled upon an old shack (*broken building*), and he dared not to enter, for the boy thought that inside he might find his ruin from some unseen force.

29 But the rain began to fall from the skies, and he hurried into the shack for shelter only to find that there was no roof upon the head of it.

30 And as the rains fell upon him in the darkness of the shack, he began to lose all hope, and to weep, and to grow angry for his foolishness.

31 But outside of the woods, his father had come seeking him, knowing that he had been gone too long and not returned with the water.

32 And in his pride, he hid from the voice of his father, and would not follow after him, though he knew that his father would guide him back to the path.

33 And it came to pass that the pleas of the father grew, and the pride of the boy subsided,

34 And he did open the door to the shack and ran forth after the voice of his father.

35 ¶ O Israel! May you release your pride and run back to that Elohim that did create you!

36 For YHVH is not changeable, but YHVH is unchangeable from eternity to eternity:

37 Wherefore, the love of YHVH is unchanging and shall not grow cold for His Israel;

38 Therefore, know all of you that when you seek the darkness no more that you will hear the voice of YHVH, and His mercy will be waiting for your teshuvah.

39 ¶ And all the lights of the stars shine in testimony as for a memorial of HaShem;

40 Therefore, listen, I pray you, to these words, for hidden within them are the things of YHVH and the mysteries of the light that shines that you might avoid the ways of darkness.

41 And when the times of heat and of thirst do come, and when the times of cold and of hunger do come,

42 Then the breaking forth of the day and the coming of the night shall be counted, and the origins of all things shall be known unto you.

Eleven

1 And now I, Neum, the Oracle, shall speak unto my children, even the children of Joseph that shall read my words in the last days.

2 Hear me now, O Israel! Hear the words written so long ago; for I see you, though I do not understand what I see, YHVH makes you known unto me, and I see your sin.

3 And what is this sin? You have forgotten to read the stars, and to observe the holy days of YHVH, and Her Sabbaths,

4 Your love for one another has waxed cold; the rich eat while the poor go hungry and naked – yet is this not the sin of every generation of mankind?

5 ¶ Yea, look now and ponder this: How can one understand without knowledge? How can one listen without hearing?

6 How can one be wise without learning? How can one be heard while speaking?

7 How can one receive mercy without giving mercy? How can one give a gift without a willingness to receive a gift?

8 How can one seek justice without they themselves accepting justice? How can one have strength without bending to the winds?

9 ¶ YHVH spoke and the Voice was heard by His children, and the Voice gave mankind much wisdom and understanding:

10 YHVH uncovered our ears that we may hear, our eyes that we may see, our mouths that we may eat and gain strength, our feet that we might run to those in need, and our hands that we might serve El'Olam.

11 YHVH created understanding for all who seek knowledge and truth, that they might know all wisdom that has been given from eternity to eternity:

12 Truth may not be changed, and the mercy of YHVH is neither hidden nor locked up behind the waters that we should receive Him not;

13 For YHVH is El Elyon, and His Father (*Ahman*) and His Mother (*Shekinah*) do sit upon their thrones in the heaven above the heavens,

14 And His Asherah does sit with Him and presides in the council of Ha'Elohim.

15 ¶ And YHVH is known well for His patience, see how many times He has forgiven Israel and taken Judah under His mighty arm:

16 And YHVH is known well for the might of His great anger, and He has turned His wrath against the enemies of Israel;

17 And even as YHVH is known well for His numerous acts of mercy, towards Israel, He too will be made known as terrible in His wrath against His people,

18 For we have not honored our covenant, and over the land YHVH did give us, we have not made Him our ruler:

19 And though Ha'Elohem is honored among Israel, His holy people—among Israel, His chosen people—we have become a people of works and not a holy people.

20 ¶ Israel has become great in the blessings of YHVH, and in seeing our splendor yet forgotten the Voice of the covenant.

21 Yet we too shall know the mercy of YHVH, for His righteous anger against us shall pass and our people shall be humbled but not destroyed.

22 And when this era of wickedness is at an end, and evil is abolished in the Messiah, the Great HaKohen shall make the final sacrifice.

23 ¶ And we know the genealogies: Abraham begot Isaac, and Isaac begot Jacob, and Jacob begot Levi,

24 And Levi begot Qohath, and Qohath begot Amram, and Amram begot Aaron,

25 And Aaron begot Eleazar, and Eleazar begot Phinehas, and Phinehas begot Abishua,

26 And Abishua begot Buqi, and Buqi begot Azzi, and Azzi begot Zerahiah,

27 And Zerahiah begot Meraioth, and Meraioth begot Azaryhu, and Azaryhu begot Amariah,

28 And Amariah begot Achytub, and Achytub begot Tzadok;

29 And it was Tzadok HaKohen in the days of our kings, David and Solomon (*see 1 Chronicles 24:3*), who were mighty before YHVH, yet in their pride even they did sin against YHVH;

30 And Tzadok begot two sons, Ahimaaz who was High Priest over Israel, and Zenoch;

31 And Zenoch was made a priest in the lands of Joseph, and there he served us in a temple of our lands;

32 And Zenoch begot Zenock, the seer and prophet.

33 ¶ Even as we, in this day, do write the words of Zenock, the son of Zenoch, we do not understand them.

34 And even as we do seek out Zenoch the priest to make sacrifices unto YHVH, I see that you, in the last days, do seek out the priests that you might accept the sacraments of YHVH,

35 But even as the people do not harken unto Zenock and his brethren, the prophets, nor will they give heed unto my words, they will be gathered and kept as a testimony against them;

36 So to do you gather up the words, but will you listen? Will you heed them?

37 When the Great HaKohen offers up His mercy, will you accept it, O Israel, with the first and last great sacrifice – that of the broken heart and contrite spirit?

38 ¶ I ask those of you that are wise to ponder: If Adam has a good tree, one that does grow up, even into the heavens, will he not love it?

39 And if Adam does love it, will he not care for the soil about it?

40 And when Adam sees that the tree grows heavy with the best fruit each year, watching it grow in the rains of autumn and in the spring, but sees it thirst in the heat of the summer, will he not give it water?

41 And will Adam not see to protect it, and to keep it safe?

42 And will he not see fit to multiply the seeds of the tree and to nurture that orchard, to grow it and protect the branches of it?

43 For even as the Voice has come unto the prophets and prophetesses of your generation, so to have they come through the voice of all generations;

44 Therefore, when the days shall come that all that has been shall be gathered into one, stand watch that you will be ready.

Twelve

1 And now I, Neum, the Oracle, shall speak unto my people the words which I have been given of the Voice of El'Olam.

2 So says YHVH unto you: I have blessed you, and I have set you apart, my Israel; yet you have squandered my gifts and torn my people in two;

3 You have made my holy days unclean, and burn up the meat of your sacrifices, and the smoke is not pleasing unto me, for ash and dust cannot feed my people!

4 To make an atonement, your sacrifice must be pure, and for the sacrifice to be pure my people must be pure;

5 And for my people to be pure before me you must be clean before me, and to be clean before me you must wash yourselves in my mercy.

6 ¶ And what is my mercy? It is the mercy of Israel, for in Zion there are no rich and no poor,

7 There are none that shall go naked or be turned away hungry, or fearful of the wrath of another.

8 But my ways are not your ways; therefore, how are you my Israel? Who are you that you would be my people?

9 Where in you can be found the mercy my servant Abraham showed in feeding all that came unto him?

10 ¶ You come before me with gifts, yet it is I that created all things, what need have I for your sacrifices?

11 The sacrifice of your heart is to give of your blood to help one another, this is the Covenant of your mothers and fathers that they did make with me.

12 And in the days of your purity, you will give without ceasing,

13 And the food of Israel will be pure, even as manna from the heavens, and the widow will give thanks, and her children shall not go hungry.

14 ¶ And in that day that you shall clean yourselves before me, I shall offer unto you a new and everlasting covenant, and Israel will again be my people.

15 The purity of the righteous shall be known throughout all the earth, as there shall be no want in Zion, and no judgement given to those in need.

16 ¶ And to the poor shall be given the best gifts, and the best food; and there shall be no rich among you, that there shall not be any poor.

17 Do this and I shall establish a statute of my atonement among you, and even as you go into the waters dirty, you shall come up out of the waters clean.

18 And as you come forth from the waters, you shall say: Blessed are you, YHVH, for through the Great HaKohen does our salvation come! By your purity, YHVH, and by your glory is my salvation come!

19 ¶ And even as I have given you, my children, so to will you give unto all that are in need.

20 But now my wrath is set, for I have sent my prophets and prophetesses to give you my words; but you, Judah and Israel, would not hear them.

21 For I have not changed my words, but you have sought to change them;

22 I have not transgressed against you, my chosen people, but you have transgressed against me; therefore, you shall not know peace, even so, Amen.

Thirteen

1 And now I, Neum, the Oracle, shall speak again unto those that shall read these, my words, at the last days:

2 Look and see, for it shall come to pass that in the last days the earth shall tremble,

3 The very heavens shall be moved in the wrath of YHVH, and the creation shall moan;

4 For the world shall fall ill to the iniquity of mankind; yea, the greed of men shall be as a poison that will drain the earth of its life, and it shall become sick:

5 To and fro shall the earth shake, and the nations shall tremble; but in their greed mankind shall avail it as not;

6 Smoke shall fill the earth, and the blood (*or life*) of the creation shall be sold, and that great leviathan shall rise up out of the deep (*or abyss*) and choke the life.

7 ¶ Yea, the sea shall be emptied, and the rivers moved; the forests shall be burned up, and the mountains torn down; the winds shall destroy, and the rain shall be as a poison.

8 And there shall come a famine in all the lands, for the greed of mankind will steal away the food for the poor, and the widows shall go hungry,

9 And not merely for a want of food, but for a lack of love in the hearts of men; yea, their hearts shall wax cold.

10 ¶ And the leaders of men in their priestcraft shall take for themselves many wives, even the wives of they that serve under them,

11 And they shall call themselves prophets, but they shall defile themselves with these women, and shall break the hearts of the daughters of Zion.

12 But the daughters of YHVH shall arise, and these shall be given the stones, even as YHVH did command Israel, teaching again their daughters to take upon them their Thummim and their Urim;

13 And the Voice shall come forth with them, and they shall speak even with tongues of fire.

14 ¶ And behold, it shall be known by that stone that the priestess shall hold in her left-hand, yea even that stone which is on the left side of her;

15 And it shall be uncovered before the whole congregation until the priestess is finished in her utterance;

16 Yea, and after the Breath (*Ruach HaKodesh*) has gone out of her, you shall keep her words and write them,

17 And the people of the congregation shall bow down unto the earth and shall pray as one;

18 And then you, the congregation shall ask, in the name of the Eternal Father (*Aviad*), if her words be true;

19 And if you will ask with a pierced heart, in faith, being filled with that same Breath, then the Voice shall tell it unto you:

20 And once you know it to be true that a prophetess has spoken unto you, then you shall hear her words, and harken not unto any who would counsel rebellion against YHVH, our Elohim.

21 ¶ And if it needs be that she makes some miracle in the name of YHVH, then she shall take the stone that she shall have in her right-hand, even that stone which is on the right side of her;

22 And when the priestess comes forth to make manifest the will of YHVH, is shall even be as flames of fire coming forth from that stone of her right-hand; and this because it is the Urim.

23 And after this, when she goes up to draw near unto the people, YHVH, our Elohim, the El'Olam of Israel, shall dwell there among the congregation, and they shall be the Shekinah, for they do dwell in the Presence of YHVH.

24 ¶ Remember what YHVH has said unto the daughters of Zion: And they made for them the miṭpaḥath of gold, blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen.

25 And they did beat gold into thin plates and cut it into wires, to work it in the blue, and in the purple, and in the scarlet, and in the fine linen with cunning work.

26 And they made shoulder pieces for the miṭpaḥath, which were joined to two of its corners for fastening it.

27 And the curious girdle of her miṭpaḥath that was upon it was of the same, according to the work thereof; of gold, blue, and purple,

and scarlet, and fine twined linen as YHVH did command Moses and Zipporah;

28 And they did put them upon the shoulders of the miṭpaḥath for them, an urim and thummim,

29 That they should be stones for a memorial to the congregation of Israel of the faith of the daughters of Israel,

30 That they did not need a sign when YHVH was ready to lead Israel from Egypt.

31 Wherefore, daughters of Zion: In the last days, do not be lead away in priestcraft,

32 But let the urim and thummim rest upon thy shoulders and take again your place in Israel.

33 ¶ Let not men lead you astray into wicked priestcrafts, taking you from your husbands, leaving you broken hearted.

34 See that the widows and the fatherless are cared for, that the riches of the creation of YHVH is spread out that none go hungry or are afraid; amen and amen.

Fourteen

ג

1 And now Judah, I, Neum, the Oracle, have spoken unto you again and again, but I know that you will not heed my words:

2 It is even as Zenock has already spoken unto you: YHVH is angry, for Israel will not accept the mercy of the Son;

3 And you have threatened this man, the son of a priest of YHVH and a prophet of YHVH with death, and for what?

4 Would you slay him when he does beg for the life of Israel? And for the very life of Judah?

5 ¶ Know you not that he does not speak out against you, but in favor of YHVH and by the will of YHVH, even as you do hear me speak it?

6 Do you not understand that this man, Zenock, has been ordained by the hands of the angel Raphael? this he has testified, and his deeds do bear witness!

7 Wherefore it is said of those that do follow him that he is Morah Ha'Tzedek, for unto him has been given the High Priesthood:

8 ¶ And I say unto you further: That I am a disciple of that Zenock, the very same; and have been ordained by his hand Morah Ha'Migdalah;

9 Therefore, if you would slay him, would you do well to slay me also? but this I know that you will not do, for the Voice has spoken it unto me.

10 ¶ Wherefore, here me this day, O Israel; yea, hear the words of El'Olam, even as you did hear them in the of days of old from the prophetesses:

11 Yea, from Zipporah, and Miriam, and from Rahab, and from Deborah,

12 And from Abigail, and from Noadyah and from Beulah, and even from Chuldah who did testify of Sefer Ha'Torah (*5 Moses or Deuteronomy*);

13 Yea, from all of them and more, do you not remember? How quickly you forget your mothers, O Israel!

14 ¶ And it was by their sins that the children of Adam and Eve did forget the letters (*or symbols*) that were taught unto their parents by Raziel:

15 For on the day that the earth was created, the letters were written upon the night sky,

16 And YHVH did give unto the daughters of Israel their mitzvot through our mothers, even Miriam and Zipporah—

17 Even to learn the letters; yea, to learn to read the night skies (see 4 Moses 19:14).

18 I say unto you now, O Israel: Teach your sons and daughters to read and no army will ever truly conquer Israel!

19 ¶ The letters have been with Israel from the beginning, and though their shapes may change, to know them is to know YHVH, our Elohim;

20 Therefore, I do say unto you this day: To know the letters is to know the mysteries of YHVH;

21 Yea, teach the letters unto your children and they will know the secret doctrine.

22 ¶ The Torah is revealed to every generation, to those who love her; yea, her voice is as a still whisper, her message only given unto they that show her affection.

23 She does hide her face in a veil, for her beauty is like no other; for she is wild, and no one may possess her;

24 Yet she does love Israel, even as YHVH does love Israel, and she will not forsake us, nor will she abandon Judah;

25 Yea, she will teach us all she knows if we will but ask her; her light will illuminate the path O Israel, if you will open your eyes to see her.

26 ¶ And how can you see that which you do not love? To love her, is to know her, and to know her, O Israel, you must know the letters.

27 I say into you again: If you will not learn the letters of the Torah, she will stay hidden from you, in spite of her love for you;

28 Therefore, O Israel, seek to learn the letters and breathe into the Torah deeply, loving her with your heart, and she will take you by your hand and lead you back home to YHVH.

Fifteen

1 And what shall the Torah teach you, O Israel? What secrets should she desire you to learn from her?

2 From the very beginning, Moses taught that YHVH did divide that light from the darkness,

3 And when mankind is given to know good from evil, or to separate the light from darkness, so it is that they can tell the Presence from the adversary,

4 ¶ And so it is that Israel too must give herself unto YHVH, that He should divide the light from the darkness, and it shall be given us to know.

5 And in that light that does break through the darkness, you shall behold the pathways white and delightsome,

6 Think not that they are as water, for they are not paths in mercy but of life itself;

7 That of the flesh is not that of the spirit, for in the flesh lies death and in the spirit life; and so it is that there are two sets of tablets:

8 Upon the sapphire tablets is inscribed the Torah, and upon the emerald tablets is the secrets of the temple of YHVH.

9 ¶ And when Moses was given the Torah, Israel was not ready, and so it was that the tablets were broken and destroyed by the hand of Moses.

10 ¶ And so it was that Moses was commanded to make a second set of tablets, also of sapphire, upon which is written the Torah:

11 And the Torah of sapphire is the right hand of El'Olam, and the covenant; and the Torah or emerald is the left hand of El'Olam, even life;

12 And betwixt these is the Torah of marble that unites the right and the left, and written upon it is the heart,

13 And there are thirty-two paths cut from that same marble that does connect them, and this is the very tree of life.

14 ¶ And this tree can only be found when mankind should eat from that tree of the knowledge of good and evil,

15 For only then can the light be divided from the darkness, and the earth formed from out of that void.

16 ¶ And I, Neum, the Oracle, have seen the tree as I have walked about the garden in vision;

17 And there is the Eden of the earth, and the Eden of the heavens, and these are one creation.

18 And that creation is thus: life nefesh which is the birth of the soul, life rauch which is the breath and awareness of Ha'Elohim, life neshamah which is the understanding of YHVH, life chayah which is the oneness of YHVH, and life yechidah which is life the eternal creation of YHVH.

19 ¶ And these may be seen in the En-Sof Adam Kadmon: intelligence, spirit, flesh, soul, and yachid–the eternal life given olam ha'ba;

20 Therefore, know O Israel, that there is no beginning nor end to life for there is not beginning or ending to YHVH or His creation.

21 Why then is Israel given the Torah of sapphire, Judah? We keep the sapphire temple, when shall we be given the Torah of emerald? And what of the Torah of marble?

22 ¶ O Judah! O Israel? Do you not know that these are given? The mysteries of YHVH are before our eyes, if we will but see them!

23 YHVH did know that the first tablets should be destroyed, and would it have been better for them not to be given?

24 I say unto you: No, for YHVH knows all things, therefore YHVH creates and YHVH destroys;

25 YHVH Elohim is the Creator, and YHVH, our Elohim, is destroyer, yet all that YHVH destroys YHVH heals;

26 Therefore, there is a wisdom in YHVH that the first Torah was given, for in the letters written upon the tablets are the covenant between Israel and our Elohim.

27 ¶ And had the Torah not been written by the hand of YHVH there should be no day and no night, no earth and no sky;

28 For the heavens and the earth, they do belong to YHVH, the Creator,
29 And the Torah of sapphire cannot be destroyed, for it is written upon the heavens, as they who read do know;
30 And the Torah of Moses was written by the finger of YHVH that the stories should be known when the stars would no longer be read,
31 For the Torah shall forever be told from mouth to ear, but these shall change as Israel does forget her Elohim.
32 ¶ And this Torah was first given unto the whole earth, but mankind would not circumcise their hearts, and thus was Israel set apart;
33 Therefore, through Israel shall the creation be finished and Eden restored, but not yet;
34 For in the last days, the Torah of sapphire shall be written upon the hearth of the earth, and sealed within the hearts of the righteous, yet they shall know it not.
35 And the warmth of that fire shall gather them, that they shall find safety and peace in Zion:
36 And though Babylon shall seek to make war with them, they shall not find them;
37 And when Zion should be found, their peace shall be so great that all nation should fear them.
38 ¶ And this shall they say: War not against Zion, for should our people see their way, they shall leave us and serve us no more!
39 And El'Olam shall stand on high, and YHVH shall be in their high places, and the Presence of Elohim shall go before them, for they shall be one.

Sixteen

1 And now, Judah, prepare for your slumber! In your wickedness you have forgotten YHVH, but YHVH has not forgotten Israel.
2 When a man or woman sleeps, their soul does for a time leave them, as their spirit rests and their body slumbers;
3 And ascending on high, YHVH gives an account of the deeds and acts of men;

4 Therefore, in the last days shall Israel awaken from their slumber, and YHVH shall pour out Ruach HaKodesh upon Israel and upon all people:

5 And when your sons and your daughters shall awaken, they shall see, for they shall prophesy of truth,

6 And your men shall dream dreams, and your women shall see visions, and your elders shall know truth and testify, and YHVH shall cease to hide His face.

7 ¶ And the herald shall cry out: Assemble and gather together all these sayings, for the Voice has spoken again to mankind!

8 For there had been a silence in the heavens as the earth was prepared for that last hour to unfold.

9 But then the moon shall shed her light again upon the earth, that there should no longer be darkness in the night,

10 And winged messengers shall make noise and the earth shall hear them,

11 And when the priesthood of YHVH shall be restored unto the earth it shall not ever again leave her.

12 ¶ And in the last days there shall be those that say: What the Lord has given, He did take away again, but come unto me, and I will restore Zion to her glory and fullness!

13 But behold, I have seen, and I am the oracle of YHVH, therefore I do know;

14 This priesthood should never leave the earth, but shall fill it, spreading like a fire to consume the righteous in the power of YHVH!

15 ¶ And they that do rise at midnight to meditate of the mysteries of YHVH and the secrets of El'Olam, unto them shall a portion be given.

16 All they that do dwell in the garden and do walk about the orchard shall be given a lamp, and all they that would put oil therein shall be a light upon the path.

17 And these shall taste the fruit of that tree, and it shall be sweet!

18 And the bitterness of the rotten seeds shall be rooted out, that the good fruit should not be contaminated, and that tree be purified.

19 ¶ And the name of that fruit shall be Ephraim, and even the seed of Joseph, who is the seed of Israel:

20 For Israel shall repent, and Ephraim remembered, for he is a delightful child, and a precious son unto El'Olam;

21 Therefore, I have seen that through the seed of Ephraim shall Israel be restored.

22 ¶ And he shall bring forth the garment of his father, even the cloak of many colors,

23 And it shall be given again unto Israel that the Torah of emerald should be made known;

24 And when the Torah of Sapphire, which is the covenant, is read again, and the Torah of emerald, which is life eternal, is acted upon, then shall the Torah of marble be opened up onto you, O Israel,

25 And the thirty-two paths of the righteous be walked in the garden and the fruit of the tree eaten once more.

26 ¶ And then shall Adam and Eve shall be one that Ruach HaKodesh shall dwell in Israel for this is the temple of YHVH, our Elohim;

27 For though Babylon shall burn the holy house and plunder its riches, they cannot steal the treasures hidden within.

28 When Adam and Eve are united (*one*) in El Elyon the neshamah rises and truth and light are freely given and received in YHVH, and Israel is free.

Seventeen

1 The name of YHVH, the Creator is written and engraved above, below, and on all sides of this, the creation, for it is His;

2 And the shekhinah (*dwelling place*) of YHVH is in the Tabernacles, and in the temples, and in the tents (*tallits*), seek Him there.

3 And at the first, in Israel, there was only the Tabernacle, but with kings came the desire to tie down the dweling place of YHVH:

4 And who could contain El Elyon? Not you, O man!

5 Yet YHVH did allow the temple to be built; but these were not built for YHVH, but for Israel!

6 ¶ And what thanks did you give? Letting strange elohim into these holy places;

7 And so it shall be that when Israel shall fall, and she shall fall, even as YHVH declared, for did He not say:

8 Because they be a stiff-necked people, it shall be that when they shall keep my mitzvoth, they shall be blessed upon the face of this land,

9 And there shall be none to molest them nor to take away from them the land of their inheritance;

10 And they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land forever:

11 And nothing, save it shall be iniquity among them, shall harm or disturb their prosperity upon the face of this land forever:

12 But if iniquity shall abound, cursed shall be the land for their sakes; but unto the righteous, it shall be blessed forever.

13 ¶ And we see that Israel to the north has fallen, and what then shall be the fate of Judah if we do not keep the Torah?

14 What shall be our fate when we pollute the temples of YHVH?

15 What shall be our fate when we do go burning incense to other strange elohim?

16 Would we not share their fate? For we too are Israel, the seed of Jacob.

17 ¶ And this I know, for I have seen the temple in Jerusalem, that holy dwelling, burnt, and ransacked, and the things of YHVH brought out to mock Israel.

18 And YHVH has shown me, and I have seen our enemies go before us, mocking.

19 And then shall a man of YHVH come forth, saying: All who honored her debase her because they have seen her nakedness.

20 ¶ And why should YHVH protect the resting place of the Torah that is not kept in your heart, O Israel?

21 Wherefore, YHVH shall again remove the ark of the testimony from Israel; yea He will take it away and then it must be written upon our hearts, O Judah:

22 This I have foreseen, and this warning you shall ignore; and yet this is for a wise purpose in YHVH, for El'Olam does know.

23 ¶ And you shall see, O Judah, that the house of YHVH is built in Her wisdom, for YHVH does know that Shekinah did build the house of YHVH in seven pillars;

24 And YHVH does hold up Her seven pillars, and His water, they nourish them, and the righteous do eat of the fruit therein.

25 And in the darkness, a light does shine forth from His secret place,

26 And all they that are about in search of Truth are given the secret doctrines, and they sing in hymns of worship.

27 ¶ And this is even as Abram and Sariah that left Egypt and ascended into the mysteries of YHVH,

28 And were reborn Abraham and Sarah and learned Her secret wisdom and were true and faithful in their worship.

29 ¶ O Israel, O Judah! That you would also be true and faithful to YHVH who did keep the covenant of our fathers and our mothers!
30 But were we faithful? No.
31 And because we have asked for this divorcement, YHVH will watch over us as it is we who have retreated back into Egypt;
32 But the Torah of YHVH shall never be taken, so long as we keep her written in our hearts:
33 And in this shall the Word of YHVH be written upon all the creation that is around us, and upon our hearts within, in this is the salvation of Israel.

Eighteen

ר

1 And now, Judah, I will prophecy unto you once again; for I am the oracle of YHVH, and YHVH is the hope of Israel;
2 Therefore, I say unto you: how firm is the foundation build upon YHVH, our Elohim!
3 And upon this shetiyyah (*rock*) is (*indicating past, present and future, or all time*) Zion built: by the Chozeh (*seer*), by they who see (*Hebrew, raah*).
4 And this is the rock whereupon this earth was created and built up, and in it is the life of Israel;
5 For if mankind were to open their eyes to see, then the adversary would have no power over the hearts of mankind, and the unknown would be known:
6 ¶ For the seer does know, and does testify that there is one above all, and one below,
7 And one between two, and two who do beget a third, and that the three become one,
8 And that one sends forth the divine light and life, and there is seen six on the one side and six upon the other (the visible and invisible work),
9 And the six does rise to become twelve, and that twelve does reveal the twenty-two symbols,
10 And the six are a part of the ten elohim from the first day of the creation (*the sefirot*), and the ten are the one.

11 ¶ And this is the shetiyyah where upon Zion does dwell; and therefore, wakeup, O Judah, and wake up your brothers, even Israel;
12 For you will be judged in your slumber, and when the body is defiled (*or dies*), the soul does flee from out of it:
13 But in YHVH comes new life, and then death shall be no more, for YHVH is El Elyon, and His is over all things, even life and death;
14 Therefore, YHVH is the hope of Israel, and though your children shall not see His hope, it will dwell within them, that their children, and their children's children shall find it.
15 And though you shall be cast out, and thrown down, you will find YHVH again, and you will revere Him once more, so says Neum, the oracle of YHVH.

Nineteen

1 And now, I shall speak unto all those that are wise, if you would but listen:
2 And what is wisdom but to know good from evil? Was this not the sin of mankind?
3 No, but the sin was to take before that thing was given; therefore, it was their shame, and the shame of Adam could not be hidden.
4 ¶ And this, O Judah, is the secret of sin: for Adam and Eve were told not to take for themselves and yet they did take before their time.
5 They did know, yet they did not understand, and therefore the adversary did deceive them;
6 And thus, they could not rescue themselves; for they understood not what should come to pass, and thus is mankind cast from the garden.
7 ¶ Likewise, O Judah, was Israel taken, and so too shall Judah be thrown down;
8 And here is the sign that these things must come to pass: When evil was given, evil was taken,
9 And when the widows and the fatherless were hungry, they were not fed even though you had an abundance of food, O Judah.
10 ¶ What nations should want to be oppressed by their neighbor? Who that is weak wishes to be ruled by those that are stronger?

11 Where is the righteous man that has not taken from his neighbor? Come now and defend our boarders!

12 But there is no one that should come to your aid this time, O Judah;

13 For you did not understand the things of old; therefore, you could not foresee that what is to come.

14 ¶ Who can come and rescue the people that cannot see things as they truly are?

15 But not all is in vain, I shall tell you of another sign, O Judah:

16 When evil is shut up, and wickedness is bound up, and righteousness does abound, the light of YHVH shall shine forth like the sun.

17 ¶ And it will come to pass that truth shall fill the world, and the world shall be see no more war,

18 But the strong will protect the weak, and those with food shall feel all that are hungry.

19 And this shall be because the Father shall come in the flesh, even the son of the Eternal Father,

20 And though he will be our king, we will not be His people, and we will despise Him, and mock Him, and send Him away.

21 ¶ And He will teach us, and will heal the sick, and His deeds will be judged impure;

22 He who gave us the Torah, through the hands of Moses, shall we reject and cast out and give unto our enemies that He should be put to death:

23 But He is our Father, even the Father of our salvation, and He will take upon Himself all our sins,

24 And this He will be because of His great love for us, and for our father, Abraham and our mother, Sarah.

25 ¶ And I have seen that He will return to us, for He is the master of life and death; and though He will die, we cannot kill him for He is our Elohim!

26 And he should rise on the third day and take many up with Him.

27 A¶ nd in the last days He will come again, even as He did leave they that loved Him when He did walk the earth.

28 And though the children of our Father shall proclaim His peace, they shall endure violence;

29 Yet this is but for a time, and when Zion is come into them, their peace shall be so great that all will fear them:

30 And there will be no more wars against Zion, for her daughters will teach the children to see and the fathers will teach the children to know,
31 And all that would make war against Zion will fear that their people would see them,
32 For should they see Zion they would through down their swords and covenant never to shed blood upon the earth again,
33 ¶ And what can you say, O Judah of this? Will you be Zion? No.
34 And so it shall be that Judah will fall to her enemies that the blood of Israel shall be spread among all the earth that the salvation of YHVH must come.

Twenty

1 And in that day, when YHVH shall come unto the earth, there shall be such a joy among the malachim of the heavens!
2 For YHVH is willing to reconcile with you, O Israel, His hand is stretched out towards all those that do love Him.
3 Take His hand, O Judah, and declare your love reconciled in the restoration of all things;
4 Refuse not the hand of the Lord of lords, that death shall not overtake you.
5 ¶ The love of YHVH for Israel is even as the love of a husband to his bride, and without this marriage the world should not exist:
6 For YHVH is the husband, desiring only to bestow unto his bride, that she, in her love, should receive all that He does have;
7 But when Israel should refute His love, and not receive of His fullness, then the love of YHVH should be given to another, even unto the gentiles (*foreigners*).
8 ¶ Yet when Israel should be restored unto her former glory, then shall YHVH come again unto His bride, and take her unto Himself;
9 And their love shall be eternal, and there shall be neither Judah nor gentile, for all shall be Israel that walk upon that straight path to our Elohim.

10 And their love shall be so great that their fire will never be extinguished, but all that Israel should desire will YHVH give unto her:

11 And this because she will never again look unto another's eyes lusting in adultery but shall be forever faithful unto her first love.

12 ¶ O Israel, O Judah! Why do you go a lusting after other elohim created by the hands of men?

13 Why does your faith stray as an adulterous heart when YHVH desires nothing but to give you all that is in the heavens and the earth?

14 What more could these false elohim give but doubt and troubles, leaving your hearts longing for days when YHVH would hear us when we cried out?

15 For did YHVH not hear our cries for food in the wilderness and give us manna and pheasants?

16 And when we did thirst, did El'Olam not send forth Moses and Aaron to strike the rocks that we might drink?

17 ¶ And even now, YHVH has living water for you, but you will not drink it, for it seems bitter unto you.

18 But His water is sweet to the taste, and His manna does make us to never hunger again;

19 Therefore, let go of these false elohim, worship not your vain sacrifices,

20 For YHVH is full from the fatted rams because you do burn them up and do not feed the poor among us.

21 ¶ His daughters come not before Him at the full moon anymore, and his sons come to Him on the new moons with vain sacrifices:

22 Wherefore, seek you, O Judah, the mercy of YHVH and be His hands once more;

23 Make the widow your mothers and your wives, O Israel; make the orphans your sons and your daughters, O Judah:

24 Please their case before Elohim Shaddai, and the mercy that you would give them shall YHVH, you Elohim, return to you seven fold;

25 And seven times upon seventy times shall you be blessed, O Judah, but will you hear? And if you do hear, will you listen?

26 ¶ But YHVH will turn His mighty hand towards you, but you shall not be wipes from the face of this earth,

27 But you shall be sent out, O Israel, that this creation might be turned from corruptible into uncorruptible, for this is the power of YHVH unto salvation.

Twenty-one

1 As I have said to you: The heavens, as they are crowned with stars, teaches us her mysteries.
2 By this we know that order cannot come from the earth to the heavens, but all truth must come from the heavens to the earth.
3 And this we can see clearly, because on this earth there are servants and slaves that seek to be free;
4 But in heaven it will be the slaves and the servants that are free, and those that were free will be as servants to those that were unjustly enslaved upon the earth.
5 ¶ And here upon the earth, a daughter born is given by her father to another man;
6 But in the heavens, no woman will be given nor taken, but she will be free to be even as she desires in her heart.
7 And here upon the earth, the living do become sick, and even those that are healthy do die, taken even when we do not suspect.
8 ¶ But in the heavens, there is no death, but the creation will live forever,
9 And none will grow old, and none will grow sick, and death will be forgotten, swallowed up in YHVH:
10 For upon the earth, life is eaten, and death is abundant, but in the heavens love shall abound forever, and life is eternal,
11 If it were not so, the Son of man should not need come into this earth.
12 ¶ But it is even as I have said, and this I do know, for El'Olam has shown it to me, for He is Elohim Shaddai, and He cannot lie.
13 Know that this earth was created for a great purpose in YHVH, and Ha'Elohim did gather and watch over the works, and YHVH Elohim did declare them good;
14 And the union of the earth and the heavens is even as the union between a husband and his wife, and the union between Israel and YHVH a wife and her husband:
15 ¶ And Israel is neither given, nor is she taken, but she did come to YHVH of her own will, and she did cry out to YHVH, saying:
16 All that YHVH has spoken, we will do!

17 Likewise, the earth has cried out to the heavens, and is faithful to YHVH and to Ha'Elohim, and shall be rewarded in their union.
18 ¶ And what seed does Israel bear? If her love be YHVH, then her seed shall resemble her husband,
19 But should she love another, and reject the covenant, then her seed shall resemble her adulterer;
20 For Israel is not owned but YHVH does loves her, and she is free to reject her husband,
21 But when she does forget her promise: All that YHVH has spoken, we will do!
22 Yet YHVH does not forget His love for her, O Israel, and He will wait for her restoration to come.
23 ¶ YHVH is a jealous Elohim, yet He is El Elyon, and has been patient towards you, O Judah,
24 YHVH does not desire your destruction but does call you back in teshuvah!
25 The day of His rath is coming, yet His restoration will also come, and you will see that He has been faithful and that He loves His Israel; amen and amen.

Twenty-two

1 O Judah, how I lament your woes! You have demanded justice without mercy for your enemies, and now you will be given justice for your own crimes.
2 You remember the holy days, but forget your oaths to be a holy people to YHVH, who is holy.
3 You pour out your libations, and the smoke rises from the fires of your sacrifice, but the water is polluted, and the smoke is a bitter scent.
4 You have robbed the poor, and stolen the food of the hungry, and think that burning up the fat of cows and rams will quench the hunger of Ha'Elohim.
5 ¶ But know that every woman cries in the pain of her labor when she gives birth, and you, O Judah, shall cry in pain as you give birth to the children of your distress.

6 Yet when you do see, O Judah, the love that YHVH does have for you and your sons and your daughters, then you will cry out in the joy of your redemption.

7 ¶ And at the end of days, the wars shall see their endings, and the temples will again be consecrated to YHVH Elohim;

8 And the true arts will be taught again, and truth will be written upon pillars that will rise into the skies,

9 And YHVH will come down from the clouds and the earth, she will receive Him

10 And then will the heavens and the earth be one, and hymns of joy will be sung forever and ever:

11 For the heavens will be open and the treasures of heavens poured out upon this earth!

12 A¶ nd Israel will abandon her pride, and the daughters of Zion will be given their due,

13 For the days of their oppression will have ended, and they will be lifted up by the right hand and crowns placed upon their heads.

14 And their tears shall be wiped away forever, and their hearts shall not be broken again.

15 ¶ And this because YHVH Elohim is the one who does consecrate and does purify all that would walk in His gardens and tend to His fields.

16 And all will see and know the glory of YHVH and will bow down before Him and shall proclaim His salvation.

17 ¶ And then shall all the earth see the love YHVH has for His bride, even Israel,

18 And shall see her salvation from the beginning to the end,

19 And having repented of her sins, go forth unto YHVH forever and ever, never again to taste of death or sin.

20 ¶ And Israel shall say: YHVH has called me back, He is my redeemer!

21 Though I did turn my back on Him, He never did look away, and in His compassion He is bring me back:

22 And though I did hide by face for a time and times, with everlasting compassion YHVH did remember me!

23 And my love is forever for YHVH, he is my husband, and our love will never be broken.

24 ¶ And then shall the poor be fed, and the fatherless be cared for, and there shall not be rich nor poor, but all will be one in YHVH as it was in the beginning; even so, amen and amen.

The Shulemnah

Chapter 1

1 [1a] I, Shulem, Messenger of Light, am come to show thee the things of the past and things which must shortly come.

2 [1b] I come to you from the Holy City, the regions of light; the city whose name is Salem, meaning the peace of God, the holiness of God and the righteousness of the people whose glory is the glory of God.

3 [1c] There are those in that city who belong to the Holy Order of God and whose work in God is to draw the ones seeking light and truth into themselves;

4 [1d] Thus they minister to the nations, kindred, tongues and peoples and draw out of them whomsoever will come into their order that they might also be made partakers of the glory and the law that is in that city; that they might become one with all who are partakers of the light.

5 [2a] Lift up your eyes and perceive!

6 [2b] Open up your ears to hear that your heart might be cleft in two to receive and know for yourself the light, the glory, the peace, the truth, the harmony of those who are ministering to thee of the light that is in them;

7 [2c] And thus they are Shulemnah, those who are the bearers of light.

8 [3a] I was myself in the days of my fallen flesh encumbered about as thou art, subject to doubt and pain and sufferings, in the like passions as thee,

9 [3b] But I did cleave unto my God in mighty prayer all the day long; yea, and into the night did I raise my voice on high, weeping and pleading constantly for myself and my people;

10 [3c] For they had all waxed strong in inequity until they did plunder and murder without reason and judgment.

11 [3d] Yea, the spirit of that evil one did take hold of all, both old and young, so that there was no safe place because of the destroyer who was loosed upon the land.

12 [3e] And I did weep much for my people, for violence and death were their watchword, and naught but vengeance was in their hearts.

13 [3f] And it came to pass that as I was walking on the path of the city of Ammonihah to behold the carnage there, I did pray mightily unto

my God to deliver me from the destruction that was all about me, behold I did meet a man who asked why I did weep and from whence I did come.

14 [3g] And I did answer him saying: That I did come from the place Ramulon and that there was great destruction in that place, for no one was safe except to hide by day and night.

15 [4a] Believest thou that thy God can deliver thee? he asked, for he held onto me that I could not turn aside.

16 [4b] Yea, I cried, I know that my God can deliver me, for He can do all things that seemeth Him good, and I know that He doth provide a way for escape to all those who diligently serve Him and for this hope do I pray all the day long.

17 [4c] Then go not to the city of Ammonihah, he said, but go to a place which I shall show thee and thou shalt be safe.

18 [4d] I ran quickly to the place which he told me, for I did take hope that my pleadings were to be answered; yea, I did know in my heart that my God was with me.

19 [5a] When I did come to the place, I did find others gathered who were watchful and prayerful to be blessed of God.

20 [5b] And we did unite our voices together that we could be delivered from the evil which had taken hold of all the people who had once dwelt in peace.

21 [5c] And we did fast and pray and lift up our hands and hearts continually that we could be protected and delivered;

22 [5d] And behold, I will show you that we were protected and delivered, for we did know from our God that there would be an entire separation of the righteous from the wicked, and the righteous would be preserved and the wicked would be destroyed.

23 [6a] And behold there were others who did come out of the forest and join us;

24 [6b] For they did come by ones and twos, being led by the Spirit of God, bringing some food and some possessions, and gathering together until there were in number sixty-seven souls who did pray together as one.

25 [6c] And the food which they did bring was multiplied so that no one was hungry;

26 [6d] And sometimes we did go into the forest in search of food for all to eat, but we did not go much into the forest, for we were afraid of being found, for we knew that there was safety in numbers.

27 [6e] Yea, we did know that as one, our God would preserve us, but in separation we had no protection.

28 [7a] Thus, we did gather and preserve ourselves from day to day, fasting and praying that others who had faith in God would find us and be preserved.

29 [7b] Thus did our hearts grow together as one until we were visited by one, Moroni, who had power and authority from God to bless and teach us,

30 [7c] Teaching us that we could rend the veil and be as he was, not subject to the pains and trials of the flesh, for he had overcome all.

31 [8a] With that gladness did we lift up our voices unto God; yea, we did praise Him all the day long for we had come through much tribulation and had been sore afraid.

32 [8b] And Moroni did anoint me as our leader and teacher and did bless me that I could see into the heavens and behold many great and marvelous things.

33 [8c] And I did take hold of the gifts of God and did feel them magnified in me until I felt that there was not anything that God could not do in me, so powerful was His Spirit in me, and so great the visions and glories which were opened up to me.

34 [8d] And I did travel, in the Spirit or the flesh I know not, for it did seem the same to me;

35 [8e] And I did behold the destruction and death in all the land, for the devil was loosed and ran rampant in the hearts of all the people.

36 [8f] But I did behold that there were others like unto our little group on whom the Spirit of God was doing a marvelous work and a wonderful thing was happening to them like unto us.

37 [8g] And thus did the Lord separate out His people from amongst the wicked, and they were few indeed compared to the great multitudes who had fallen by the sword under the devil's dominion.

38 [8h] But those who had faith in Jesus Christ and held fast unto that faith and could not be shaken were preserved, yea, everyone who did lay hold of the promises of the fathers in their hearts.

39 [8i] Yea, they did set their feet on that highway of holiness and did receive the fulfilling of the covenants which were made unto all the fathers since the world began.

40 [8j] And not one who had faith in Christ unto the fulfilling of the covenants were lost, and all did find their way out of the devil's dominion and did find safety and protection according to the promise of God unto our fathers.

41 [9a] And Moroni did visit us from time to time, giving us instructions and endowments enabling us to rend the heavens and to

see and know and comprehend those things which were hitherto foreclosed to us.

42 [9b] Yea, we did obey and follow Moroni in all that he said unto us, making covenants with Jesus Christ and with Moroni and with each other, accepting all who came unto us who would obey the law of Christ.

43 [9c] And there were none who would not obey, for they had been much driven and tormented in the devil's dominion and had been led by the Spirit of the Lord out of tribulation.

44 [10a] And behold, others did visit us also so that there began to be free and open exchange between us and those who had power over death;

45 [10b] For we saw that there were many like unto Moroni who possessed in themselves much power and dominion, light, and glory which we needed to understand to come into their order.

46 [10c] And even all our needs were taken care of, both physically and spiritually, insomuch that we were in want of nothing that was not supplied.

47 [10d] We began to see that all our food and even our clothing was preserved so that it did not wear out, nor were our sandals broken or worn.

48 [11a] In all these things we did praise God; yea, in the morning did we shout praises unto our God who had delivered us, and all the day long did we sing songs of praise;

49 [11b] And when night came, we did not cease to rejoice in the Lord our God.

50 [11c] And when we were discovered by our enemies, they could not enter our camp for the fear of God did take hold of them.

51 [11d] And when some of our enemies did find that they had no power over us, they ran away afraid;

52 [11e] But some repented and sought to join our band, repenting and rejoicing that they had been saved from the jaws of death and hell.

53 [12a] Thus did the work of separation take place, on the one hand gathering unto God in little groups of those who could see and hold fast unto the visions of Zion,

54 [12b] Which was in their hearts, and the rest, on the other hand, being totally turned over to the buffetings of the devil until the testimony was bound and the law sealed against them.

55 [13a] And thus did the Lord reign in the midst of His people, giving and providing them with every blessing of heaven and earth so

that they were preserved in all things from the desolation; the Mountain of the Lord's house being truly established among them.

56 [13b] And thus did the devil reign in the midst of his people, bringing on the abomination that maketh desolate on all the face of the land.

57 [14a] I, Shulem, do tell you this, commanding you to write, but not to send forth to the world, but only to a select few who will believe and understand;

58 [14b] But unto the rest, seal it up, for they will not learn wisdom when it is given them in plainness and truth.

59 [14c] O, you wicked and perverse generation, know you not that that same desolation which destroyed my people is coming upon your own?

60 [14d] Know ye not the revelations and blessings and promises of God are available to you in any generation of time?

61 [14e] Know ye not that the same destroyer who brought down my people and made them so that they were no more, is poised and waiting to reap down your people in like manner?

62 [14f] Come out of her, that ye may escape the wrath of God, the desolation of abomination which awaiteth you; come, lest this desolation overtake you as it did my nation.

63 [14g] Come, that we may minister unto you of the preservation which the Father has provided for you, which preservation is in Christ Jesus and the Omega of His redemption.

64 [14h] Come ye my people, and partake of His fullness and His power: Amen

The Writings of Moroni

His Reign and Ministry

Moroni, a great prophet, seer, revelator and translator, lived on the American continent about 400 years after the coming of Christ in the flesh. After the prophesied destruction of his people by bloodshed, he and those who believed in Christ as he did, continued to worship and write and compile by the Spirit of God.

Chapter 1

1 [1a] I, Moroni, did have many visitations from the beloved disciples and others, for they did go through the cities and gather unto themselves all who would not make a pact with the devil.

2 [1b] Yea, there were some who were truly born of God and would not covenant with Satan to plunder and murder to get gain;

3 [1c] But others did have vengeance in their hearts and did murder for the sake of the desire for blood.

4 [2a] But behold, there were some who did not take up the sword to murder and plunder but did pray to God for their deliverance and these did pray continually with me.

5 [2b] And I was visited by the beloved disciples and others and they did minister to me; yea, they were in me as a flaming fire and did change my flesh so there was light in me instead of darkness.

6 [3a] And this came about on this wise: I did know some people in a certain city who were every bit as I, praying continually for ourselves and our people,

7 [3b] For we did see that the abomination was upon our nation and there was no way to turn the tide;

8 [3c] Therefore, we did gather together and hide ourselves, for our cities had become desolate.

9 [3d] And we did band together for protection, going from place to place in secret, for we knew not when we would come upon a large army and be destroyed.

10 [4a] And in this city a man had a tunnel built below the street so that he could go into the floor of his house and escape through the tunnel into the street;

11 [4b] Therefore, we set guards continually at the door of the house and we did live secretly by means of the guards;

12 [4c] For when marauders came we would escape into the tunnel and preserve ourselves alive by this means.

13 [5a] And it came to pass that as we were sitting at *the* table, there came a great pounding at the door and we were sore afraid for the guard did not warn us of someone coming; therefore, we did quickly go into the tunnel;

14 [5b] But we could not go all the way into the tunnel for it was filled with rushing water, it being now the rainy season and the main tunnel having been built of stones for the run-off water.

15 [5c] But we did crowd into the connecting tunnel, being thirteen people, and did attempt to hide ourselves.

16 [6a] But the man did gain entrance into the house, by what means I knew not, for the door was bolted;

17 [6b] And he did even lift the stone and call into the tunnel to the owner of the house whose name was Ammaron.

18 [6c] And he did continue to call out his name until Ammaron did take courage and come forth;

19 [6d] And when he did come forth the man did stretch forth his hand and gave him a sign so that he knew that he was friendly.

20 [6e] Then he did throw his arms about the man and did kiss him with great rejoicing, for we all had been sore afraid, having lost many of our loved ones by the sword.

21 [6f] And so we did come forth one by one from the tunnel with great rejoicing for we knew that this man had been sent forth from God as our Savior.

22 [7a] And the man's name was Shulemnah, which interpreted, means one of many of the Messengers of Light for such are all who come forth to minister for those who shall be heirs of salvation.

23 [7b] Notwithstanding, we all knew that our salvation is in Jesus Christ from the beginning unto the end, yet those who came to us from the regions of light bear that same message and that same name.

24 [7c] And their work is a labor of love by which they draw us into oneness with their order and make us one with them.

25 [7d] And he did abide with us and bless us with his ministry and instruct us in many wonderful things which we had not heretofore known.

26 [7e] And others did also minister to us and take us step by step into a higher order of things,

27 [7f] And he did go out and bring others to where we were gathered until we became a large number of people, so that we spread out to other houses that had been left desolate;

28 [7g] But we did unite as one and lift up our hearts as one and sing praises as one until we were about fifty-four souls.

29 [9a] And there was never before seen such great and marvelous things that were shown to us and the miracles that were daily happening to each one of us or as a body of people.

30 [9b] And we began to be exceedingly happy for the fear of being slain did no longer take hold of us and we did mourn the loss of our loved ones no more.

31 [10a] Thus, while the work of destruction was going on all around us, we saw that we were entering a new law and a new order of things;

32 [10b] And the old world that we had lived in was passing away so that it was in our consciousness no more.

33 [10c] Yea, the old world did wax old like a garment that was shredded and we cast it out of our minds and found all things new.

34 [11a] Behold there were none of us, no, not one, who wanted to go back to that old world; for we were full of the joy and peace which we had never known before.

35 [11b] And we were visited by other holy men who remained with us, and our hearts were filled for the love which we did feel from these holy men.

36 [11c] And our eyes were opened to see great and marvelous things which are unknowable and unspeakable to the old world but joyous to those partakers who cast aside the old that they can enter into the new.

37 [12a] And all these things I have written and are sealed, but they can be manifest to those who come up to receive them.

38 [12b] Yea, they are open to all who will enter in and partake until their old flesh is renewed and all things have become holy and new.

39 [13] And thus we changed so that our ears did hear and our eyes did see the great and marvelous things which have been hid from the world but manifest to those who would receive and come up higher.

40 [14a] And we did wax stronger and stronger in our faith in Jesus Christ and we did commence to know great power in ourselves insomuch that we could simply think in our consciousness and we would be there.

41 [14b] And by this means we did find many of the people who had banded together as we had and did minister to them also, so that the work of the gathering into Christ did commence all over the land;

42 [14c] For God would not suffer that any of those who had faith in Christ and did follow the directions of His Spirit should be lost;

43 [14d] No, not one was lost, for such is the promise of the Father unto us that Jesus made when He did visit our fathers in the flesh in His resurrection.

44 [15a] Yea, and of such are the promises of all the fathers unto us, for they all did speak of these same things;

45 [15b] But the great body of the people did not believe the fathers when these things were spoken to them, so their mighty works and promises were hid up;

46 [15c] Yea, they did speak of many great and marvelous works, but were commanded to be hid up for a more believing generation.

47 [16a] And behold, I give these things unto you now, knowing that you are a stiff-necked generation;

48 [16b] Yea, I know that your brow is brass and your neck is an iron sinew and that you are hard of hearing.

49 [16c] Nevertheless, I give you these things that I have sealed up because of your desire and because you have asked.

50 [17a] But remember, O remember, that he that receives only the lesser portion of the word of God receives no more,

51 [17b] And *they* who receives the greater portion *are* given more until it is given to *them* to receive all that God would give *them*;

52 [17c] And thus *they* would come to know God, knowing all His works; and thus *they* would come to partake of all the glory of God as he comes to enter into all His works.

53 [18a] And these works are hidden to most, sealed on the back with seven seals as His servant John did state, but they are not sealed to us who enter therein;

54 [18b] For we have, through our faith in Christ, loosed the seals, and we have a free and open communion with one another.

55 [18b] Yea all those who have loosed the seals do know each other, for it is manifest unto us as we do minister and are ministered to.

56 [18c] And it is by this means that we do enter into the same order and partake of the same works, which works are the works of salvation.

57 [19a] And thus we have power over death and fear and suffering and pain and are caught up in our consciousness, for I did behold with the eyes of my spirit things which I could not before behold.

58 [19b] And by this means did my natural senses begin to be quickened within me until my faith was so sure that I did with certainty bear witness with my natural senses that which I did before behold with my spiritual eyes.

59 [19c] And I do now proclaim and bear witness that there were many who did preserve themselves from death and the sword and did come into a higher order of things, even as it was in the days of old so was it so with us;

60 [19d] For we did begin to behold with our natural senses and experience in our flesh, the fulfillment of all the things which our fathers had promised.

61 [20a] Yea the promises of the Fathers were all fulfilled in us; and I, Moroni, do now declare it unto you, O ye nations, that they are about to be fulfilled in you;

62 [20b] For do ye suppose that ye can escape the justice of a just God?

63 [20c] Do ye suppose that He who holds the balance of justice in His hand will preserve you forever in your sins, and your abominations, your idolatry, and your murders?

64 [21a] Come ye out, O ye nations, that ye drink not of the wrath of her fornications!

65 [21b] Come ye out of her O my little ones, for the trumpets have sounded, and your mighty ones, yea, all your lofty ones are about to be brought low even as my kindred and my people were;

66 [21c] For behold, there are none left; for those who would not believe and set their feet on that highway of holiness have all been taken away and their carcasses are strewn upon the earth.

67 [22a] Do ye suppose that God will not fulfill His promises? Do ye suppose that His works will come to naught?

68 [22b] Do ye suppose that He who spared not the wicked in Noah's day will spare you? Do ye suppose that ye are different?

69 [22c] For He who spared not, but destroyed the people in Noah's day, or the Jaredite nation, or my own people and nation will now preserve you?

70 [22d] Behold I say unto you: Nay, for I have seen you and I do see you now; and I do declare it unto you that you are about to be destroyed, and none of you will escape unless you hearken unto all my words.

71 [23a] Yea, hearken O ye my little ones; lift up your hearts, and open your ears to hear, and anoint your eyes so that you can see!

72 [23b] Behold the promises of the fathers unto you, for they are the same promises which preserved me and some few out of my nation, and the strict conformity with these promises will preserve you.

73 [23c] Yea, I say unto you, ye need not be destroyed as my people were, but you can be preserved;

74 [23d] For did not our fathers prophecy that we would be preserved? And by what means were we preserved according to the promises of the Father?

75 [24a] Behold, we were preserved by coming into Christ, the Son of God, and not only did we come into Christ the Son of God, but we did come into Christ the Father.

76 [24b] And do ye not know that you cannot come into Christ the Father until you have come into Christ the Son?

77 [25a] For Behold the work of the Father is above the work of the Son and it cannot commence until the work of the Son is completed in you;

78 [25b] And then and not until then can the work of the Father commence, for thus it is: Amen.

Chapter 2

1 [1a] AND Behold did not Jesus tell our fathers with His own mouth that the work of the Father would commence amongst all nations to the preservation of our souls, both temporally and spiritually?

2 [1b] But first spiritual and then temporally, which is the beginning of the work, and again, first temporally and then spiritually, which is the ending of the work.

3 [1c] And do you not know that the commencement of the work of the Father's is the consummation of the work of the Son?

4 [1d] And these things have been hid up from you because of your unbelief in the work of the Son;

5 [1e] But now are they to be manifest to you, if not all, then a select few, that you might be blessed, even as we are.

6 [2a] For Behold, the work of the Father did commence among us, those who did believe and fulfill the law of the Son; for no one can come into the Father except by way of the Son;

7 [2b] And the commencement of the work of the Father is the commencement of the work of the Fathers by which we were all gathered into one great whole; even the fathers in heaven did go about gathering us into themselves until we were all one with them.

8 [2c] And thus are the promises of the fathers fulfilled on the heads of the children, that we might all be gathered into them; and by this means are the promises fulfilled.

9 [3a] And thus did the fathers who are the Shulemnah minister to us who had gathered out of the world for the safety of our souls,

10 [3b] And thus did we, when the work of the Father had been fulfilled, become Shulemnah and go about the land gathering others, until all was fulfilled.

11 [3c] Behold, the work of the Father was fulfilled on the one hand to the salvation of our souls, both temporally and spiritually;

12 [3d] And on the other hand, the work of the devil was fulfilled, for he did claim all that were his, and he did reign with blood and horror on the earth.

13 [4a] And thus were the prophecies of Nephi fulfilled; for he did truly see our day, as we both have truly seen yours, O ye nations,

14 [4b] For in every nation it is the same, that the time will come when that nation is ripe in inequity that there must needs be an entire separation of the righteous from the wicked.

15 [4c] And the righteous will He preserve unto the salvation of their souls, and then are the wicked left to the destruction, which bringeth on the abomination that maketh desolate.

16 [5a] Gather ye out, O ye nations; gather ye out that the work of the Fathers might commence in you.

17 [5b] Yea, in the name of Jesus Christ, the Father and the Son, gather ye out that all the promises and mighty works of God might be fulfilled.

18 [6a] Behold, I say unto you who have started to come into Christ the Son, come ye into Christ the Father also;

19 [6b] For did I not tell you in words of plainness that if you would come into Christ the Son, then would the greater things become manifest unto you?

20 [6c] And it is because of your unbelief that the greater things have not come unto you; behold, the greater things are the works of the Father which are unfolded unto all of those who come.

21 [7a] Yea, they are unfolded by the fathers themselves, and it is for this reason that God did promise the sending of Elijah to plant in the hearts of the children the promises made to the Fathers.

22 [7b] And it is by the spirit and power of Elijah, who is one of the Shulemnah, that the hearts of the children do turn to the fathers, lest they be smitten and wasted at the coming of the Lord.

23 [8a] And behold, the time is nigh at hand for the coming of the Lord; therefore, O ye nations, turn ye into the fathers.

24 [8b] Yea, turn ye, O ye my little ones! Turn ye into the Fathers that ye might be blessed with the fulfilling of the promise.

25 [9a] And behold, as I did go forth and minister to bring others into the work of the fathers, there began to be great peace in my soul;

26 [9b] Yea, I did mourn the loss of my loved ones no more, for I began to find others whose hearts and minds were changed into the service of our God,

27 [9c] And our hearts were sealed together as one wherever we did go.

28 [10a] And thus we did journey about over all the face of the land, traveling in our consciousness;

29 [10b] For there was nothing that pertained to that old world that we could not see, and there was nothing that could encumber us;

30 [10c] For we did have power over all things so that no ravenous beast or poisonous serpent could attack us, for we had overcome the fear in our hearts towards the animals, and thus their fear and enmity towards us was gone.

31 [11a] And when we came upon a Lamanite or an enemy, they would not see us, but would pass by within touching distance and would not behold our presence, but would be struck dumb so that they could not move;

32 [11b] Or sometimes the fear would take hold of them so that they would shake and tremble and drop their swords and run away.

33 [12a] And by this means we began to see that we did have power in ourselves to do all things which were expedient for us to do in the work of the gathering;

34 [12b] For we could preserve whom we would preserve, and not by our own strength, but it was the power of God in us;

35 [12c] And thus it was fulfilled that which is written by Isaiah, saying: They shall roar like young lions and lay hold of the prey and carry away safe and none can deliver.

36 [13a] Behold there was no power which could hold us, nor was there anything that could delay us from our prescribed duty,

37 [13b] And our prescribed duty was to rescue from death those who would come all the way into the Fathers.

38 [13c] And thus we did gather into the Fathers all who would come, and teach them the laws by which they might be saved.

39 [13d] And thus we did journey over all the face of the land and take them out, one of a city, two of a family, and bring them to Zion.

40 [14a] And we were filled with the power and the joy of our God for we did know and understand the promises and the work of the fathers;

41 [14b] And behold, it is a marvelous work and a wonder, even to this time, and from this time forevermore, even unto the last generation; yea, verily it is the same work and it changes not.

42 [15a] And thus we began to be quickened in all our physical senses; for the natural eye had never beheld, nor the ear ever heard before, the things which we began to both see and hear and understand,

43 [15b] And we did not only behold with our whole being, and whether we did see with our body or with our spirit, we could not tell;

44 [15c] For it did seem to us both the same, for we were filled with light to behold all things.

45 [15d] And we did behold many sacred records, for God did ordain that His people in any place or time should keep a record of their works and God did see that those records were preserved.

46 [16a] And Behold, it came to pass that Ammaron did again take possession of the sacred records; for he was the son of Jeron, who was the son Ammaron, the same who did hide up the sacred writings.

47 [16b] And Ammaron did take possession of the records of his fathers which are many, and he does have charge of them unto this day;

48 [16c] And they will come forth when the Father ordains it, and until that time they will be hid up, for God has decreed that He will first try the faith of His people.

49 [17a] But behold, they are known to us and they can be made known to any whose faith is sufficiently strong, for the fathers do desire to give us all things just as soon as we can receive them.

50 [17b] And behold, there is nothing that they will withhold; for behold all things are ours, and we are Christ's and Christ is God's; and thus it is that we are gathered together in one: Amen.

Chapter 3

1 [1a] AND now as I was saying concerning the many records; for we did perceive that there were many records kept that we knew not of and we did see that they were in God's hands and, therefore, were preserved to come forth by the will of the Father.

2 [1b] And as we did perceive the records, we did also perceive in our consciousness the content of the records

3 [1c] And we did know and bear record that they did tell of the many marvelous works of God in every time and every place.

4 [2a] And we did see that Jesus did visit all people everywhere who were of the house of Israel, for they were scattered on all the face of the earth and on the isles of the sea.

5 [2b] But Jesus did truly visit them, according to His promise, and there were none save those who had kept the covenants of their fathers that He did visit.

6 [3a] And behold, we did perceive that some were like unto our people at the time of the coming of Jesus in His resurrection, dwindling in unbelief;

7 [3b] But they did receive Him like unto our people, and He did bring in a new order of things in whatsoever place He did visit.

8 [4a] And they did keep their sacred records, and those who did become the Shulemnah did take charge of those records and they have them unto this day; and thus God's people are gathered into the fathers;

9 [4b] For behold, you see that all God's works, both His people, and His words, and His holy treasure, are gathered into one;

10 [4c] For thus was it stated by the prophet Ether and many others in his time and from their people were taken up and did not taste of death, for I have seen them and they have ministered unto me.

11 [4d] Yea, I do know of all their marvelous words which are the words of the Fathers and it is not preserved in your records because you know not any of the Father's works.

12 [5a] And the brother of Jared also, and his family, for behold they did fulfill all the promises of God;

13 [5b] Therefore, they did obtain heaven; yea they did obtain heaven and their history have I written and sealed up:

14 [5c] For behold, the brother of Jared did look into heaven and behold the family of God, and did know and did understand that priesthood which is the family of God.

15 [5d] And he did see that it did encompass all the peoples of the earth who did come into God, yea, from the beginning even unto the end of time.

16 [6a] And he did see that as our father Adam did go forth on the earth and they did multiply; for behold they were many to begin with, and our father Adam was the first of many;

17 [6b] Therefore, they were all organized from the beginning in a heavenly manner and they did know from whence they came and did continue that type here upon the earth,

18 [6c] For that order did exist among them which had always been from everlasting to everlasting.

19 [7a] For they were of one heart and one mind, and one flesh, being in harmony with one another;

20 [7b] And thus, there was peace and love amongst them, for there was no separation because of the harmony.

21 [7c] And they did not set one before the other, for all were equal and as one.

22[7d] And because of this oneness, the earth did flourish under their hands for the earth did recognize and respond to their dominion and did bring forth abundantly for the joy of the Lord.

23 [7e] And when children were born unto them they did continue the heavenly order for the love of God, which is the priesthood of God, was in them to its perfection.

24 [8a] But behold, as the children began to grow up and exercise their own will contrary to the love of God, the disharmony began to destroy the Holy Order of God, for the oneness began to break apart.

25 [8b] And they began to divide off from the order which had been established by their fathers and go forth two by two;

26 [8c] Therefore, there began to be a great division in the Holy Order and the oneness which once existed in that priesthood remained only with a select few who did follow the Holy Order.

27 [9a] And behold when Cain did slay his brother Abel, and it did cause great havoc in the Holy Order, for it did introduce the works of Satan for the first time into the Holy Order itself,

28 [9b] For previous to this time Satan did have no hold on the hearts of the children of God, the only evil they did before this time was the consequence of their own choices being out of harmony with the Holy Order, which order existed because of God working in man.

29 [10a] But behold when Cain did rise up and slay his brother, he did it by covenant with his father, and thus power was given Satan to begin his reign in the children of God in the flesh.

30 [10b] And thus did the work of destruction run rampant in the Holy Order, for Satan began from that time forth to rage in their hearts.

31 [11a] And behold, the children of God did from that time forth begin to choose Satan as their father, for they chose not anymore to follow after the Order of the Ancient of Days;

32 [11b] Therefore did Enoch see that heaven did weep over her children for they did choose Satan as their father and chose some other law or order than His priesthood;

33 [11c] Therefore, they chose Satan and his priesthood; and thus did Satan's kingdom grow up and he rules his kingdom unto this day.

34 [12a] And the children of this world know not that Satan is their father and that he reigns in their hearts, even all.

35 [12b] And even those who have chosen Jesus Christ, the Son of God, have not chosen Him as their Father for verily, verily, if they have chosen Him as their Father then will He lead them into the Father;

36 [12c] For did He not promise that He would even introduce the Father to them and both the Father and the Son would abide in them?

Chapter 4

1 [1a] AND now I, Moroni, would speak unto you again, O ye nations; for did I not say unto you that the work of the Father is above the work of the Son?

2 [1b] And did Jesus not promise that the work of the Father would commence among all nations unto the fulfilling of the covenant unto the Fathers?

3 [1c] And did the Father not promise that His plan would be to gather all nations and make them again one people, and He would be their God and they would be His people?

4 [2a] But He cannot be their God and they be His people if they choose not to be gathered unto His Holy Order and His Priesthood, for His Holy Order is His Priesthood, and His Priesthood is of the Father.

5 [2c] And behold, no one can remain in Satan's dominion and come unto the Priesthood of the Father for that priesthood is oneness in the Father.

6 [3a] And thus did the brother of Jared see that as the children of God lost the Holy Order of God and went forth two by two on the land, the Priesthood of the Father was lost unto them;

7 [3b] And it was for this reason that the Son of God came into the world to lead them back into the oneness which was the Priesthood of the Father.

8 [4] And thus is Christ both the Father and the Son: the Father because of the oneness of the Godhead in Him and the Son because of the flesh.

9 [5a] And behold if we will submit ourselves in the flesh to the will of the Father, we can come back into the Holy Order of God,

10 [5b] And thereby will the work of the Father commence in us to bring us back into the Priesthood of the Father.

11 [5c] For it was promised that that same priesthood which was in the beginning of the world will be in the end of the world also;

12 [5d] And thus will the Father gather together in one all things in heaven and earth; and thus will all things become new, for God has promised to make a new heaven and a new earth wherein dwelleth righteousness.

13 [6a] And thus will Satan's kingdom dwindle in us as a garment that waxeth old and passeth away, and all things become new.

14 [6b] And then will Satan's kingdom dwindle outside us; but it cannot dwindle outside of us unless we gather out of his kingdom, for his kingdom and dominion is anything that is opposite to the Holy Order of God, for thus it was from the days of old and thus, it remains today.

15 [7a] For behold, the Father cannot build up His kingdom and dominion in the midst of great Babylon; for all who remain in the world are yet a part of the world;

16 [7b] For the Priesthood of the Father consists of the oneness of the Godhead, which oneness and Godhead remain in the heavens unless they are established on the earth by the Sons of God, joining with each other in that oneness.

17 [8a] And how can they be one if they refuse to join in that oneness? Behold, are they not still separate and single and, thus, outside of the Godhead?

18 [8b] Therefore, the Priesthood of the Father, wherein dwelleth the power of God, cannot come to them; even though the priesthood of the Son be with them in some measure.

19 [9a] And now behold, the brother of Jared did see all things on the earth, and he did see that it is the Priesthood of the Father which rules and governs all things in heaven and on the earth,

20 [9b] And from it issues forth the family of God, both in heaven and on the earth, for it is the power of the Godhead.

21 [9c] And the brother of Jared did from that time forth organize his family after this heavenly order, for he did understand that it was the only way he could bring his family into union with the Godhead.

22 [10a] Nevertheless, the brother of Jared had before that time lived the Holy Order in some measure,

23 [10b] For it had been handed down from the fathers, and was the natural pattern followed by all those who followed the true and living God and had come down to them since the days of Adam.

24 [10c] But he did see and know that his family on earth must be connected into the family of God in heaven by a holy ordinance;

25 [10d] For, thus, it had been decreed from the beginning in the councils of the Gods, the Gods having set messengers to preside over the earth to bring these principles and ordinances down so that all things might be done in order.

26 [11a] And it was by this means that a way was prepared from the beginning to bring out of the earth all who would come unto the fullness of the Father.

27 [11b] And thus it was even in the brother of Jared's time that the work of the Father commenced to the gathering together in one of all things in heaven and earth.

28 [12a] And thus it was in my time, even Moroni; and thus it will be forever;

29 [12b] For the work of the Father will commence wherever there is one that will rend the heavens to commence the work of the Father;

30 [12c] And ye know not the works of the Father because ye believe not the works of the Son.

Chapter 5

1 [1a] AND now I, Moroni, would speak somewhat concerning this holy ordinance and covenant which was decreed by God that men must enter into;

2 [1b] For behold, do ye suppose that God will receive unto Himself by some other means than that which He has ordained?

3 [1c] Or can the pot that is being molded and formed say to the potter, form me some other way?

4 [2a] Behold I say unto you: Nay, for the potter retains control over that which he is forming and if it forms up imperfectly, he throws it back unto the lump from whence it came to be formed again.

5 [2b] And thus did the council of the Gods decree all things unto man on the earth by a holy ordinance,

6 [2c] And those who came not unto the ordinances are being formed imperfectly and will be cast off at the last day.

7 [3a] Behold I say unto you, council not your God, but be meek and humble and lowly of heart, even as the brother of Jared was;

8 [3b] For behold, he did talk to God face to face, and did behold all the workings of God from the beginning to the end and did remain in his humility, and did follow in strict conformity all things as he was commanded,

9 [3c-4a] And thus, he was blessed and did become a blessing unto his family; for behold, he did organize his family after an heavenly ordinance;

10 [4b] And they did thereby connect themselves to the heavenly family so that all things were the same both in heaven and on the earth, and thus were they gathered together into one;

11 [4c] And thus did they obtain heaven, even as many as would follow the heavenly ordinance, and those who would not did not partake of the heavenly gifts or have communion with the heavenly family.

12 [5a] And behold, it was very grievous to Jared and his brother when their people did want a political king, for there is no place in the heavenly order for such a king,

13 [5b] For all kings are anointed priests unto the Most High God and are appointed by God Himself and not by man;

14 [5c] And being appointed by God there can be no unrighteousness in their rule to bring the people down unto destruction.

15 [5d] But behold, God giveth to the people whatsoever thing they want, even if it be unto destruction; therefore, they did choose a king and the Holy Order was done away.

16 [6a] And now I would not have you believe that the Holy Order was done away immediately, for behold there were many who did keep the ordinances;

17 [6b] And as many as did keep the ordinances with a firm mind in every form of Godliness did wash their garments in the Blood of the Lamb and were sanctified and did obtain heaven.

18 [7a] And it is written of them that they died, but even so it is written that Adam also died, and Seth, and Enos and it is written that Moses died also;

19 [7b] But behold, that record is for those who are subject onto death that it might be suitable to their understanding;

20 [7c] But unto others it is given that they might know that the priesthood has the power over death until Cain did covenant with Satan to introduce death;

21 [7d] For behold the Priesthood of the Father is the Priesthood of eternal life.

22 [8a] And He who is the author and source of life cannot also be the source of death;

23 [8b] And those who were born under the protection of that priesthood were not subject to the death that came by Satan until the murderous power was introduced by the will and choice and covenant of one of the Sons of God;

24 [8c] For until that time, Satan was bound, for he had no hold on the hearts of the children of God only as they began to choose against the priesthood of their father;

25 [8d] And as they did, they did willing subject themselves and their children to be bound by the chords of death:

26 [9a] For the justice of God could give them no protection from the powers of Satan contrary to their choice;

27 [9b] And it was by this means that the Holy Order did begin to crumble away and Satan's dominion and power did begin to reign in its place.

28 [10a] Behold the free agency of *mankind* will always remain inviolate even if *they choose* that which will bind *them* unto death;

29 [10b] And thus, did the heavens weep over Him as he did bring himself and his children down to be subject to the God which they choose, which God is death and hell and the grave.

30 [11a] And these were the things which the brother of Jared saw and, seeing this, he did have power to order his family to bring them into harmony with the true God of Heaven;

31 [11b] And thus, by strict obedience to these Laws of heaven, which Laws are the Priesthood of the fathers, those who were obedient thereunto, did, through the atonement of Christ, escape the consequences of death,

32 [11c] And by overpowering death, *they* did arise without tasting death unto that same Eternal Life which is in the fathers.

33 [12] And behold, it is also stated in my father's record that there were exceeding many who did obtain this condition of heaven and they are all one, even a part of the One God.

34 [13a] And behold, it is also stated that that same Priesthood which was in the beginning of the earth will be in the end of the earth also;

35 [13b] For it is by this means, and this means only, that the people can be preserved from the jaws of death which Satan did introduce into the Holy Order of God in the beginning;

36 [13c] And thus did begin his reign of blood and horror and death in the world.

Chapter 6

1 [1a] AND now I, Moroni, would speak somewhat concerning this Holy Order which is to be built up in the end of the earth;

2 [1b] For behold, I was taken into this same Holy Order; and therefore I, like the brother of Jared, do know all the works of this Holy Order, even from the beginning to the end; for I have beheld it, and I do behold it even now.

3 [2a] And behold, I say again unto you that it was by means of the Holy Order that I and some of my people escaped the abomination,

4 [2b] Which abomination of desolation came upon my people, which abomination of desolation is always the end of a people who are turned over to the buffetings of their god, who is the god of this world, and come not unto Christ unto the overcoming of all things.

5 [3a] And ye cannot be gathered into that oneness if ye remain separate in your hearts;

6 [3b] And behold, ye will not become one in your flesh, knit together in love by a holy ordinance;

7 [3c] And if ye are not one, ye are not Mine, saith the Lord; for ye must become one in Me as I am one in the Father, for such is the Godhead.

8 [4a] And the Laws by which you become one are the Laws of union by covenant and ordinance, submitting yourselves to one another in love and service, even to the laying down of your own life on behalf of your brother or sister;

9 [4b] And unless you will do this ye are not Mine, saith the Lord; for this was the Law that I was obedient to, opening the way for you to follow, for do ye suppose that ye are different than I?

10 [5a] Behold, I am Messiah, the King of Zion, the Rock of Heaven; and do ye suppose that ye can climb up and enter in some other way than the way that I have trod?

11 [5b] Do ye suppose that ye can become one with Me by obedience to some other law?

12 [5c] Behold, I say unto you: Nay, for the gods are set there who have been obedient to my Law and to all the laws of the fathers;

13 [5d] And they are become one with each other by their obedience to these same laws, and the power is given to them to admit and assimilate or to cast aside and withhold, according to the law of the Holy Order;

14 [5e] Therefore, the Gods are set there by which ye cannot pass, worlds without end, only by obedience to law.

15 [6a] And behold, there were many, even in my day, who desired to be blessed of God, but having been blessed, were not willing to use that blessing to go forth and bless others.

16 [6b] Yea, they did retain the blessing to themselves, as though it came by their own merits, and would not themselves go forth with the blessings to bless others.

17 [6c] And for this reason they were sorely chastened, for the Holy Order could not flourish and did die out;

18 [6d] For we did know and understand that all the blessings of God did come wholly by grace,

19 [6d] And that grace that was consumed to our lusts and not given forth the same as we had received, soon vanished away as a desert spring.

20 [7a] For the power of God is only manifest by grace, and that grace cometh only by the willingness to bless and be blessed.

21 [7b] And because of our traditions, which traditions came to us from our fathers who had partaken of the fall, we were desirous of receiving, but would not give forth the same in blessing;

22 [7c] Therefore, in some, the blessing was not fruitful unto Eternal Life and did vanish away.

23 [8a] And behold, I say unto you unto whom this blessing and power hath been given for the purpose of building up the Holy Order for the last time upon the earth:

24 [8b] Behold, if ye are willing to give of your time and your substance but not of yourself, holding yourself in reserve for a precious few and not reaching out unto all who would come under your influence, behold your order will surely vanish away;

25 [8c] For herein lies the secret of the waters which flowed forth from the throne of God to water the whole earth.

26 [9a] Take heed unto yourselves, therefore, for the power unto Eternal life does only flow forth from the temple of God (which temple ye are) as you who receive the blessing go forth with joy to bless.

27 [9b] Verily I say unto you: Only as one can you establish a bastion of power against the evil day which is upon you.

28 [9c] And if you will let the waters of Eternal life flow into you to make you one, you must be willing to let them flow through you to one another, and from thence unto the whole earth.

29 [10a] Behold, where will I find my bastion of power against the enemy saith the Lord?

30 [10b] Behold, I will wait until the devourer hath wasted you away, saith the Lord, until there is nothing left of you even as in the time of Moroni, or in the time of the prophet Ether;

31 [10c] And then will you be willing to give of yourselves of that blessing which ye have received, unto the becoming one heart, one mind, and one flesh, saith the Lord.

32 [11a] And then will the waters flow freely out from under my temple again as it was in days of old, saith the Lord, and then will Jerusalem be a watered garden;

33 [11c] And then will the priesthood of heaven unite with the priesthood on the earth, for they will flow together as one.

34 [11d] And then will I have my bastion against my attacker to protect my little ones, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Chapter 7

1 [1a] AND now I, Moroni, would speak unto you concerning the name of the brother of Jared,

2 [1b] For behold, I was commanded not to write the name for it belongs to those who are partakers of that same priesthood which the brother of Jared did partake of;

3 [2a] And it denoteth all the fullness of the fathers, and whomsoever knoweth the fullness of the fathers knoweth the meaning of the name, for it cannot be written;

4 [2b] Its meaning, therefore, can only be known by those who enter into that Holy Order; and thus it is: Amen.

Chapter 8

1 [1a] AND now, behold, I would attempt to describe unto you the temple of the Holy City, for it is for the use and glorification of the twelve tribes of Israel, wherefore there are twelve temples joined together as a honey comb around the center thereof.

2 [1b] And the center hath the power of the Father therein, and from it issues forth the blessings to each of the tribes for all who will come up to keep the feast of the tabernacles.

3 [2a] And the center is the throne of God and is for the use of all who come up into the fullness of the Father,

4 [2b] For they do inherit all the power, glory, dominion, light, majesty and exaltation which belongeth to the Fathers;

5 [2c] And Ephraim, being the first born unto God, hath that blessing and is a part of that select assembly.

6 [3] And then cometh the rest of the tribes of Israel, each in its place, so that all is perfectly prepared for the blessing of the nations when the thousand years of peace is ushered in.

7 [4a] And behold, all who cometh unto God hath a place in that temple, for it is established by the covenant of redemption which is in Christ Jesus,

8 [4b] And behold, their place hath been determined by right of birth, and by the covenant whereby none will be lost except by their own choice;

9 [4c] For thus did the family of God go forth upon the earth in the beginning, and thus will they be gathered back into God again in the end; for He is Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.

10 [5] And the house of Israel hath not a place in the throne of power unless they have come up to the fathers in the flesh and are the Church of the Firstborn and have become the Self Existent One, even the source of that power.

11 [6a] *These* are they into whose hands the Father hath given all things, for they are they who are Priests *and Priestesses* and kings *and queens* who have received of His fullness and of His glory;

12 [6b] For they overcome all things and all power is given them in heaven and on the earth, for they are Christ's and Christ is God's, even as I have shown you;

13 [7a] Wherefore, they have the blessing of the Firstborn even as Christ obtained that blessing by covenant and sacrifice,

14 [7b] For they have bought it with a price and they are worthy of a far greater and eternal light of glory; and the power is in them to bless and draw into God all who will come.

15 [8a] And behold, they of the Firstborn do go forth to minister and bless each to his own tribe to bring all the House of Israel back into the kingdom of Heaven;

16 [8b] And they are a blessing to all the house of Israel, for they do push the people together from the ends of the earth.

17 [8c] And thus will the temple of God be fitly framed from the first to the last, even as it was established before the foundations of the earth were laid.

18 [9] And the building which is the temple in the New Jerusalem is like unto the family of God, for there is a place for all who will come and be sealed in by ordinance and by covenant.

19 [10a] And thus is the kingdom of heaven, the New Jerusalem taking form and shape after the order of the Temple of God and it is the bride,

20 [10b] The lamb's wife which cometh down out of heaven to take possession of the earth, even as John saw;

21 [10c] For behold the kingdom of heaven is the household of God, and the household of God is a place of perfect order and harmony, having many rooms and place for all.

22 [11] And the works of God are to order this kingdom and household and to bring it back into the harmony it once had before it fell and fled away from the presence of God, and before great Babylon grew up in the midst of the house of God.

23 [12a] And behold, this hath been the works of all the prophets and patriarchs since the beginning,

24 [12b] For they all have beheld the very things which the brother of Jared saw unto the bringing together again of that house;

25 [12c] For the consummation of the Father's works is the sealing into that Holy Order each one in its proper place in the family of God.

26 [13] And behold, all must be gathered and connected into the one great whole for the Father weepeth over any that are lost, even as He hath wept from the beginning over those who chose to leave that peace and harmony which was the Holy Order.

27 [14a] For the Holy Order of God is the temple of God, and the fathers are the pillars holding up the center thereof;

28 [14b] And thus did John measure the temple and the pillars thereof but he measured not the court without the temple, for it belongeth unto the Gentiles and they have no place in the temple until the house of Israel hath all been fitly framed:

29 [15a] But behold, the way is provided that all may come and partake of the salvation of God, for He would that all would come and partake of the waters of life freely.

30 [15b] And the way is provided that all may come who will abide the Law; for behold even those of the fallen race may come if they will abide the Law of Christ, for He stands at the door and knocks and none are forbidden.

31 [16a] For behold, we have not a place in the family of God by right of birth, but the way is provided by ordinance and adoption,

32 [16b] For He doeth that which is good unto the children of men, and He denieth none that come unto Him, black and white, bond and free, male and female;

33 [16c] For His redemption is unto all, and the law for each hath been laid down from before the foundation of the earth.

34 [17a] And woe unto those who come not up to keep the feast of tabernacles, for they are they who are without the gates of the Holy City.

35[17b] They are not mine, saith the Lord, for they belong to the god whom they have chosen, saith the Lord, and he hath sealed them his, and the testimony is bound and the Law sealed against them.

36 [18a] Take heed unto yourselves, saith the Lord, for I will sift you like chaff before the wind and those of you who will not separate yourselves from your pleasant things,

37 [18b] Whether they be friends, or wives or husbands, or houses, or horses, or chariots, or vineyards, or groves, or cattle, or wines, or ointments, or all the workmanship of your hands;

38 [18c] Behold, they are separated from you already; for all shall be shaken and destroyed save the tabernacle of my house which I am building, saith the Lord.

39 [19a] And woe unto those who have been cut off, root and branch, for the root is Jesus Christ, the Lion of the Tribe of Judah, and the Tribe of Joseph upon whom is the lineage of the priesthood, and those who are with Him have claim on that same lineage;

40 [19b] For behold though they may come through many tribes as seen by John on Mt. Zion, and they are of the lineage of the birthright;

41 [19c] For so it is in the covenant of the fathers, and all must be connected into the root and become a righteous branch of the house of God.

42 [20a] And if they are cut off from the root and also have no branches, they have no part in the house of God, for all must be fitly framed into the one great whole, which whole is the Temple of God.

43 [21b] And if you are not a part of the temple, then are you without the temple, and also without the Holy City, wherein John did see the liars and abusers, and the false prophets and those who attempted to enter in and climb up some other way.

44 [21a] Behold, saith the Lord, did I not say unto you with my own mouth that I am that prophet like unto Moses, and it shall come to pass that every soul who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people?

45 [21b] And what people will ye be cut off from if it be not my people who are the house of Israel.

46 [21c] And how will ye be among my people if ye gather not out of the nations and come not up unto my Holy Mountain to keep the feast of tabernacles?

47 [21d] For behold, ye must be sealed into my family and into my temple or be cut off from among my people, saith the Lord.

Chapter 9

1 [1a] AND first cometh the Firstborn, and they are the first fruits unto God out of every nation, kindred, tongue and people;

2 [1b] And they are they of whom I spoke, for they are they who did bear the heat of the day, who did overcome all things and by overcoming have obtained all the fullness of the fathers;

3 [1c] And they are they into whose hands the Father hath given all things, for they are my heirs, even the sons of Ahman.

4 [2a] And behold there are none greater, for they did come up into my Holy Mountain and have become the pillars in my temple;

5 [2b] And they are they who are one of a city and two of a family, whom I did bring unto my fullness and into my Godhead.

6 [2c] And they are mine, saith the Lord, for they are one with me even as I am one with my Father.

7 [2d] And all power is given them in heaven and on earth, for nothing can detain them in doing my work saith the Lord.

8 [3a] And I will drink of the fruit of the vine with them at Adam On Diaham, for the power of Ahman doth flow down into them unto the fulfilling of all the blessings of the fathers upon their heads.

9 [3b] And their scepter will be an unchangeable scepter of light and truth, and they will rule the nations with a rod of iron;

10 [3c] And they shall be clothed with light for a covering and their mouth shall utter eternal words, for out of their mouth goeth a two-edged sword.

11 [4a] And they shall thresh the nations by the word of my power, saith the Lord; and they will make bare the arm of the Lord in the eyes of all nations,

12 [4b] For it shall come to pass that kings shall shut their mouths at them, for that which has not been told them shall they see and that which they have not heard shall they consider.

13 [4c] For they are my saviors upon Mt. Zion saith the Lord; and they shall roar like young lions and take hold of the pray and carry away safe, and none can deliver.

14 [5] For behold the words of Isaiah shall all be fulfilled, for they shall bring all you brethren to make an offering unto the Lord out of all nations upon horses, and in chariots, and in litters, and upon

mules, and upon swift beasts, to my Holy Mountain, Jerusalem, saith the Lord.

15 [6a] And then shall be fulfilled that which I spake unto you when I sojourned with you in the flesh, that in that night two shall be grinding together and the one shall be taken and the other left, and two shall be in the field, the one taken and the other left.

16 [6b] For thus will my savior on Mt. Zion gather into my Holy Mountain all the house of Israel, each family and each tribe in its proper place; and then will my bride be adorned and the marriage supper ready.

17 [7a] And it shall come to pass that all flesh shall come to worship before me, saith the Lord.

18 [7b] And the devil shall have full control in his dominion, and he will rule and reign with blood and horror amongst those whom he has sealed his;

19 [7c] And their end is naught but destruction and death, for of such have they chosen;

20 [8] But my people will dwell safely in my tabernacle and I will be their God and they will be my people.

21 [9a] And these things I did show mine apostles when we stood upon the Mount and Elijah and Moses did come holding their keys of power to give to mine apostles;

22 [9b] For the work cannot be accomplished without the keys being given, that all things might be done in order.

23 [9c] And behold, it must be Moses and Elijah who accomplish this work, for they do hold the keys of power unto the bringing in of all the house of Israel,

24 [9d] For they are my two witnesses spoken of by John, and they will hold this power until all my house is gathered back and sealed into their place and my temple fully formed as it was in the days of old.

25 [10] And it is the power to bind up the Law and seal up the testimony and make all things ready for my coming, even until all who will come unto my house have come and my people are fully sanctified and caught up into my tabernacle.

26 [11a] And behold, Moses holdeth the keys of the gathering of my people because it was he who was my faithful witness;

27 [11b] Nevertheless, when my people sinned against me and my indignation was kindled against them, he stood between me and them, saith the Lord,

28 [11c] And I did covenant with Him to save my people until the end of time when they are sufficiently strong to take hold of the covenant of redemption which is in Christ Jesus.

29 [12] And behold, those who take hold of the covenant of redemption will be gathered into my tabernacle and not cut off from amongst my people, even as I promised Moses when he stood before me and pleaded before my face for all the house of Israel;

30 [13a] Therefore, he is the mediator of the old covenant, even the covenant of the preparatory gospel;

31 [13b] But behold, his mediation cannot preserve them forever, for the justice of God cannot forever be denied,

32 [13c] And all must enter in at the gate, which gate is the first principles and ordinances of the Gospel, even as you know.

33 [14a] But behold that is not all, for they cannot enter back into my temple without being sealed into it by the spirit and the power of Elijah,

34 [14b] For it is he that held this power from days of old and so will he until all is finished; for my house is a house of order and not a house of confusion, saith the Lord.

35 [15a] And except Elijah come and plant this spirit and power in the hearts of the people, they will not gather,

36 [15b] For it is the love of God which draweth all men together and bindeth their hearts as one under my ensign;

37 [16a] Nevertheless, all who are my faithful witnesses do bear this binding power and do minister in these two covenants unto the fulfilling of all my words and the preparing of my House, saith the Lord.

38 [16b] And they do stand on either side of me, over the whole earth as they empty the golden oil out of themselves, for they are the two anointed ones that stand before the Lord of the whole earth.

39 [17a] And they are my saviors on Mt. Zion for they are come unto thee, O Jerusalem, and I have sent them unto thee;

40 [17b] They shall be sorry for thee, for thy desolation and destruction, and the famine and the sword, and they will comfort thee, for all thy sons are vanished save these two;

41 [17c] They lie at the head of all the streets, as a wild bull in a net, they are full of the fury of the Lord, the rebuke of thy God, and they will come unto thee in thy desolation and bring thee forth into my Holy Mount.

42 [18a] Hear, O Jerusalem! Hear the Word of the Lord, and open up your hearts to receive and gather ye into my House that I may seal you mine;
43 [18b] For I have bought you with a price and claim you and married you, and ye are mine, saith the Lord.

Chapter 10

I, (Hava B.) was out under the clothes lines contemplating the terrible events of this day—The police raid and the children being taken away at gunpoint and all, and I was in deep communion with Moroni over it when I saw Him for the first time through my middle eye. I asked Him what we were doing wrong that such a calamity had come upon us, and in one flash he showed me the calamity which had struck his nation. Seeing that, I could see how it will be here.

1 [1a] BEHOLD, these things in their smallest, yea, even in their detail are but a forecast of that which is to come,
2 [1b] For behold nation shall rise against nation until there is no safe place to hide, for you will hide in the clefts of the rocks and in your holes in the ground, and in your tunnels under your houses, even as I did,
3 [1c] And you will be driven and hunted, and you will be hungry and sick and your little ones will fall by the sword,
4 [1d] For you will of necessity kill or be killed, until there will be none left save a remnant, one here and two there to stagger and stumble,
5 [1e] For the indignation of God will be poured out without mixture in every nation until the consumption decreed will make a full end of all nations and governments.
6 [2a] For the power of Godliness which holdeth off the destroyer is in the individual
7 [2b] And when each one does suffer *themselves* to be overcome so that there can be no integrity which bindeth the people together into lawful governments to protect the innocent ones, the destroyer is unleashed, and none but the power of God can stay his hand;
8 [3] Therefore, it will be with you like unto us, or the Jaredite nation, or any nation who suffers these evil combinations to get above them.

9 [4a] And behold, he is already unleashed, and these evil combinations are everywhere loosed, except you learn to stand in holy places and be not moved.

10 [4b] Ye cannot see them now, for there is yet integrity of individuals which holdeth them away.

11 [4c] And the Lord suffereth it to be so for yet a little season until your little and helpless ones are sealed up into the protection they need against the enemy;

12 [4d] For behold, this is the land of Joseph, and I have set my seal upon it, and it receiveth the promises of the fathers unto the elect seed.

13 [4e] But behold, the devourer cometh as a whirlwind and claimeth his own and none who are separate and single and have not the protection of the fathers can stand;

14 [4f] For did not our father, Nephi, behold all things even unto the last day? And did not my father write them? And do ye not have them before you?

15 [5a] Wherefore he saith: Blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and power of the Holy Ghost;

16 [5b] And if they endure unto the end, they shall be lifted up at the last day.

17 [6a] And he saw the great mother of abominations gather together multitudes upon the face of all the earth, among all the nations of the Gentiles to fight against the Lamb of God.

18 [6b] And the power of the Lamb of God descended upon the Saints of the Church of the Lamb and upon the covenant people of the Lord who were scattered upon all the face of the earth, and they were armed with righteousness and the power of God in great glory.

19 [7a] And now I say unto you, O ye nations, that the power of the Lamb of God is in the covenant of the fathers;

20 [7b] And the work of the fathers cannot commence in power unless the fathers do descend to bring you into oneness with them;

21 [7c] And they cannot descend, unless your righteousness bring them down to you, for they are bound by Law to leave your free agency inviolate;

22 [7d] And without the protection of the Fathers ye cannot stand alone, for ye are caught in the devourer's net and he hath bound you and taken you and sealed you his.

23 [8a] Wherefore, you need the sealing power of Elijah who is my faithful witness to bind you up and seal you against the evil day.

24 [8b] And this power cometh not in standing alone, for ye can see that in my nation, that as long as we attempted to stand alone, even in the righteousness of the covenant of the Son of God, we were overcome, and the forces of the evil one did prevail and lay waste;

25 [9a] For did I not say unto you and cause it to be written among you the words of Malachi, that I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord;

26 [9b] And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse?

27 [10a] And now behold, if ye children who are on the earth turn not your hearts to the Fathers in heaven, how can their power come down from heaven to protect you and your little ones from the devourer which is loosed upon you?

28 [10b] Behold, you will be wasted, and the desolating sickness will pass over you morning by morning until there be none left upon the land;

29 [10c] For the whole earth is smitten with a curse, and none can save you except it be the power of the Fathers to seal you up.

Chapter 11

1 [1a] AND now I, Moroni, would write somewhat of the rites by which ye may become one, for behold they are many,

2 [1b] But I will give them unto you to draw you together that ye might become as we are, for behold it is in this oneness that we are blessed and have the power to overcome all things.

3 [2a] And as the brother of Jared did see the family of God go forth upon the earth, he did perceive that they had been one for generations of time before;

4 [2b] For their attempts to unite in love had begun by oath and covenant with the fathers before them in their Holy rites in their ages past;

5 [2c] And they did perform these rites, believing in the God of their salvation for the purpose of drawing them together eternally.

6 [2d] And because they were willing to do this by oath and covenant, going through the performance of union until the love of God did bind them together eternally,

7 [2e] For they did subject the flesh to the will of the Fathers until they were one with the fathers who had gone ahead in the generations before them.

8 [3a] And their rites did work together in the uniting of their flesh to the will and purposes and oneness of the fathers, and did infuse their flesh with light and holiness (Ra-shin[a]) which cometh from the spirit of the fathers;

9 [3b] For just as the water of life flows forth from the throne of God to water the whole earth, so is the infusion of light and truth carried through the fluids of life to leave a blessing in all they touch.

10 [4a] Verily, God is glorified therein, for He experiences His glory in His expending and aliveness,

11 [4b] And we are glorified as we open up our eyes and mouth and heart to receive of that glory.

12 [4c] And the Shulemnah are those who are the messengers of light and have received in their flesh the name of God;

13 [4d] And He has placed His name upon them and sent them forth to bear His name in their flesh unto all who will open their mouth to receive the path, or, being interpreted, power of God;

14 [4e] For the path is only received by those who are willing to receive and be blessed and by this means come forth in that holiness which is the oneness of the Godhead.

15 [5a] And as the Holy Ones went forth upon the earth they did bless all that come under their influence for they were filled with the Ra-shin of the fathers, and under their dominion the earth was a watered garden;

16 [5b] But that evil one who did receive his dominion and power by covenant with Cain and his sons, did begin to replace Ra-shin with darkness and decay so there was no glory generated in their rites; only the ravishment of debauchery.

17 [5c] And so they were commanded by God to cease and their Holy rites were lost unto them.

18 [6a] And as the sons of Cain went over into the land of Nod which was east of Eden and continued their rites of debauchery, the earth was no longer a watered garden;

19 [6b] For darkness did replace the light, the holiness of God being perverted into corruption, and hatred instead of love, each man hating she who had lain in his bosom and each woman hating he who had defiled her, for the love of all waxed cold;

20 [6c] And, thus, did Enoch see that the earth did groan under the wickedness which had gone forth upon her face, and Enoch groaned with her, and wept and refused to be comforted.

21 [7a] And as the holy ones left the earth one by one because of the evil which had gone forth upon its face, the darkness prevailed upon the whole earth,

22 [7b] And Satan, who is Zaiton[b], the father of all that which is opposite to the Ra-shin of God, did take possession of everything on the face of the earth, and claim it as his own, and put his seal upon it.

23 [7c] And he had a great chain in his hand and he looked up and laughed, for all which the fathers had created in the beginning and declared to be good was now defiled so that the fathers would not own it anymore;

24 [7d] And Zaiton's defilement and death filled the whole earth and there was no holy place, save where the Sons of God did remain in the Holy Order of God.

25 [8a] And now I would not have you believe that these holy ordinances as you know them did begin all at once with the first fathers;

26 [8b] For they were a holy and sanctified people as they went forth upon the earth; and they lived in a glorified place, and all their actions were holy, for it was the land of their creation.

27 [8c] And as they went forth upon the land that they had created, they saw that it was good,

28 [8d] For there was no defilement upon the face of the land which they had created, it being the footstool of the throne of God;

29 [9] Therefore, all their works were a holy ordinance, and they need not have a temple or a holy ordinance to depict, as we do, the perfection of the Gods;

30 [10a] For behold, all the land was an holy temple, it being the abode of God;

31 [10b] And all their performances were in holiness unto God for, behold, doth God need an holy ordinance to show himself how to be God?

32 [10c] Behold, I say unto you: Nay, for ordinances are for the purpose of showing forth the power of God to those who are moving toward godliness;

33 [11a] Therefore, when Adam and Eve, our first parents and the first of many, did beget children;

34 [11b] And the family of God did go forth upon the earth, and the defilement of Zaiton did begin to creep into the children of God so that they knew not anymore the holiness of their fathers,

35 [11c] The holy rites were instituted as an enactment depicting the way back to the godliness of the first parents.

36 [12a] And even the earth, groaning under the defilement which was beginning to go forth upon its face, could no longer respond with the glory it once knew and brought forth.

37 [12b] Instead of a watered garden, thorns and thistles and all sorts of noxious weeds sprang forth to afflict and torment mankind.

38 [13a] Behold, it was then that temples were built wherein the sons *and daughters* of God could enter,

39 [13b] Closing out the defilement of the lone and dreary world from whence they came and enacting by an holy ordinance their straight and narrow path back to the perfection of the ancient order, and showing forth the holiness of the fathers.

40 [14a] But behold, in process of time, even the temples and the holy rites were perverted and defiled due to the inroads of Cain and his descendants into the Holy Order of God;

41 [14b] For the daughters of the sons of God did sell their birthright in mingling with and marrying the sons of men, and there was no place clean to practice their holy rites; therefore, God took them away.

42 [14c] The holy *people* were all one by one taken away and the Holy Order, along with the holy rites, were lost to them.

43 [15a] And the Ra-shin, which anointed the children of light, withdrew, leaving them to grope in the darkness of their fallen clay.

44 [15b] How art thou fallen, O mortal ones? And when is the day of thy deliverance?

45 [15c] Behold, when ye shall cease to run to and fro, worshiping that which ye can see and feel and touch, and begin to put your trust in the God who bought you back from the evil one;

46 [15d] Yea, when ye shall depart out of that darkness which ye call light, and yield your heart to that infusion of light which cometh to you from the sanctified ones,

47 [15e] Then will your soul rejoice and the fire of glory rekindle and refresh you from the death brought on you from your fathers.

48 [16a] Awake and arise, O Jerusalem! Put on the beautiful garments and return to the glory which was lost to thee.

49 [16b] Awake! Sit down, O daughter of Zion, for thou hast drunk the cup of trembling wrung out, and thy king is in thee and thy soul is replenished from the God of thy salvation.

51 [16c] Rejoice, O Tamar, for they who rejoiced not in thee have lost thee to another; for the Law is written in the Ra-shin of Being and those who obey not the Law receive not the blessing.

***Notes**: a. Ra-shin (רש): Ra = Resh, head or beginning. Shin = Shin, sharpness like fire, a flame. This term means "first light" or "original flame."*

b. Zaiton: According to Writings of Moroni 14:15 this is another name for the adversary Cain, Able's twin brother. The term "Zaiton" is Arabic and Aramaic for "olive" or "olive tree." Olives are traditionally symbols of peace, so why is Zainton, representing evil in the book, called "Olive tree?" Olive plants can be considered weeds in certain contexts. Wild or feral olives, particularly the African olive and Russian olive, can spread aggressively and become invasive, outcompeting native vegetation and disrupting ecosystems. They can spread rapidly through bird-dispersed seeds and create dense thickets, impacting biodiversity and potentially altering habitats. Invasive olive species can outcompete native plants for resources like sunlight, water, and nutrients, leading to a decline in native plant populations. The spread of invasive olives can disrupt natural ecosystems by altering vegetation composition, potentially affecting wildlife habitats and food sources. For example, other plants die, and rabbits have nothing to eat. Fewer rabbits mean the fox has nothing to eat. This invasive olive tree destroys life. Controlling invasive olives can be challenging, often requiring a combination of manual removal and ongoing monitoring to prevent regrowth and further spread. Take this information and look at Zenos' parable of the tame and wild olive trees in the garden. They must be constantly pruned, grafted, and monitored. It should also be noted that Zaiton is feminine, and seems to be a place not a person in other parts of the text. It may be that Zaiton is also the anti-Eden.

Chapter 12

1 [1a] AND now, behold, when our father, Adam, did hold His first council at Adam On Diaham, he did lean upon his staff and prophecy whatsoever should befall his children unto the latest generation.

2 [1b] And he did institute the ordinances to be kept wherever there were holy men *and women* to fulfill them in righteousness;

3 [1c] For he saw that the holy ones would depart and the children of the elect seed would be scattered upon all the face of the earth,

4 [1d] And without the ordinances pointing their minds back to the holiness of their fathers, they would be lost forever.

5 [2a] And the Holy Order was kept and came down through Noah and his sons;

6 [2b] For the order of this priesthood was established in the beginning to be confirmed from father to son *and mother to daughter* so

that there would be an unbroken chain connecting the children to the fathers unto the last generation.

7 [2c] And thus the fathers did watch over their children, and did confirm all things unto them by an holy ordinance;

8 [2d] And by this means are they gathered back into the temple at Adam On Diaham, which temple is the abode of the Godhead.

9 [3a] And it must needs include all things pertaining to our first fathers: their pattern of living, which bringeth life, light, joy, peace, and exaltation;

10 [3b] The opposite of which is Zaiton, which rose up and filled the whole earth in the beginning and which does perpetuate itself upon the footstool of God to this day.

11 [3c] And behold, Zaiton will never bring[a] the children of the chosen seed back into Adam On Diaham unless they keep the holy ordinances pertaining thereunto, for they are the means ordained by our father Adam to bring us back into the holy life.

12 [4a] And Adam, leaning upon his staff, for he was bowed down with age, saw the children of the chosen seed being lost in Zaiton;

13 [4b] For there was no hope for them except through the atonement of Christ and the ordinances pointing their way back into the Holy Order of God.

14 [5a] And our father, Adam, and all those who kept the Holy Order did swear in their bosom, as they departed from Zaiton,

15 [5b] To watch over its inhabitants, to minister to those who were lost therein and bring them back to that light, truth, joy, glory, peace, love, and exaltation which was in the beginning before its defilement.

16 [5c] And they wept much over their children, saying:

17 [6a] Behold, what more could we have done for our children? For did we not provide them with every needful thing? Did we not bless them with every blessing of heaven and earth?

18 [6b] And did we not provide a Savior for them when they erred, whereby they could come back into our presence and with us enjoy everything which pertaineth to life and exaltation?

19 [6c] And did that Savior not give Himself a ransom for them that they might not have to suffer and pay the bitter price unto death?

20 [6d] And did the Savior not buy them to make them His purchased possessions forever?

21 [6e] And behold, that Satan who hath deceived them and holdeth a veil over their eyes while he forces them to drink the dregs of a bitter

cup rung out, hath taken possession of their hearts even unto this day;

22 [6f] For they have chosen him, and they are without affection, and they hate their own blood.

23 [7a] Thus did our fathers weep and prophecy over their children as they left them to their own devices,

24 [7b] Wherein they called good evil and evil good and worshiped the God of darkness and defilement, knowing no more the God who created them and gave them life.

25 [8a] And as our fathers did weep and leave Zaiton, they left a blessing and promise to it, that through the atonement of Christ the bands of Zaiton would at last be loosed;

26 [8b] And when they were loosed, that the fathers would come again to take possession of Zaiton and make it again a watered garden,

27 [8c] And that it would no longer be the footstool of their throne but it would become a part of the throne itself, and that all things would become holy and new.

28 [9a] Alleluia, it is finished! Alleluia! Zaiton's hour is finished! The long awaited time is come for the fulfillment of the promised blessings! And thou wilt come again, O God, upon the earth! Alleluia!

29 [9b] The temple of the tabernacle of the testimony is opened and thy glory doth shine forth, O God!

30 [9c] The bands are loosed, and thy doth shine forth, and the ark of the covenant is no longer seen in heaven but hath come forth again upon the earth.

31 [10a] Alleluia! Salvation, and glory, and honor, and power unto the Lord our God! For Zion hath prevailed and adorned herself and all things are ready.

32 [10b] Look up, look up, O Zion! For the Lord, thy Husband, thy King, is in thy midst.

33 [10c] The earth hath travailed and brought forth her strength, and the Mountain of the Lord's House is established and hath come forth out of every nation, kindred, tongue, and people and there is no more weeping, for all tears are done away! Amen!

34 [11a] And our father, Adam, did prophecy the unfolding of the dominion of Zaiton and the Holy Order going back into the heavens until there were none left;

35 [11b] Only Angels were sent out of heaven, wherever there was a man to receive this priesthood to dispense it again upon the earth, thus providing the children of the earth with a connection to the fathers in heaven;

36 [11c] For verily, that priesthood is the source of life to the parched desert of Zaiton, and without that connection unto the fathers, there is no flow of the waters out from under the temple;

37 [11d] And the parched earth can bring forth nothing but thorns and thistles, and creatures as such as went forth in the plagues upon Egypt.

38 [12a] And father Adam did see that in every dispensation of the Priesthood of the fathers[b], there were some who forsook Zaiton and did obtain heaven and were taken out;

39 [12b] For they had a firmness of mind in every form of Godliness until they did become one with the fathers,

40 [12c] And these are the Shulemnah, and they watch over Zaiton to perform the work of the fathers unto this day.

41 [13a] And this was the hope of every true prophet who ever testified of Jesus Christ; for their bowels did yearn over their people who were in the bands of Satan's power.

42 [13b] And they all did eat of the little book spoken of by John, and it was in their mouth sweet as honey,

43 [13c] For of such is the hope of Israel, and the love of God for His people; and it is in their belly bitter;

44 [13d] For the love of God which is in Christ Jesus would gather them as a hen gathereth her chicks under her wings, but they have not come unto this day.

45 [14a] O Israel, thou that stoneth the prophets, these two sons are come unto thee;

46 [14b] They are sorry for thee, thy desolation and destruction, and the famine, and the sword, and they would comfort thee and bring thee out of thy desolation;

47 [14c] For the heavens weep over thee and their bowels yearn over thee, and they refuse to be comforted until thou art gathered in.

48 [14d] O Jerusalem, throw off the garments of your debauchery and your defilement,

49 [14e] For ye know not that the god whom ye worship is the god of death, even Zaiton, who took hold of the children of God in the beginning and holds them and their children unto this day;

50 [14f] For John did see Him and declare Him unto you and ye believed not the words of John, for Zaiton hath deceived you into believing that the beast and his mark is not in you and that you do worship the true God of heaven.

51 [15a] But behold I say unto you: Nay, O children of Zaiton, ye do worship the beast; and his mark, and the number of his name is upon you, even all;

52 [15b] For his mark and the number of his name is the number of fallen man and his name has been upon you since the children of God left the earth in the beginning.

53 [15c] And John did declare it unto you in great plainness, for all who dwell upon the earth do worship Him and he causeth all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond to receive his mark;

54 [15d] And none are exempt save these whose names are written in the Lamb's Book of Life.

55 [15e] And behold your names are not written in the Lamb's Book of Life unless the fathers have claimed you and sealed you in and connected you unto themselves; and thus it is, Amen.

56 [16a] And all these things did our father, Adam, see and prophecy as he gave his last blessing unto the earth,

57 [16b] And they are all written in the Book of Enoch; and I do declare unto you the Book of Enoch, and if ye will receive it, I will one by one open the seals.

***Notes**: a. Referring to Satan releasing captive souls.*
b. Priesthood of the fathers: the Patriarchal and Matriarchal Priesthood. See Doctrines of the Saints 119:12-13, 26

Chapter 13

1 [1a] AND now behold, even in the days of my faithful witness Paul, there were those who did gather together, hoping for my coming;

2 [1b] And Paul did understand this mystery and did declare it unto them in words of plainness, but because of the power of Zaiton over the minds of the people, there were few who understood;

3 [1c] And behold they understood it not unto this day; for the seals of the mark of Zaiton remain upon them and they know not the inner meaning of this mystery.

4 [2a] For behold, I cannot come unto my people until the seal of the Fathers is placed upon them, for they would be wasted at my coming;

5 [2b] For they know not that they have the seal of Zaiton upon themselves and not the seal of the true fathers.

6 [3a] And my faithful witness, Paul, did warn them to let no man deceive them, for I could not come again until the man of sin was revealed—

7 [3b] The son of perdition, who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshiped as God—

8 [3c] For he sitteth in the temple of God (which temple ye are) and is worshiped by you as God.

9 [3d] And ye know not the mystery of his iniquity that worketh in you to deceive you.

10 [4a] For ye must recognize that the man of sin is in you and hath his mark upon you; then will that man of sin be revealed,

11 [4b] For ye are the children of the fathers and of the elect seed and ye were chosen from the beginning,

12 [4c] But Zaiton hath claimed you and put his mark upon you except that ye are redeemed through the atonement of Jesus Christ;

13 [4d] And in Him hath the fathers called you unto salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the Truth.

14 [4e] And the mystery of iniquity cannot be revealed until you receive the names of the fathers, and only then will the true Zaiton be revealed unto you; he who sitteth in the temple of God and declareth himself to be God.

15 [4f] And only then will you know the true God from the false, so that you worship no more the image of the beast and bear the mark of his name.

16 [4g] And then will you see me, and then will my coming be accomplished.

17 [5a] And behold my son John did write all things pertaining to my coming;

18 [5b] Ye know them not for ye receive them not, neither do ye receive me—for behold, I stand at the door and knock and make all things manifest.

19 [6a] And behold, as they became manifest, the Book of Enoch is become manifest, for all these things are ordained unto you and are after the order of the covenant which the Lord made with Enoch,

20 [6b] And they are delivered unto you by the calling of my own voice, according to my own will, unto as many of you as believe on my name and keep my holy ordinances.

21 [6c] Go forth, O man, who have been sold unto the death of the mortal clay, receive the infusion of light that awaits you,

22 [6d] Receive the covenant of Enoch and of Adam, your father, that ye might be gathered into your fathers and become one on the land of the footstool of God.

23 [6e] Lift up the arms that hang down, strengthen the feeble knees, receive and believe the Ra-shin of Enoch and let it be written upon your forehead and in your inward parts;

24 [7a] For behold, the Book of Enoch contains a revelation of God from the beginning unto the end, and that revelation is in you, written in your mortal clay.

25 [7b] Ye must have an infusion of light while the death of Zaiton, his mark and his name, is in you;

26 [8a] Therefore, O ye little ones, crucify upon my cross the death that is in you,

27 [8b] That all things might work together to bring you to the times of refreshing, which only cometh after the cross, wherein you yield your heart unto God.

28 [8c] Think not that because ye have the first fruits of the Spirit, ye have God,

29 [8d] For behold, until ye have the power over death which is in the name of the fathers, ye have yet the mark of Zaiton which claimeth you.

30 [9a] The Book of Enoch is therefore a closed book unto you, as is the Book of John;

31 [9b] For it is even as I told you through my son John, that only the Lion of the tribe of Judah can open the seals.

32 [9c] And, thus, it is, even with mine ordinances also; for behold, I am able to do mine own work, and my work is a revelation of myself and of the fathers from Alpha to Omega.

33 [10a] And prophecy which is in the Book of Enoch doth manifest the true God, and doth draw you into the oneness of the fathers by which ye may be gathered into the one great whole.

34 [10b] And then are ye fully formed back into the temple of God from whence ye came out of in the beginning; and then have ye the protection of the fathers against the dissolution of Zaiton,

35 [10c] Of such was the blessing upon the children that was left by the fathers as they went back into the heavens and prophesied that they would come again upon the earth in the dispensation of the fullness of times to bring about the restitution of that which was in the beginning.

36 [11a] These things have I, Moroni, given you that ye might understand the Priesthood of the fathers as it went forth upon the

earth in the beginning, that ye might know and understand the prophecy of Adam at the first Adam On Diaham;

37 [11b] And knowing how the powers of Zaiton grew up in the beginning, ye might understand how to come back into Adam On Diaham once again;

38 [11c] For the restitution of the Priesthood of God must re-establish that Holy Order which was lost so that the fathers may come again upon the earth;

39 [11d] For the world of Zaiton waxeth old in corruption like a garment and must vanish away, and the footstool remaineth sanctified and cleansed from all sin.

40 [12a] And ye must subject yourselves unto the Father even as Jesus did subject the flesh to the will of the Father;

41 [12b] And thus does the flesh become subject to the Spirit, or the Son to the Father, crucified and slain, the death that is in you, which ye inherited from your fathers, who did follow and live according to Zaiton instead of the Holy Order of God;

42 [13a] Therefore, O ye sons of Zaiton, follow the path that Jesus trod, and subject your flesh even unto the death of the cross,

43 [13b] And let the will of your flesh be swallowed up in the will of the Father; that ye may be loosed from the bands with which Zaiton doth hold you.

44 [13c] Yea, let the death that is in your mortal clay be fixed to the cross;

45 [13d] Let the nail be fastened in the sure place and then shall it be removed and cut down and fall, and the burden that was upon it shall be cut off saith the Lord: Amen.

Chapter 14

1 [1a] AND the brother of Jared did see the beginning of the family of God upon the earth, and he saw Zaiton's dominion grow up beside the family of God;

2 [1b] For behold the family of God is a patriarchal order which is perfect harmony, for God is its head, and it belongeth to the oneness of the Godhead;

3 [1c] And whosoever loved not the God of heaven did separate themselves from the Order and did follow Cain over into the land of Nod;

4 [1d] And they did introduce all manner of abominations which were contrary to the Holy Order of God.

5 [2a] And one such abomination was a system of weights and measures which system had no place in God's Holy Order; for behold, the earth is the Lord's and the fullness thereof;

6 [2b] And the fullness thereof must not be measured unto man for a penny, for it belongeth not unto mankind, but unto God;

7 [2c] And whomsoever measures it out unto his fellow offends the God whose it is; verily, *they* cannot be a partaker in God's abundance if *they* measures and sells of that abundance to *thier* fellow beings.

8 [3a] And thus did Zaiton grow up east of Eden,

9 [3b] For Eden was where the Holy Order of God lived; and the Laws that pertained unto the oneness of God's order were violated in Nod,

10 [3c] For all manner of sin was introduced and all such things are an abomination to God's Holy Order; behold they are too numerous, indeed, to mention.

11 [3d] But ye are born into Zaiton and they are all about you, and ye must forsake them if ye will bring back again the harmony that was lost from God's Holy Order.

12 [4a] Behold, Eden was a place of perfect peace and harmony which existed because of all its people adhering strictly to the laws of oneness and union which produced that peace and hamony;

13 [4b] For as I told you before (and ye did not receive it then but you must receive it now),

14 [4c] Iton is a condition of joy, peace, love, light, truth, and exaltation which belongeth to the gods who adhered in their daily walk to those laws which produced Iton;

15 [4d] And Satan (who is Cain and his name was changed to Zaiton) perverted those laws and principles in the hearts of the Sons of God,

16 [4e] And they followed Cain into the land of Nod and brought on the condition of Za-Iton which is opposite to the Edenic state;

17 [4f] Thus, Zaiton (never Eden) arose side by side with Eden and perpetuated itself upon the fall of the whole earth, causing the Holy Ones to leave the earth;

18 [4f] And the garden of Eden disappeared because the Laws and order which produced the Edenic state were no longer lived.

19 [5] And my beloved John did describe these things that grew up in Zaiton, saying: A measure of wheat for a penny and three measures of barley for a penny and see thou hurt not the oil and the wine.

20 [6] And ye must forsake these things if ye are to return to Eden; for ye inherited them from your fathers and they belong to Zaiton and have not a place in the Edenic state.

21 [7a] Forsake those things, O ye little ones, for only in the doing so can ye bring again that Edenic state which was lost unto you.

22 [7b] And it is for this reason that I have given you the laws of consecration and the united order wherein ye do covenant with one another to bare each other's burdens, and to suffer deprivation with one another until ye do reverse the situation which grew up in Zaiton.

23 [7c] Can ye not see that the abundance which was the Edenic state was because God is the source of all goodness and life and that abundance and life sprang forth in Eden because the Sons of God did give freely of themselves and their substance, withholding nothing from one another?

24 [8a] And, therefore, the earth withheld nothing from man; for man was the Lord of Creation and all created things responded with gladness for the joy of their Lord;

25 [8b] But when the Sons of God did separate themselves from the Holy Order of God and did withhold, the abundance ceased;

26 [8c] And the earth, responding to the law mankind did subject it to, did cease to bring forth abundantly and it did groan, as did all lower forms of life, under the curse that went forth upon its face.

27 [9] O ye Sons of God, how long will ye choose to remain in Zaiton's dominion? How long will ye serve and struggle in bondage to the laws of a fallen and cursed order?

28 [10a] Behold, the way is prepared and the pathway marked; behold, your Lord and your God did die for you to lift you out of the bondage that ye were born into.

29 [10b] Yea, I say unto you that your Lord and your God did suffer upon the cross for you to lift you out of all the forms of death that you did inherit from your fathers.

30 [10c] Behold will ye choose death over life? Will ye choose bondage rather than freedom?

31 [10d] Will ye everlastingly remain in that order of things which will perpetuate Satan's dominion and power over you?

32[11a] Behold, I speak to those of you who have started to come unto Christ and begun to see that He is the Way, the Truth, and the Life.

33 [11b] Come ye all the way! Come ye into the fullness of the laws which did cause Eden to be a watered garden and the earth to spring forth abundantly for the joy of its God!

34 [12a] Come, O ye little ones who have partaken of the first fruits of redemption, which are the beginnings of the Law of Christ;

35 [12b] For behold, the Law of Christ, if ye will obey it in its fullness, will bring you all the way back into Eden from whence your fathers left, and to which you will never return unless you abide by the laws which will bring you back.

36 [12c] And behold, those Laws are not hard, for Satan hath deceived you into thinking that they are hard; therefore, ye receive not the grace that would make them easy;

37 [12d] For behold, Christ hath overcome all the deaths that came into the world by Zaiton in order that ye might receive the grace that the tables might be turned to return you to that Edenic condition.

38 [13a] Behold, if ye will let go of the false security which holdeth you in Zaiton and learn to walk by faith in Jesus Christ, even as I, Moroni, and some few of my people did, ye shall be sustained;

39 [13b] And behold, we did not learn it until our world around us had been totally shaken and destroyed,

40 [13c] For we knew not the full power of redemption which was in Christ Jesus until we had been decimated as a nation under Satan's power;

41 [13d] And only then did we abide the laws which gave us the grace to come up to a higher order of things so that we could be preserved upon the land which was once Eden, but had turned and become Zaiton by the corruption of God's Holy Laws.

42 [14a] And now, O ye little ones who are striving towards God's Holy Order: receive in your hearts the grace that will make it easy to live the law of Christ.

43 [14b] In all humility, and forgiveness, and lowliness of heart receive the grace that will help you to abide those laws;

44 [14c] For behold they are the laws of celestial plural marriage with all that it entails, leaving off not one jot or one tittle what will refine you in the fire.

45 [15a] And behold, ye are given the laws of consecration and the united order whereby ye do forsake all the false security of your fallen condition and throw yourselves totally on the abundance of God's grace.

46 [15b] And only then can you reverse the conditions which grew up by disobedience to the Laws of God's Holy Order.

47 [15c] Only then will the mountains flow down with new wine and the earth spring forth abundantly for your sakes.

48 [15d] Only then will the bonds of Zaiton be broken to bring you again into the Edenic state.

48 [15e] Only then will you receive the full redemption that is in Christ Jesus to lift you up into the order of the Gods, which ye call exaltation.

Chapter 15

1 [1a] O ye little ones, look to the rock from which ye are hewn and look to the hole of the pit from whence ye are digged.

2 [1b] Look to Abraham your father and to Sarah your mother who did establish God's Holy Order and did win many souls who were perishing in a lost and fallen land unto God.

3 [1c] Look to the anointed ones who do pour the golden oil out of themselves; behold they do run to and fro in the whole earth and do gather and bless and gather and bless.

4 [1d] Come ye to the Mountain of the Lord's House; come ye and receive your anointing and be filled;

5 [2a] For if ye have started to come unto Christ and have tasted of His goodness and His mercy and partaken of His redemption, and ye say that ye know that Eternal Life is in Him, yet ye do know it not.

6 [2b] Yea, I say unto you that ye know it not, for ye speak of that Eternal Life which ye shall have in Christ after ye die and are resurrected in Him.

7 [3] Behold, do ye not remember that Christ did say: I Am the resurrection and the life, and whosoever is dead and believeth in me shall live again; and whosoever liveth and believeth in me shall never die?

8 [4a] Behold, if you do believe in the first part of His words, how is it that ye do not believe in the last?

9 [4b] Why is it that ye do not believe me when I declare unto you that in Christ is the Priesthood of the Father and the Son?

10 [4c] And how is it that ye do not believe it when I say that the Priesthood of the Father hath the power over death:

11 [4d] For behold, death came not by the fathers or to the fathers, for the power of Eternal Life was in them, and they could not be bound by the bands of death;

12 [4e] It came only to their children and their children's children who had subjected themselves to the corruption of Zaiton which bringeth death.

13 [5a] And behold, Christ hath loosed the bands of death; and if ye, through Christ, have overcome death unto the fullness of the Fathers, then have ye eternal life dwelling in you and not death;

14 [5b] And whosoever hath life dwelling in him cannot be subjected unto death, for he hath power over all things, even death;

15 [5c] For he hath subjected all his enemies under his feet and overcome them, and he hath power over them.

16 [5d] And behold, even Christ did not have that power at first, for he condescended to take upon Himself flesh;

17 [5e] But He grew from grace to grace until He received that fullness which hath the power over death;

18 [5f] Therefore was He the Son of God until He received that fullness which made Him the Father and the Son.

19 [6] And behold, he did subject the flesh to the will of the Father in all things, even unto the death of the flesh, that the power of the Father might have the victory over the flesh, and the Son be subject unto the Father, that He might become the Father and the Son.

20 [7a] And behold, ye must walk the path that Christ has trod.

21 [7b] Yea, ye must subject the flesh to the will of the Father unto the overpowering of the death that is in your flesh since the days that Zaiton did grow up side by side with Eden;

22 [7c] And if ye do hope to enter back into Eden, ye must overpower that death that is in you.

23 [8a] Verily, verily, Zaiton will be shaken and destroyed; for just as surely as ye have the seeds of death in you, so also hath Zaiton the seed of death in it, and it will then, by its very nature, when it hath run its course, be shaken and destroyed.

24 [8b] If ye will therefore, through the grace of Christ and the power of His *atonement (*at-one-ment*)*, submit the death that is in you to the power of life that is in the fathers, ye shall overcome death unto that same eternal life that is in the fathers.

25 [9a] Behold, the powers of Zaiton that are written in your flesh which doth perpetuate the seeds of death in you must be shaken and destroyed, to give way for the new creation wherein dwelleth the Priesthood of the fathers.

26 [9b] Let go, therefore, of the deaths that bind you to Zaiton!

27 [9c] Behold, I say unto you again, declare death on the death that is in your flesh;

28 [9d] Submit the flesh to the will of the Father unto the overpowering of all the deaths that are in you and look for the appearing of Christ,

29 [9e] For His appearing is not until ye have been transformed into His exact image, and the veil which separates you from His is the veil of your flesh; and not until ye are like Him in your flesh can ye see Him.

30 [10] Behold, we are all in your midst and ye see us not because of your flesh; submit yourself in the flesh to the will of the Fathers in all things that ye may see us: Amen.